GRADE 1 TEACHERS’ INVOLVEMENT IN
SCHOOL-BASED CURRICULUM DEVELOPMENT IN
THE NORTHERN PROVINCE

M W Lumadi
GRADE 1 TEACHERS' INVOLVEMENT IN SCHOOL-BASED CURRICULUM DEVELOPMENT IN THE NORTHERN PROVINCE

By

MUTENDWAHOTHE WALTER LUMADI

A thesis submitted in fulfilment of the requirements for the degree of

DOCTOR EDUCATIONIS

in Didactics and Curriculum Studies

in the

Faculty of Education

at the

UNIVERSITY OF SOUTH AFRICA

Promoter: Dr HvR Van der Horst

Joint Promoter: Prof MEW McDonald

June 2000
Curriculum documents are generally written in broad terms, and therefore they do not cater directly for the specific needs of individual schools. Consequently, teachers need to translate curriculum guidelines into specific teaching programmes of sufficient detail to guide their day-to-day activities (Van der Horst and McDonald 1997:144).
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DEDICATION</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DECLARATION</td>
<td>II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS</td>
<td>III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABSTRACT</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UITTREKSEL</td>
<td>VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIST OF ACRONYMS</td>
<td>XI</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## CHAPTER 1

### INTRODUCTORY ORIENTATION

1.1 INTRODUCTION  

1.2 STATEMENT OF THE PROBLEM  

1.2.1 Background to the problem  

1.2.2 Formulation of the problem  

1.3 OUTCOME OF THE RESEARCH  

1.3.1 Background to the outcome  

1.3.2 Formulation of the outcome  

1.4 RESEARCH METHOD AND DESIGN  

1.4.1 Literature study
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.4.2</td>
<td>Qualitative research</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.2.1</td>
<td>Literacy</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.2.2</td>
<td>Numeracy</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.2.3</td>
<td>Life skills</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>RESEARCH MOTIVATION</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>CLARIFICATION OF OPERATIONAL CONCEPTS</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6.1</td>
<td><em>Grade 1 teacher</em></td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6.2</td>
<td><em>Involvement</em></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6.3</td>
<td><em>Curriculum and its dimensions</em></td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6.3.1</td>
<td>Overt curriculum</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6.3.2</td>
<td>Covert curriculum</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6.3.3</td>
<td>Null curriculum</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6.4</td>
<td><em>Curriculum development, decision-making and meta-orientations</em></td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6.4.1</td>
<td>Transmission orientation</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6.4.2</td>
<td>Transaction orientation</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6.4.3</td>
<td>Transformation orientation</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6.5</td>
<td><em>School-Based Curriculum Development</em></td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6.6</td>
<td><em>The Northern Province</em></td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>SYNTHESIS</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 2

THEORIES OF SCHOOL-BASED CURRICULUM DEVELOPMENT (SBCD) AND OUTCOMES-BASED EDUCATION (OBE)

2.1  SCHOOL-BASED CURRICULUM DEVELOPMENT AND ITS NATURE

2.1.1  Features of SBCD

2.1.2  Characteristics of SBCD

2.1.2.1  School mission
2.1.2.2  School-based activities
2.1.2.3  Management strategies
2.1.2.4  Assumptions about human nature
2.1.2.5  School organisation
2.1.2.6  Decision-making style

2.1.3  Categories of SBCD

2.1.3.1  External factors
2.1.3.2  Internal factors

2.1.4  Approaches to SBCD

2.1.4.1  The simplistic SBCD approach
2.1.4.2  The teachers competence approach
2.1.4.3 The dynamic curriculum change approach

2.1.5 The significance of SBCD

2.1.5.1 A three-level organisation context
2.1.5.2 Mutual development
2.1.5.3 Hierarchy of influence
2.1.5.4 Effectiveness and interaction
2.1.5.5 Congruence

2.1.6 SBCD in school community situations

2.1.7 Merits of SBCD

2.1.8 Demerits of SBCD

2.2 LIMITATIONS OF SCHOOL-BASED CURRICULUM DEVELOPMENT AND GRADE 1 TEACHERS

2.2.1 Centre-periphery module

2.2.2 Teachers' lack of motivation

2.2.3 Localism and parochialism

2.2.4 Curriculum and democratic ownership

2.2.5 Political syndrome

2.2.6 Implications in administration
2.2.7 Financial shortcomings

2.2.7.1 Differences in assumptions about education
2.2.7.2 Equifinality versus standard structure
2.2.7.3 Decentralisation versus centralisation
2.2.7.4 Self managing system versus implementing system
2.2.7.5 Principle of human initiative versus principle of structural control
2.2.7.6 Managerial skills
2.2.7.7 The utilisation of resources
2.2.7.8 The role of the school
2.2.7.9 Importance of the education department
2.2.7.10 Significance of administration
2.2.7.11 Task of grade 1 teachers

2.3 MONITORING AND EVALUATING SCHOOL-BASED CURRICULUM DEVELOPMENT

2.3.1 Leadership and participation

2.3.2 The potential advantages of strategic management in school

2.4 THE ROOTS OF CURRICULUM 2005/ CURRICULUM 21

2.5 THE CONCEPT OF OUTCOMES-BASED EDUCATION

2.6 KEY PRINCIPLES OF EFFECTIVE OUTCOMES-BASED EDUCATION TEACHING

2.6.1 Types of OBE

2.6.1.1 Traditional OBE
2.6.1.2 Transitional OBE

2.6.1.3 Transformational OBE

2.6.2. The key values of curriculum 2005/ Curriculum 21

2.6.2.1 Different outcomes
2.6.2.2 The rationale behind OBE
2.6.2.3 The cascade model
2.6.2.4 The cluster model
2.6.2.5 OBE constraints

2.6.3 Outcomes-Based Education critique

2.6.3.1 Ongoing assessment
2.6.3.2 Financial constraints
2.6.3.3 Time factor
2.6.3.4 Political ploy
2.6.3.5 Backlog and infrastructure
2.6.3.7 Technical jargon
2.6.3.7 The hidden curriculum

2.7 THE IMPORTANCE OF SCHOOL-BASED CURRICULUM DEVELOPMENT IN AN OUTCOMES-BASED EDUCATION FRAMEWORK

2.7.1 Components of curriculum design

2.7.1.1 Situation analysis
2.7.1.2 Curriculum intent
2.7.1.3 Curriculum content
2.7.1.4 Learning opportunities
2.7.1.5 Learning experience 148
2.7.1.6 Evaluation and assessment 149

2.8 SYNTHESIS 152

CHAPTER 3

QUALITATIVE RESEARCH AS A STRATEGY TO ADDRESS PROBLEMS IN SCHOOL-BASED CURRICULUM DEVELOPMENT (SBCD)

3.1 THE CONCEPT OF QUALITATIVE RESEARCH 153

3.2 AN INTRODUCTION TO QUALITATIVE METHODS 155

3.2.1 Types of qualitative methods 159

3.2.1.1 Participant observation 159
3.2.1.2 Case studies 161
3.2.1.3 Focussed interviews 163

3.2.2 Research methodology in qualitative research 164

3.2.3 Themes in qualitative methods 166

3.2.3.1 Making decisions about methods 166
3.2.3.2 Naturalistic inquiry 167
3.2.3.3 Skills required in conducting qualitative research 176
3.2.3.4 The rationale for conducting qualitative research 177
3.2.3.5 Who qualifies for conducting qualitative research 178
3.2.3.6 Essential elements of qualitative research 178
3.2.3.7 Inductive analysis 179
3.2.3.8 A holistic perspective

3.3 CHARACTERISTICS AND OUTCOMES OF QUALITATIVE RESEARCH

3.4 QUALITIES OF QUALITATIVE RESEARCH

3.4.1 Layered truth

3.4.2 Sensitisation

3.4.3 Flexibility

3.4.4 The total process

3.5 ESSENTIAL ASPECTS IN QUALITATIVE RESEARCH

3.5.1 The literature in qualitative research

3.5.2 Problems of qualitative research

3.5.2.1 Misperception of difficulty level

3.5.2.2 Organisational and administrative consideration

3.5.3 Strengths and weaknesses of qualitative research

3.5.4 Data recording procedure

3.5.5 Guidelines for coding qualitative data

3.5.6 Steps in coding qualitative research
3.6    SAMPLING PROCEDURE  

3.6.1    Purposeful sampling  

3.6.1.1  Types of purposeful sampling  

3.6.2    Random versus fixed sampling  

3.7    DOING QUALITATIVE RESEARCH  

3.7.1    Choosing research sites and sample population  

3.7.2    Cultivating informants  

3.7.3    Obtaining and encoding qualitative data  

3.7.4    Categorising observation  

3.7.5    Taking field notes  

3.7.6    The value and logic of qualitative research  

3.8    PHASES OF DATA COLLECTION AND ANALYSIS STRATEGIES  

3.8.1    Phase 1: Planning  

3.8.2    Phase 2: Beginning data collection  

3.8.3    Phase 3: Basic data collection
3.8.4 Phase 4: Choosing data collection

3.8.5 Phase 5: Completion

3.8.6 The primacy of data

3.8.7 The 'emic' perceptive

3.9 DATA ANALYSIS PROCEDURE

3.9.1 Content analysis

3.9.1.1 Merits and demerits of content analysis
3.9.1.2 The illustrative method and variations
3.9.1.3 Analytic comparison

3.9.2 Methods of agreement versus difference

3.9.3 Steps for qualitative data analysis

3.9.3.1 Pure standards
3.9.3.2 The context contrast approach

3.10 RELIABILITY

3.10.1 Types of reliability

3.10.1.1 Quixotic reliability
3.10.1.2 Diachronic reliability
3.10.1.3 Synchronous reliability
3.11 **VALIDITY**

3.11.1 Types of validity in qualitative design

3.12 **QUALITATIVE RESEARCH AS PANACEA IN SCHOOL-BASED CURRICULUM DEVELOPMENT RESEARCH**

3.12.1 Process evaluation in SBCD

3.12.2 External evaluation in SBCD

3.12.3 Participation in SBCD

3.12.3.1 The design implementation gap

3.12.3.2 Shortcomings of SBCD

3.13 **WAYS OF PRESENTING QUALITATIVE WORK**

3.13.1 Synopsis of resulting theory

3.13.2 The use of participants' quotes

3.13.3 Guidelines of qualitative research

3.13.3.1 A critique for a reasoned alternative

3.13.3.2 Actors' point of view as an explanation

3.13.3.3 Recognising the phenomenon

3.13.3.4 A single element as an explanation

3.14 **SYNTHESIS**
CHAPTER 4

RESEARCH INSTRUMENTS, FINDINGS AND DATA ANALYSIS

4.1 RESEARCH INSTRUMENTS 242

4.1.1 The interview 246

4.1.1.1 Interviewing skills in the study 248

4.1.2 The questionnaire 252

4.1.2.1 Types of questionnaires 252

4.1.3 Classroom observation 271

4.1.3.1 Report on classroom observation 284

4.1.4 Trialling 289

4.1.5 Diaries 290

4.1.6 Cassette recorder 291

4.1.7 An independent decoder 292

4.2 OUTCOMES OF THE INVESTIGATION 293

4.2.1 Piloting the study 293

4.2.2 Correspondence 293
4.2.3 Research ethics

4.2.3.1 Protecting the subjects
4.2.3.2 The right to non-participation
4.2.3.3 The right to confidentiality
4.2.3.4 Researcher's responsibility
4.2.3.5 Personal integrity

4.3 RESEARCH FINDINGS OF THE STUDY AND DATA ANALYSIS

4.3.1 The state of buildings in primary schools
4.3.2 Lack of resources
4.3.2.1 Libraries
4.3.2.2 Resource materials
4.3.2.3 Teaching and learning media
4.3.3 Unequal access to ownership in SBCD
4.3.4 Timing for curriculum implementation and knowledge explosion
4.3.5 Grade 1 teachers' attitude towards SBCD
4.3.6 Culture of teaching and learning
4.3.6.1 Aspects of time
4.3.6.2 Quality and control of work
4.3.6.3 Academic support programmes
4.3.7 Professional growth and experience in SBCD
4.3.8 Inadequate discipline and curriculum management
4.3.9 Politics and teachers' unions
4.3.10 Multi-cultural education and SBCD
4.3.10.1 Cultural diversity
4.3.10.2 Multi-lingualism
4.3.10.3 Gender inequalities
4.3.10.4 Multi-religion

4.4 SYNTHESIS

CHAPTER 5

GUIDELINES FOR GRADE 1 TEACHERS' INVOLVEMENT IN SBCD

5.1 STAGES OF GRADE 1 TEACHERS' INVOLVEMENT IN CURRICULUM DECISION-MAKING

5.1.1 Stage 1: grade 1 teachers' involvement in the classroom situation

5.1.1.1 The classroom as a centre of learning
5.1.1.2 Curriculum improvement involved with teaching tasks
5.1.1.3 Committee arrangements
5.1.1.4 Making the classroom a centre for handling ideas
5.1.1.5 Providing flexible room arrangements in school
5.1.1.6 Providing equipment appropriate to expansion of ideas
5.1.2  Stage 2: grade 1 teachers' involvement in the school set-up 342

5.1.2.1  Relationships with grade 1 teachers 345
5.1.2.2  Developing conditions for analysing instructional practices 346
5.1.2.3  Increasing the tempo of core improvement in schools 347

5.1.3  Stage 3: grade 1 teachers' involvement in the learning programme 349

5.1.4  Stage 4: grade 1 teachers' involvement at circuit stage 353

5.1.4.1  Conditions for unity and quality in learning experiences 353

5.1.5  Stage 5: grade 1 teachers' involvement at the area stage 357

5.1.5.1  Developing leadership for high quality learning 358
5.1.5.2  Conditions for continuous occupation with ideas 358

5.1.6  Stage 6: grade 1 teachers' involvement at regional stage 361

5.1.7  Stage 7: grade 1 teachers' involvement at provincial stage 363

5.1.7.1  A development team 366
5.1.7.2  A need to tap provincial resources 366

5.1.8  Stage 8: grade 1 teachers' involvement at national stage 367

5.2  SYNTHESIS 371
CHAPTER 6

RECOMMENDATIONS AND CONCLUDING REMARKS

6.1 SUMMARY

6.1.1 Background to the problem

6.1.2 The problem

6.1.3 The investigation

6.2 RECOMMENDATIONS AND THEIR IMPLICATIONS

6.2.1 Recommendations and implications for teaching practice

6.2.1.1 In-service education as a tool to address grade 1 teachers' needs

6.2.1.2 Responsibilities for the grade 1 teacher

6.2.2 Recommendations and implications for teacher training

6.3 FUTURE RESEARCH

6.4 CONCLUDING REMARKS

7. REFERENCES
8. LIST OF FIGURES AND TABLES 418

8.1 List of figures 418

8.2 List of tables 420

9. APPENDICES 422

9.1 Correspondences 423

9.2 Data from Northern Province’s regions 430
DEDICATION

This thesis is dedicated to my beloved mother, Sarah Tendani, my father Paulus Mukwevho, "vhakwevho vha u funa vhathu nga muya wavhudi," my sister Lutendo Merriyum and my brothers Mulalo Johnyboy, Thabelo Zachariah and Rudzani Israel.
DECLARATION

I declare that

GRADE 1 TEACHERS’ INVOLVEMENT IN SCHOOL-BASED CURRICULUM DEVELOPMENT IN THE NORTHERN PROVINCE

is my work and that all the sources that I have used or quoted have been indicated and acknowledged by means of complete references.

M W LUMADI
ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

To complete this thesis warranted a lot of patience, sacrifice, discipline, dedication and hard work. I wish to convey my sincere gratitude and appreciation to all my lecturers who sowed the seed of falling in love with the subject of Education in general, and instilled in me an interest in the field of Curriculum Studies in particular. I gratefully acknowledge the assistance of the following key participants:

- Doctor H v R Van der Horst for her valued and constructive criticism on issues which appeared problematic to me. Her inspiring guidance, wealth of experience, exposure and insight as a promoter have enabled this course in general and particularly this research investigation, a ‘dream come true’, as it is challenging and meaningful.

- Professor M E W McDonald from the Department of Secondary Teacher Education, UNISA, who provided light for me when I seemed to be chasing a black cat in a dark room. She is heartily thanked for her excellent guidance, extrinsic motivation and excellent supervision, which were eye-opening throughout the research project.

- Professor H C Geyser and Dr M Van Loggerenberg from the Department of Curriculum Studies at Rand Afrikaans University who encouraged me to embark on the project and also baptised me in the pool of Curriculum Studies, and to them I am indebted in numerous ways because their seed germinated, flourished and bore fruit.

- Professor R A Krüger (ex Rand Afrikaans University-emeritus) for his moral support, positive words of encouragement and scholarly advice.

- The Chief Director of Education in Northern Province is thanked most gratefully for giving me permission to visit schools within his regions.
• Grade 1 teachers, interviewees and principals of schools who were supportive and co-operative from the genesis to the ultimate completion of the research study.

• My proof-readers and editors from the English department at UNISA for their splendid work.

• My colleagues Mr R J Monobe, my previous Head Of Department for his scholarly advice and Dr M A Ravhudzulo and family who kept on encouraging me at all the times.

• His excellency, Pastor Doctor T.S. Muligwe and family from Kingdom Life Christian Centre at Tshifulanani Lwamondo who prayed continuously for my divine health and protection throughout the study.

• Last but not least, my deepest appreciation to my wife, Nnditsheni Irene and daughter Ndamulelo Innocentia, sons Vhuhwaho Walter (junior) and Mutendwahothe (junior) Adore for acceding to the demands necessitated by my frequent anti-social behaviour. Had they not been supportive, I would not be blowing the trumpet of joy at all.

• Finally, I would like to thank Almighty God, for with Him there is nothing impossible.
ABSTRACT

The bright future of education in South Africa, as in every developed and developing country such as the United States of America, United Kingdom, France and many others, depends greatly on grade 1 teachers' involvement in School-Based Curriculum Development (SBCD). The fallacy that grade 1 teachers can be operated effectively by remote control should be abandoned from the school curriculum. Success will always be an elusive task if grade 1 teachers are excluded from curriculum decision-making, because their proximity to learners in the learning situation is a source of valuable information for curriculum developers, a source which is currently overlooked. This warrants a paradigm shift in teacher training programmes. A situation analysis in our democratic country necessitates problem-centred teacher training which will equip the future generation of teacher trainees and prospective grade 1 teachers with relevant professional skills, precipitated by our country.

The bone of contention in this study revolves around the kind of teaching and learning problems experienced by grade 1 teachers involved in SBCD in the Northern Province. It is apparent from the thesis that grade 1 teachers' involvement in curriculum decision-making is limited to a certain extent because members of the top structure of curriculum planners are reluctant to quit their 'ivory towers' to perceive the real situation of the noble profession of teaching. A profound problem in South Africa in general and the Northern Province in particular is that there is a serious lack of consultation and negotiations with grade 1 teachers, and the implications thereof are detrimental to SBCD. The measure in which the grade 1 teachers are involved in participation and decision-making is a determinant of the success or failure of the innovation project. It is thus noteworthy to point out that the grade 1 teacher must be fully supported by his or her academic seniors, to become actively involved in curriculum activities.

The overriding aim of this study, an exploratory investigation of the identified teaching and learning problems by grade 1 teachers in terms of SBCD in the Northern Province emanated from this need. It should also be pointed out that our world is characterised by
the rapid tempo at which knowledge becomes out-dated and is replaced by new ideas and concepts. The twentieth century has become known as the information era. This has necessitated a change of emphasis in education; instead of the transfer of knowledge, the grade 1 teacher must rather be taught how to acquire knowledge on his or her own and be provided with instruments necessary for exploiting knowledge.

The method of analysis began with a literature review, with a viewpoint to provide guidelines for grade 1 teachers' involvement in SBCD. After an introductory orientation provided in chapter 1, the theories of SBCD and Outcomes-Based Education (OBE) were examined in chapter 2. Qualitative research as a strategy to address problems in SBCD was dealt with in chapter 3 by means of identifying the research instruments to be utilised for data collection techniques and analysis. Furthermore, in this chapter, the researcher elaborated on the types of qualitative methods, characteristics and outcomes of qualitative research, phases of data collection and analysis strategies and qualitative research as a remedy in SBCD problems. In chapter 4, the researcher elaborated on research instruments, findings and data analysis. Findings were based on the implementation of research instruments and literature review. It is in this chapter that the theories of SBCD and OBE in chapter 2 and qualitative research as a strategy to address SBCD problems in chapter 3 have been synthesised.

In the ensuing chapter 5, guidelines which could serve as a framework for grade 1 teachers' involvement in SBCD were provided. It is strongly believed that these guidelines will be useful for both Pre-service Teacher Education and Training (PRESET) and In-service Teacher Education and Training (INSET) to keep pace with the changes taking place in the South African society. Teacher training should thus ensure that teacher trainees and prospective grade 1 teachers are sufficiently skilled to cope with the tremendous escalation of challenges in SBCD. In fact, grade 1 teachers should be trained to teach learners who must fulfill their vocational mandate some time in the near future. The youth must be empowered for the future, which covers the period from the time they enter school. These guidelines make it imperative for the trainers of prospective teachers to predict the future realistically and to train grade 1 teachers in accordance with the
principle of constancy and change. Future education requires individuals who will know how to apply principles, norms and values and how to design new methods for effective instruction and learning.

The final chapter focused on the background to the problem, the methodology of the investigation and conclusions. The study also highlighted recommendations for the improvement of teaching practice and teacher training and the implications thereof. The researcher summed up the study by proposing areas of concern for future research.
UITTREKSEL

Die suksesvolle ontwikkeling en toekoms van onderwys in Suid-Afrika, soos in elke ontwikkelde en ontwikkelende land, insluitend die Verenigde State van Amerika, die Verenigde Koninkryk, Frankryk en vele ander, hang hoofsaaklik af van die betrokkenheid van graad 1-onderwysers by Skoolgebaseerde Kurrikulumontwikkeling (SBKO). Dit geld ook vir die Noordelike Provincie waar hierdie studie gedoen is. Die aannames dat graad 1-onderwysers effektief kan deelneem aan die skoolkurrikulum deur middel van afstandsdeelname, moet laat vaar word. Indien die onderwysers uitgesluit word van die besluitnemingsproses in kurrikulumontwikkeling sal die kans op sukses bemoelik word. Hulle deelname aan en betrokkenheid by die leersituasie kan dien as 'n bron van inligting vir kurrikulumontwikkelaars. Tans word hierdie bron van inligting nie in aanmerking geneem nie. Hierdie hipotese vereis 'n paradigmaskuif in die onderwysersopleidingsprogramme. 'n Situasie-analise in die Noordelike Provincie het getoon dat 'n probleemgerigde onderwysersopleidingsprogram nodig is om die toekomstige generasie van onderwysers (veral graad 1-onderwysers) toe te rus met die relevante professionele vaardighede wat so dringend in ons land benodig word.

Die kernpunte in hierdie studie handel oor die tipe kenniswoord- en leerprobleme wat graad 1-onderwysers ondervind in hulle betrokkenheid in Skoolgebaseerde Kurrikulumontwikkeling in die Noordelike Provincie, en in watter mate dit aangespreek word in kurrikulumontwikkeling. Bevindings in hierdie studie toon dat onderwyserbetrokkenheid beperk word deur die topstruktuur van die kurrikulumheplanners wat onwillig is om hulle ivoortorings te verlaat en sodoende nie die werklige situasie in die onderwysberoep in aanmerking neem nie. 'n Groot probleem in Suid-Afrika in die algemeen, en in die Noordelike Provincie in die besonder, is die ernstige gebrek aan konsultasie en onderhandeling met graad 1-onderwysers en die negatiewe impak hiervan op kurrikulumontwikkeling. Die mate waarin hierdie onderwysers betrokke is, is bepalend vir die sukses of die mislukking van die innoverende projek. Dit is gevolglik nodsaaklik om daarop te wys dat die graad 1-
onderwyser ten volle ondersteun moet word deur sy/haar akademiese seniors ten einde aktief betrokke te kan wees by sodanige kurrikulumaktiwiteite.

Die hoofdoel van hierdie studie is dan ook ‘n ondersoek na die geïdentifiseerde kennissoordrag- en leerprobleme van graad 1-onderwysers in die Noordelike Provinces in voorafgenoemde verband. Ons leef in ‘n snel veranderende wêreld waarin kennis vinnig verouder raak en met nuwe idees en konsepte vervang word, die sogenaamde informasie-era. Dit noodsaak ‘n verandering in die onderwys, waar die onderwyser geleer moet word om eerstens self kennis te verkry asook dat die instrumente wat nodig is om die kennis te eksploiteer, verskaf word, eerder as om net op kennissoordrag te let.

Analise as ondersoekmetode is in die literatuuroorsig gebruik met die doel om riglyne vir graad 1-onderwysersbetrokkenheid te verskaf. Na die inleidende oriënteringspostulaat in Hoofstuk 1, is die teorieë van Skoolgebaseerde kurrikulumontwikkeling en Uitkomsgebaseerde Onderwys (UGO) in Hoofstuk 2 ondersoek. In Hoofstuk 3 is kwalitatiewe navorsing as strategie om probleme met Skoolgebaseerde Kurrikulumontwikkeling uit te wys, aangespreek. Dit is bereik deur die identisering van die navorsingsinstrumente wat gebruik is vir data-insameling en analise. In die hoofstuk bespreek die navorser die tipes kwalitatiewe metodes; die eienskappe en gevolge van kwalitatiewe navorsing; die fases van dataversameling asook analisestrategieë en kwalitatiewe navorsing as instrumente in die uitskakeling van Skoolgebaseerde Kurrikulumontwikkeling-probleme. In Hoofstuk 4 word verder uitgebrei oor navorsingsinstrumente, bevindings en data-analise. In die hoofstuk word die teorieë van SBKO en UGO soos bespreek in Hoofstuk 2 en kwalitatiewe navorsing as strategie om SBKO probleme aan te spreek, gesintetiseer.

In Hoofstuk 5 word riglyne verskaf wat kan dien as raamwerk vir graad 1-onderwyserbetrokkenheid in SBKO. Die vermoede bestaan dat hierdie riglyne bruikbaar sal wees vir beide Voordiensopleiding en Indiensopleiding om sodoende in pas te wees met die veranderinge wat in die gemeenskap se leefwêreld plaasvind. Onderwytersopleiding behoort dus te verseker dat onderwysers wat opgelei word, en
veral *graad 1-onderwysers*, toegetraad word om met die toename in uitdagings in *SBKO* te kan byhou. In werklikheid behoort *graad 1-onderwysers* sodanig opgelei te word dat hulle leerders kan onderrig en toerus om in die toekoms hulle beroep te kan beoefen. Die jeug moet bemagtig word vir die toekoms vanaf die oomblik dat hulle die skoolisteen binnegaan. Hierdie riglyne maak dit noodsaaklik vir die opleiers van voornemende onderwysers om die toekoms korrek te voorspel en om die *graad 1-onderwysers* op te lei in die beginsels van konsekwentheid en verandering. Toekomstige onderrig vereis individue wat sal weet hoe om beginsels, norme en waarde toe te pas en hoe om nuwe onderrigimetodes vir effektiewe leer te ontwerp.

Die finale hoofstuk fokus op die agtergrond van die probleem, die metodologie van die onderzoek en gevolgtrekkings. Die studie benadruik die aanbevelings vir die verbetering van onderwyspraktyk en onderwysersopleiding en die implikasies daarvan. Die navorser som dan ook die studie op deur areas van belang vir toekomstige navorsing voor te stel.
LIST OF ACRONYMS

CHAPTER 1

1. ABET : Adult Basic Education
2. DET  : Department of Education
3. ECD  : Early Childhood Development
4. FET  : Further Education and Training
5. GET  : General Education and Training
6. GNU  : Government of National Unity
7. HET  : Higher Education and Training
8. NQF  : National Qualifications Framework
9. OBE  : Outcomes-Based Education
10. RDP : Reconstruction and Development Programme
11. SA  : South Africa

CHAPTER 2

1. ANC : African National Congress
2. CNE : Christian National Education
3. DEACS: Department of Education, Arts, Culture and Sports
4. NCESS: National Committee on Education Support Service
5. NCSNET: National Commission on Special Needs in Education and Training
6. NP  : National Party
7. SAQA : Authority South African Qualifications Authority
8. USA : United States Of America
CHAPTER 3

Identified in chapters 1 and 2

CHAPTER 4

1. BAED  : Bachelor of Arts in Education
2. COLTS : Culture of Teaching and Learning Service
3. DOE   : Department of Education and Training
4. HOD   : Head of Department
5. LIFO  : Last In First Out
6. LRA   : Labour Relations Act
7. LWC   : Language of Wider Communication
8. MED   : Master of Education
9. NEPI  : National Education Policy Investigation
10. PDE  : Provincial Department of Education
11. PEU  : Professional Educators Union
12. PEUP : Primary Education Upgrading Programme
13. PGDE : Postgraduate Diploma in Education
14. RAU  : Randse Afrikaanse Universiteit
15. SADTU: South African Democratic Teachers' Union
16. SAIRR: South African Institute of Race Relations
17. TSUD : Teacher Supply Utilisation Development
18. UCT  : University of Cape Town
19. UNIN : University of the North
20. UNISA: University of South Africa
21. WITS : University of the Witwatersrand
CHAPTER 5

1. **ABCDC**: Area-Based Curriculum Development Committee

2. **AM**: Area Manager

3. **CBCDC**: Circuit-Based Curriculum Development Committee

4. **CDTTC**: Curriculum Development Task Team Committee

5. **CSCDFC**: Classroom Stage Curriculum Development Facilitating Committee

6. **DDG**: Deputy Director General

7. **DG**: Director General

8. **INSET**: In-Service Education and Training

9. **LPBCDC**: Learning Programme-Based Curriculum Development Committee

10. **MEC**: Member of Executive Council

11. **NCDFCTTC**: National Curriculum Development Facilitating Task Team Committee

12. **PBCDC**: Provincial-Based Curriculum Development Committee

13. **PRESET**: Pre-Service Education and Training

14. **RD**: Regional Director

15. **RBCDC**: Regional-Based Curriculum Development Committee

16. **SSCDFC**: School Stage Curriculum Development Facilitating Committee

17. **TPA**: Teachers' Professional Association

18. **VC**: Vice-Chancellor

CHAPTER 6

1. **NGO**: Non-Governmental Organisation
CHAPTER ONE

INTRODUCTORY ORIENTATION

1.1 INTRODUCTION

A sizeable number of critics of South African education have condemned the National Department of Education for a curriculum which does not meet the needs of learners, apart from being irrelevant and uninteresting. National curriculum projects have attempted to change the situation and to provide packaged materials for the schools to adopt. Many of these are however misused since there is a lack of understanding of the context and teaching strategies designed for their proper utilization (Sunday Times 16 May 1999:24).

Lumadi (1999:1) is of the opinion that since the release of Nelson Mandela in 1990, serious changes became apparent in many spheres of life in South Africa. The Government of National Unity (GNU) proposed amongst others: affirmative action, capacity building and the substantive significance of transformational Outcomes-Based Education (OBE). The shift towards our own unique South African OBE holds much potential for the broadening of the principles of access, redress, equity and quality assurance for all citizens of a democratic country.

From July 1997 the new curriculum has been piloted in selected schools countrywide. A pilot study was conducted in grade 1 classrooms in 270 schools around the entire country between August and November 1997. (See figure 1.1 for the schools that took part in the grade 1 pilot project in the Northern Province). In January 1998, South Africa thus introduced Curriculum 2005 to 1,5 million grade 1 learners at once. This was done to force an end to the previous education system, which had been designed as a cornerstone of apartheid and was thus singularly inappropriate to educate South Africa’s learners to become competent and active members of a democratic society (Curriculum 2005 1998:3).
Schools taking part in the Grade 1 Pilot Project

Laerskool Warmbad, Western Region • Spa Park Laerskool, Western Region • Mamangina Primary School, Western Region • Elsenskop Primary School, Western Region • Rabasotho Primary School, Western Region • Montesobodu Primary School, Central Region • Ikageleng Makobe Primary School • Mankgate Primary School • Eureka Primary School • Boiketlo Primary School • Mangaya Primary School, Northern Region • Xihlovo Primary School, Northern Region • St Scholastica Primary School, Northern Region • Tshivhazwauhu Primary School, Northern Region • Laerskool Louis Trichardt, Louis Trichardt • Senianya Primary School, North Eastern Region • Welani Primary School, North Eastern Region • Nhlalala Primary School, North Eastern Region • Lapishe Primary School, North Eastern Region • Nwasorini Primary School, North Eastern Region • Tzaneen Laerskool, Eastern Region • Mativen Primary School, Eastern Region • Semana Primary School, Eastern Region • Sefahone Primary School, Eastern Region • Pfumelani Primary School, Eastern Region • Ntoshang Primary School, Southern Region
Curriculum 2005 was created to empower all South African learners with knowledge, skills, attitudes and values which would make them productive and valuable agents in creating a better future for all. The implementation of this curriculum has recently been reviewed by a task team which found that there were many problems with its implementation.

Van der Horst and McDonald (1997:5) are of the notion that

“In South Africa there is, however a lack of responsibility, dedication and commitment on the part of many teachers and learners. Therefore, achieving the required knowledge, skills and habits of mind to promote a prosperous and democratic country will take some very hard work from a number of role players. The learners will have to take greater responsibility for actively participating in the learning process and working hard. The teachers and instructors will have to take full responsibility for careful planning and management of their learners’ learning environment, and parents will have to be more involved in motivating and facilitating their children to learn.”

Whilst schools had the freedom to develop the trialling process in ways that suited their particular local structures and organizations, general patterns appeared to be emerging regarding effective ways of creatively coming to terms with OBE. Some of the more significant ones include the opportunity to experiment and take risks with new ways of learning and teaching, and the opportunity for collegial action research, thereby building learning communities with shared interpretations. Furthermore, there was the chance to network and share insights and resources across institutions, race, class and gender categories, thus building “social solidarity” rather than separate “social factions”.

It is evident from the foregoing discussion that the South African education system is currently undergoing profound and far reaching changes which challenge the traditional role of its institutions. The changes are aimed at elevating the real skills and learning levels of the South African learner, by promoting a thirst for knowledge, a love of learning and a determination to succeed, so multiplying the number of South Africans who achieve
marketable skills. The overall objective is a culture of lifelong learning *(Curriculum 2005 1998:04)*.

This study departs from the premise that the task of the grade 1 teacher concerning the *curriculum* goes beyond that which teachers have traditionally fulfilled. It challenges the view that teachers do not have enough time and resources to develop curricula; and that their role is principally one of implementation *(Tanner and Tanner 1993:48)*.

*Grade 1 teachers* form an integral part of the *curriculum design* and *development* process, regardless of the context in which they act. Given a chance and the resources, *grade 1 teachers* are undoubtedly capable of making valid *curriculum* decisions and of participating effectively in developing the school *curriculum*. When opinions such as the foregoing are related to specific cultural, political, and socio-economic contexts the true complexity of the debate emerges, as does its essentially normative nature. In the contemporary educational climate a discernible trend towards increasing *teacher involvement* in *curriculum* decision-making, concurrent with the devolution of power and authority to schools and their communities, is evident. The current role of *grade 1 teachers* in the *Northern Province* in *curriculum design* and development is one of narrowly circumscribed *curriculum* implementation. This suggests that *grade 1 teachers* are highly constrained by prescribed *curriculum* content and teaching-learning situations and that they are not fully empowered to change *curriculum* components to meet local needs.

Van der Horst and McDonald (1997:246) further explain that “although many teachers generally are positive about the philosophy and practice of *OBE*, they find it difficult to implement in large classes. Ways and means will have to be devised to employ co-operative learning strategies and peer teaching and assessment to meet the challenge of *OBE* in large classes”.

Centrally determined *curriculum* packages and attendant implementation directives virtually bypass *grade 1 teachers* in order to engage learners in the learning process. The history of *curriculum* reform in the United States of America and elsewhere provides plentiful evidence to show that *teachers* cannot effectively be bypassed in the mediation of a *curriculum* to learners *(Taylor and Alexander 1993:35)*.
According to the reviewers of *Curriculum* 2005, teachers need to be empowered to become successful *curriculum* mediators by means of effective training opportunities (Review Committee on *Curriculum* 2005, 2000:96-98).

There are significantly conflicting viewpoints about who should determine and control the school *curriculum* (Skilbeck 1992:70). Even within an established centralized administrative structure, several stakeholders are increasingly exerting pressure on governments through their demands for more equitable representation in *curriculum* decision-making. This view is currently achieving greater prominence in the literature, and requires that democratic, rather than autocratic, decision-making procedures be applied to the practice of *curriculum development*. Recent incidents in places such as Australia reveal a general trend towards changed centre-periphery relationships with some autonomy devolved to teachers and school communities (Duffy and Cleverly 1994:50).

1.2 STATEMENT OF THE PROBLEM

1.2.1 Background to the problem

If the purposes of the school *curriculum* are to be realised in practice, *grade 1 teachers* must be placed in a position where they can implement the *curriculum* with maximum commitment and confidence. A precondition would be that *grade 1 teachers* understand the *curriculum* from prior involvement. Views of teaching as a profession are contentious, and attendant issues are beyond the scope of this thesis (compare 6.3). However, the independence *grade 1 teachers* enjoy in their classrooms is widely acknowledged. The kind of autonomy *grade 1 teachers* may have, is perceived by some *curriculum* theorists and practitioners as a factor in favour of their participation in *curriculum design* and development (consult chapter 6 paragraph 6.1.1).

Harnack (1993:6) compares the autonomy of the teacher in the classroom with that of a brain surgeon by asking what would happen in a hospital setting if a brain surgeon made a specific decision, which would then be countermanded by the superintendent of the hospital. This may not be the best analogy. However, it illustrates the tension and contradictions which potentially exist in highly centralized *curriculum development* and moderation of the
curriculum. Teachers are expected to perform their task effectively, and on the other hand they are required by administrators to implement a curriculum with fidelity but with no involvement in its development and control.

Corno (1993:43) observes that no matter how teachers are restricted in curriculum decision-making, behind doors they still do as their judgement dictates.

In fact, crucial factors affecting curriculum development are many, varied, complicated, intertwined, and constantly changing. A given model for curriculum development may be suitable for one setting and inappropriate in another. Thus a theory of curriculum development that can be responsive to individual and social needs in a complex changing society cannot be built around linear or single principle concepts. In addition to the many environmental factors involved, the participants must be considered. Also, wisdom does not stand still; it is constantly being revised, extended, replaced, and interpreted differently from varying points of view.

Robson (1994:221) sees a curriculum as the construction and revision of ordered sequences of learning experiences related to intended learning outcomes. According to this view, grade 1 teachers are responsible for the implementation of externally planned sequences of instruction. On the other hand, Jones (1994:17) argues that the planning of information based on external curriculum plans has to be in the hands of grade 1 teachers because they are the ones who know the nature of their specific classrooms. See chapter 5 item 5.1.1. These different positions may have far-reaching implications for the anticipated encounter between grade 1 teachers and the curriculum, as well as for curricular practices that are found in the educational system.

It is maintained here that grade 1 teachers have a dominant impact on the implementation of any form of curriculum, even if this includes detailed specifications of instruction. Still different forms of curricula and different role expectations of grade 1 teachers may lead to significant variations in curriculum application. A grade 1 teacher who is free to choose from a variety of workbooks and learning materials and whose teaching is guided only by broad curricular guidelines which define the content to be taught, will have to be more precise in choices and planning than a grade 1 teacher who is expected to implement a
curriculum package which includes precise instructional materials. In South Africa (particularly the Northern Province) this process is further exacerbated by a lack of resources and learner support materials (See chapter 4 item 4.3.2).

Grade 1 teachers are viewed as instruments for achieving the intentions of curriculum developers. This approach is powerful in limiting grade 1 teachers' motivation for curriculum change and adaptation. Their role may be compared to the role of performing musicians who are bound by the scores of composers. Musicians may present their own interpretations of a composition, but they are not expected to rewrite it. In the curricular approach that guides the development project described herewith, teachers are perceived as creators of the curriculum, thus composers of their own music. Their knowledge of subject matter and classrooms, their concerns, and their needs become the point of departure for the curricular process. Grade 1 teachers' expertise in classroom reality is the basis for discerning practical needs that call for curricular remedies.

Schwarb's (1995:30) approach to the practical mode of curriculum work draws upon an image of a creative and practical reformer discerning problems through an awareness of apparent gaps. These are gaps between what should be and what is, rather than seeking solutions from his or her understanding of what might be done, and finally proceeding to improvement. Grade 1 teachers know their learners, classrooms and school milieu in a practical way that central curriculum developers can never know. This knowledge enables grade 1 teachers to unveil weaknesses, shortcomings and conditions which should and can be changed. It is this knowledge and experience which enable a grade 1 teacher to make valid curricular decisions. A curriculum could thus be viewed as the learning experiences shaped by committed grade 1 teachers for their own learners. In their institution they use appropriate materials and actions in their classrooms.

The perception of grade 1 teachers as sensitive to, and knowledgeable about problem situations in school, demands their being assigned a central role in the curriculum process, that starts with the locating of a curricular process. Knowledge and expertise in uncovering the potential of curriculum materials is of paramount importance in that it can be reconstructed for particular learners and for specific classroom situations. Grade 1 teachers
can address needs by the professional and efficient use of curriculum materials, and by means of more creative and effective teacher involvement in the curriculum process.

A likely, but undesirable, outcome of this approach, is that grade 1 teachers' commitment to the curriculum can be reduced. The absence of such commitment to the school curriculum yields many pitfalls for the culture of teaching and learning.

Another shortcoming of this approach is that grade 1 teachers tend to think that their role is only in the classroom, to implement what they have received from the central office. The situation is exacerbated by some grade 1 teachers who follow this externally planned curriculum to the letter without appropriately relating it to the local situation. As a result it can be pointed out that the vast majority of classroom grade 1 teachers today are stereotyped and shortsighted, because they have never been directly involved in the process of making recommendations regarding the outcomes of education and the broad field of curriculum intent.

While modern educational technology is highly desirable to support grade 1 teachers, it is also necessary for grade 1 teachers and curriculum experts in developing nations to be creative and innovative by making more effective use of locally available resources. These include textbooks, documents, and many others (See chapter 6 item 6.2.1 paragraph 6.2.1.2). Participation of the grade 1 teacher throughout the stages of curriculum development, especially at the initial stages of deciding what will be taught, is vital for its acceptability by learners and parents. It should be pointed out that even in a system where the curriculum is centrally planned, the school teacher can contribute a lot in various ways throughout the levels of curriculum development e.g. classroom level, departmental level and many others. In this way, the teacher will understand the curriculum better and increase its relevance by being able to act as mediator of the curriculum as indicated in 6.2.1(a) and (b).

Although the central activity in teaching is actual instruction which involves creating, using and modifying instructional strategies and tactics in the classrooms, broadly speaking teaching covers curriculum activities outside the class, namely curriculum planning and curriculum evaluation. What this entails is that the work of the Grade 1 teacher is not limited to the classroom or curriculum implementation. The grade 1 teacher is thus also
expected to participate in all other phases of curriculum development. This broad participation would make the main classroom work more effective.

Although South Africa is in a period of transition, critics of school curricula have frequently made lists with passionate accounts of crises in education and calls for reform. Today, as in the past, critics focus on elements they perceive to be missing in the curriculum and instructional processes, or they call attention to flagrant abuses within the schools.

“Educational problems such as the provision of equal access to schools, equal educational opportunities, irrelevant curricula, inadequate finance, inadequate facilities, shortages of educational materials, the enrolment explosion and inadequately qualified teaching staff contribute to the current crisis in education in South Africa” (Van der Horst and McDonald 1997:5).

Crises in the school curriculum demand an urgent and critical appraisal of the whole enterprise of education in our democratic country (compare 6.3). Such an investigation requires that education and education policy-making be examined in their own right, within the specific terrains of public and academic debate. This should be carried out in order to uncover the assumptions which have informed common sense or expect knowledge on these subjects over time.

1.2.2 Formulation of the problem

Evolving from the discussion provided above (1.2.1), the problem, with regard to grade 1 teachers’ involvement in School-Based Curriculum development (SBCD) in the Northern Province, is formulated as follows:

1.2.2.1 What kind of teaching and learning problems do grade 1 teachers experience in terms of School-Based Curriculum development in the Northern Province? (See chapter 4 paragraph 4.3 items 4.3.1-4.3.10).
In order to address the main problem the following sub-problems have been identified:

(a) What does SBCD entail? (See chapter 2).
(b) How should qualitative research be used as a strategy to address problems (referred to in 1.2.2.1) in SBCD? (See chapter 3).
(c) Which research instruments should be utilised for data collection techniques and analysis? (See chapter 4 paragraph 4.1 items 4.1.1-4.1.7).
(d) Which guidelines should be followed in order to involve grade 1 teachers in SBCD? See chapter 5 paragraph 5.1 items 5.1.1-5.1.8 for stages of grade 1 teachers' involvement in curriculum decision-making.

A synthesis of the sub-problems identified above and their solutions will provide guidelines as reflected in chapter 5 for grade 1 teacher involvement in SBCD. Relevant recommendations in this regard will be included in terms of SBCD and teaching practice in South Africa (see chapter 6).

1.3 OUTCOME OF THE RESEARCH

1.3.1 Background to the outcome

The outcome of this research is to reflect on the significance of grade 1 teacher involvement in SBCD in the Northern Province. The researcher will endeavour to show that planning activities involve teachers in various stages of curricular decision-making. Teacher involvement throughout the stages of curriculum development will attempt to address the following key questions in Curriculum Studies:

- Who will be taught?
- Why should the learner be taught?
- How will the learner be taught?
- What will be taught?
- How well should the learner be taught?
- When and where should the learner be taught?
The outcome of the study pertaining to grade 1 teacher involvement in School-Based Curriculum development will be phrased as follows:

1.3.2 Formulation of the outcome

1.3.2.1 To identify the kind of teaching and learning problems experienced by grade 1 teachers in terms of SBCD in the Northern Province. (Compare 1.2.2.1 and chapter 4 paragraph 4.3 items 4.3.1-4.3.10).

For the overarching outcome to be clear and straightforward, three enabling outcomes will be stated explicitly as follows:

(a) To elaborate in detail on what SBCD entails. (Refer to chapter 2).
(b) To reflect on the significance of using qualitative research as a strategy to address problems identified in 1.3.2.1 in SBCD. (Refer to chapter 3).
(c) To identify the research instruments to be utilised for data collection techniques and analysis. (Refer to chapter 4 paragraph 4.1 items 4.1.1-4.1.7).
(d) To provide guidelines to be followed by grade 1 teachers in their involvement in SBCD. (Refer to chapter 5 paragraph 5.1 items 5.1.1-5.1.8) for grade 1 teachers' involvement in curriculum decision-making at the following stages:

- Classroom stage
- School stage
- Learning programme stage
- Circuit stage
- Area stage
- Regional stage
- Provincial stage
- National stage.

An analysis of the above enabling outcomes and their solutions will be synthesised to furnish recommendations for grade 1 teachers' involvement in SBCD. (Refer to chapter 6).
1.4 RESEARCH METHOD AND DESIGN

1.4.1 Literature Study

A relevant literature study on key terms such as *curriculum*, *SBCD*, *OBE* and many other relevant concepts will be undertaken with a view to developing a theoretical foundation.

1.4.2 Qualitative research

The research methodology of the study will be qualitative and inductively based. Qualitative research involves data collection, that is collection of extensive data on many variables over an extended period of time in a naturalistic setting (Gay 1996:208). See chapter 3 on details for qualitative research as a strategy to address problems in *SBCD*. Inductively based refers to inference of a general law from particular instances (Thompson 1996:45). This kind of study comprises a purposive stratified sampling design. In order to collect and analyze data effectively, both open-ended and close-ended questionnaires will be administered. Furthermore, a follow-up session on questionnaires will be appropriate in the form of structured and unstructured interviews. The target group and population of the study will comprise experienced *grade 1 teachers* who have been in the field of teaching for more than five years.

The *grade 1 teachers* will be chosen irrespective of gender issues. It will be incumbent upon the researcher to see to it that these *grade 1 teachers* represent all three learning programmes that fall within the ambit of *curriculum 2005* and *OBE*. According to departmental documentation as quoted by Tiley (1997:16) the three learning programmes are:

- Literacy
- Numeracy and
- Life skills, and diagrammatically they may be represented as follows:
1.4.2.1 Literacy

Fourie (1997: 3) defines literacy as the ability to read and write. Literacy can be distinguished from awareness by referring to writing. A person can be aware of the written word and that the different symbols do communicate something, but the person is literate in respect of the written word when he or she can read or write. Literacy also involves media literacy, computer literacy and visual literacy. The need for theory in understanding, speaking and listening is of vital importance.

Naicker (1999:104) shows that

"the eight learning areas have been drawn into three prescribed learning programmes for the foundation phase. The rationale for the integration was to promote a cross-curriculum approach that will ensure the holistic development of the learner. Holistic development is concerned with academic, social, psychological and emotional well-being, as well as understanding learners within the broader historical and socio-economic contexts they came from."

Diagram 1.2 (b) illustrates the cross-curriculum nature of OBE and the nature of integration (Naicker 1999:104).
1.4.2.2 Numeracy

Numeracy uses the learner’s own experience and sense of number and space to develop confidence and enjoyment as learners develop their own approaches to working with those concepts. It should always be noted that fluency and correct usage of symbols lead a learner to the ability to communicate mathematically (Tiley 1997:16).

Seeing that the learner-centred approach is of paramount importance for the development of a learner in totality, it was deemed fit to form three main learning programmes in the foundation phase. For this to be accomplished, the 66 specific outcomes of Curriculum 2005 were clustered into three learning programmes. This denotes that all learning areas enjoy equal status and that equal cross-curriculum approaches can be utilised. It should be noted that the Report of the Review Committee on Curriculum 2005 endorses a cross-curricular learner-centred approach to the three programmes in the foundation phase (Review Committee on Curriculum 2005, 2000:ix-xi).

1.4.2.3 Life skills

Life skills empower learners to develop their affective, cognitive and normative potential, to become empowered and creative citizens who are able to participate within their own environment. Rooth (1998:2) views life skills as the skills which are necessary for successful living and learning. Life skills can also be perceived as coping skills that can enhance a person’s quality of life and prevent dysfunctional behaviour. It is through life skills that a person can interact meaningfully and successfully with the environment and with other people.

Life skills can also be seen as the competencies needed for effective living and participation in communities. The greater the range of skills one possesses, the more alternatives and opportunities are available to him or her and as a result, there is more potential for meaningful and successful interaction. Life skills enable people to translate knowledge what they know, and attitudes and value what they think, feel and believe, into action as actual abilities (Rooth 1999:06).
This research was be conducted in the Northern Province geographical area, which is Region 3 of the Northern Province. See figure 1.3 regarding the following 7 regions (compare chapter 5 item 5.1.6) of the Northern Province:

- Region 1: Western Region
- Region 2: Central Region
- Region 3: Northern Region
- Region 4: North East Region
- Region 5: Eastern Region
- Region 6: Southern Region
- Region 7: Bushbuckridge Region

For the researcher to acquire an overall picture of grade 1 teacher involvement in SBCD in the Northern Province, Region 3 represented suitable samples, as Northern Region has 6 inspection areas and different circuits which accommodate different South African cultures. (Refer to chapter 5 item 5.1.5.) The inspection areas are as follows:

- Area 1: Sekgosese
- Area 2: Soutpansberg
- Area 3: Vuwani
- Area 4: Thohoyandou
- Area 5: Malamulele
- Area 6: Mutale
The languages spoken in these areas are predominantly Northern Sotho, Afrikaans, Tshivenda and Xitsonga. The sample schools were selected from the circuits that form part of Region 3, in a purposeful stratified sampling procedure. (See chapter 3 paragraph 3.6.2). According to May (1997:87):

\[
a \text{purposeful stratified random sample may be used whereby a stratification according to characteristics such as age group, gender, type of housing, etc, is first made and then a random sample drawn from each of the stratified lists.}
\]

The areas are a suitable choice because they have as mode a wide range of experienced grade 1 teachers, and as wide a range of cultures at approximately 686 primary schools as indicated in chapter 4 paragraph 4.3.1.

In drawing up a representative sample of schools, the researcher will consider the rural-urban divide, a range of school types based on grade 1 teachers' involvement in curriculum design and the outcomes thereof. Altogether, the 20 sample schools representing the involvement of these grade 1 teachers from urban, peri-urban and rural areas will suffice.

Permission to gain access to research respondents within schools was obtained from the regional director, area managers and principals respectively see appendix. After such arrangements with the officials, the researcher secured an appointment to interview two grade 1 teachers from each respective learning programme (See appendices A1-A3).

Prior and after the interview session, the researcher endeavoured to create a relaxed atmosphere by pointing out to interviewees that the information he obtains would remain confidential and anonymous. Under no circumstances would it be disclosed by the principal or any other party in the top structure of the government. This would enable respondents to respond freely and effectively. (Compare research ethics in chapter 4 item 4.2.3 sub-headings 4.2.3.1-4.2.3.5).

The researcher avoided serious class disruptions by seeing to it that the interview session with each respondent did not exceed 15 minutes.
The time frame will be practical and realistic. In order to ensure retention of full information, a cassette recorder was utilised. Transcriptions will be written from the information on the cassettes. These transcriptions will only be made available on request.

Data collection was thus be carried out in various phases (see chapter 3 item 3.8 sub-headings 3.8.1-3.8.7). Although South Africa is still caught up in a period of transition, the first has been an audit phase that involves a baseline survey of resources and facilities available for the transactional and transformational OBE teaching and learning in the selected schools as required by Curriculum 2005 and Curriculum 21. Data on school and grade 1 teacher profiles were then obtained by a combination of site visits, self-completed questionnaires by grade 1 teachers, as well as individual discussions and interview sessions with them.

Grade 1 teachers representing the same learning area were not be interviewed simultaneously, so that even reticent respondents would be able to respond positively in the absence of their colleagues, who might influence the collection of data. Such data might otherwise be viewed as invalid and unreliable in the eyes of a researcher.

Another phase comprised classroom observation of the grade 1 teachers’ lessons (See appendix D in chapter 4 item 4.1.3). This entailed the use of a prepared schedule covering various aspects of classroom conditions, management, methods, use of materials, patterns of interactions and learner behaviour (see chapter four). Two lessons of each grade 1 teacher were observed and an analysis of the data involved would help to determine the effects of the availability, quality and use of materials on the processes of teaching and learning (see chapter 4 item 4.1 paragraphs 4.1.1-4.1.3).

1.5 RESEARCH MOTIVATION

The current “top down” curriculum implementation tension of teachers, evidenced in South African schools would be reduced by empowering grade 1 teachers to change curriculum components to meet local needs (see chapter 5 item 5.1 paragraphs 5.1.1-5.1.8). In order to achieve effective involvement and encourage partnership in curriculum decision-making and development within schools and across external levels in the education system, governance of the curriculum needs to be highly democratic and open.
This could become a reality when the expressing and taking action on viewpoints of all stakeholders in designing and developing the school *curriculum* are prerequisite (The Star 23rd June 1999:07).

Mutual dependence, necessitating a policy of equality in ownership and control of the school *curriculum* by *grade 1 teachers* and other legitimate parties, is crucial to successful implementation of the school *curriculum*. Compare chapter 2 paragraph 2.1.5, chapter 3 paragraph 3.12.3, chapter 4 paragraph 4.3.3 and chapter 5 item 5.1. Adopting a principle of democratic ownership might help to minimize conflict situations that normally arise when one party takes an upper hand in making *curriculum* decisions and in controlling the school *curriculum*. The dearth of expertise in *curriculum* issues is very prominent in the historically disadvantaged institutions. For teachers to be serviced, institutions of higher learning should have experts in all fields of education (Sowetan 19th May 1999:26).

The principle of an equal sharing of *curriculum* responsibilities is intended to reduce polarization of this type. While it is noted that different stakeholders confront different *curriculum* problems in their own settings, they share the common concern of bringing about and effecting appropriate *curriculum* programmes for learners. All parties should be prepared to share responsibilities involved to ensure that the system works effectively. There should be a training policy and a programme for preparing teachers for effective participation in *curriculum* decision-making and development. All pre-service teachers are expected to acquire *OBE* knowledge of, and basic skills in, *curriculum development* during their initial training programmes. Approaches to enhancing teachers' professional competency are however necessary beyond the pre-service phase.

Successful *curriculum development* is synonymous with the adequate availability and utilization of materials, equipment, information, personnel, time and space. In a nutshell, teachers as well as other *curriculum* experts need an adequate resource support base for *OBE* in order to carry out their curricular tasks. Participation and flexibility should be effected within an acknowledged framework which implies some limits. Such a system implies elements of co-ordination in order to unify the consistence of decision-making within and across levels. *Curriculum* continuity and co-ordination incorporate regular checks and balances, review and feedback, follow up, support and advisory services, thus facilitating a
common unity of purpose and engendering co-operation among all *curriculum development* participants who share common concerns.

The success or the failure of effective *grade 1 teacher involvement* in *curriculum design* and development has some limitations. For teachers to be trained in an *OBE* approach, the government needs to have the necessary funds. Apart from financial constraints, most schools have an abnormally high learner-teacher ratio. Continuous assessment as a key principle of *OBE* has its pitfalls in over-crowded classrooms. For learners to progress at their own pace, a principle of individualisation should be utilized. In view of these implications, the exercise might be seen as futile if *OBE* is not applied wisely in the South African context.

### 1.6 CLARIFICATION OF OPERATIONAL CONCEPTS

The following operational concepts which form an integral part of the study will be clarified:

#### 1.6.1 Grade 1 teacher

As from January 1997, the word “standard” was replaced with “*grade*”, therefore the first year of a learner’s schooling will be grade reception (grade 0) followed by grades 1 to 12, with grade 12 being equivalent to standard 10 or matriculation (Yearbook 1998: 323-324). *Grade 1 teachers*, formerly known as sub-A teachers, prior to the launch of *curriculum 2005*, are found in primary schools in the Foundation Phase. The National Qualification Framework (NQF) is comprised of three respective bands namely: GET, FET and HET (see table 1.1 regarding these bands).
### TABLE 1.1 TYPES OF NQF BANDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>School Grades</th>
<th>NQF Level</th>
<th>Band</th>
<th>Types of qualifications and certificates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>HIGHER EDUCATION</strong></td>
<td>Doctorates, Further research degrees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>AND</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>TRAINING BAND</strong></td>
<td>Degrees, Diplomas and Certificates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FURTHER EDUCATION AND TRAINING CERTIFICATES</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Further Education</td>
<td>School/College/NGOs Training certificates, Mix of units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>And Training Band</td>
<td>School/College/NGOs Training certificates, Mix of units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>School/College/NGOs Training certificates, Mix of units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>GENERAL EDUCATION AND TRAINING CERTIFICATES</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>Senior Phase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>GENERAL EDUCATION</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Intermediate Phase</td>
<td>ABET 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AND</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TRAINING BAND</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Grade R to Grade 3</td>
<td>ABET 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td></td>
<td>Foundation Phase</td>
<td>ABET 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pre-school</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• **General Education and Training Band (GET)**

This band functions on NQF level 1. Here, formal schooling consists of pre-school, i.e. pre-primary, foundation, i.e. junior primary, intermediate, which is senior primary, senior phase, which is junior secondary and senior secondary: Adult Basic Education (ABET: levels 1-4). The GET band also represents compulsory schooling (see figure 1.3) for *grade 1 teachers* in the foundation phase (*grade R to grade 3*).

• **Further Education and Training Band (FET)**

*Curriculum* 2005 (1997:31) shows that the Further Education and Training Certificate (FETC) will be given at the end of formal schooling, which is *grade 12* formerly known as *standard 10*. Learners, irrespective of age, who gain equivalent qualifications outside the South African schooling system are also entitled to obtain the FETC certificate. Schooling is non-compulsory in this band.

This band includes NQF levels 2, 3 and 4.

• **Higher Education and Training Band (HET)**

This band comprises NQF levels 5-8. On the one hand, within the HET band, learners will be able to obtain both certificate and diplomas offered by tertiary institutions such as colleges. On the other hand, institutions of higher learning such as technikons and university will be able to offer various degrees (*Curriculum* 2005 1997:31).

The development of a *curriculum* policy for the foundation phase, which includes Early Childhood Development (ECD), has been based on the following national policy documents,

- White Paper on Education and Training
- Interim Policy for ECD
The White Paper (1995:33) acknowledges that

"the care and development of young children must be the foundation of social relations and the starting point of human resources development strategies from the community to national levels".

From the above argument it is evident that grade 1 teachers should adhere to the overall goal of the national curriculum. The goal is to provide learners with opportunities to develop to their full potential as active, responsible and fulfilled citizens who can play a constructive role in a democratic, non-racist and equitable society (see chapter 6 item 6.2 paragraph 6.2.1).

Vermeulen (1997:25) echoes that the development of the child in totality should lead to a balanced personality so that he or she should be equipped with the necessary life skills. Some of the key principles guiding curriculum development for the ECD are:

- participation and ownership
- accountability
- anti-biased approach and many others.

ECD is applied to the process by which children from birth to nine years grow and thrive, physically and mentally, emotionally, morally and socially (White Paper 1995:33).

Grade 1 teachers must submit to the more exacting labour of winning the confidence of the learner, so that the learner accepts the educator – as someone who in turn accepts the learner before desiring to influence him. Social education is more profound than mere adjustment. Responsible behaviour by the grade 1 teacher in valuing discussion means responding, not merely concurring. Grade 1 teachers are not the unobtrusive scene shifters of progressive education any more than they are the authoritarian bearers of assured values of traditional education. Grade 1 teachers are figures seeking a meeting with figures in the making. They are primarily facilitators of learning towards outcomes.
1.6.2 Involvement

Recently, there has been renewed interest in building the curriculum around the interests of individual learners and the idea of a curriculum being teacher-proof has become less popular. Teacher-proof curricula, it must be remembered, are also learner-proof. Hence the decline in popularity of such materials is not so much because of constraints on teachers in curriculum development, as it is because of limitations on learners being placed by selecting only some topics for exploration.

The labelling of curricula as teacher-proof was one of the less subtle manifestations of a tide that ran against the involvement of grade I teachers in curricular decision-making. At the heart of the curriculum reforms of the 1950's and early 1960's was the conviction of the large foundations, federal government, and scholars in the disciplines that the same curriculum should be offered in schools throughout a country (Sowetan 20th April 1999:28). Grade I teachers were presented with the curriculum as a fait accompli and were given courses on how it should be used. The arena of free choice for the teacher was so restricted by the "new" curricula that the idea of the teacher as a curriculum developer all but disappeared from educational literature.

The noun "involvement" is based on the verb "involve" which means to share the experience or effect of a situation (Thompson 1996: 467). (See chapter 1 item 1.6.3.1, chapter 2 item 2.3.4, chapter 3 item 3.12.3.1 and chapter 5 item 5.1).

The Department of Education in the discussion document 1996:13 indicates that teachers are the key agents of quality learning and implementers of change. They should be involved in all policies, strategies and programmes in order to facilitate grade I teachers' ownership and empowerment.

Longstreet and Shane (1993:72) say that teachers are to provide for individual differences as they arise. Indeed, grade I teachers are also to develop resource materials when necessary. The educational background of grade I teachers who are currently in the profession was in the subject-based transmission-oriented curriculum. Grade I teachers were thus not really accustomed to a social-problems orientation, especially one that often involves controversy.
The cultural mindset of grade 1 teachers thus actively interferes with the establishment of an integrated curriculum based on a theme or problem-centred model, as is envisaged with Curriculum 2005 and Curriculum 21.

The controversy over whether grade 1 teachers should be involved in curriculum development is now in the spotlight. Those who do not believe that grade 1 teachers should be so involved tend to look upon grade 1 teachers as technicians rather than as professionals. What is often obscured in the arguments is that teachers are engaged in curriculum development. They make crucial decisions on what is to be taught and how it is to be taught. Many of these decisions must be made quickly by a person with immediate knowledge of individuals and groups – the grade 1 teacher. The problem, then, becomes one of how teachers may be helped to make better decisions, rather than whether teachers should make decisions.

The fact that the education policy for years excluded grade 1 teachers from participating in curriculum improvement must be reversed by involving grade 1 teachers in curriculum design and development. Although it appeared that teachers had come full circle, this was, unfortunately, not the case. Much ground had been lost in the interim; in a number of school systems, curriculum improvement had become synonymous with the adoption of innovations rather than the identification of curriculum problems and considered action for improvement. The effect on grade 1 teachers of a policy that considered their involvement in curriculum decisions as “unsuitable” is obvious. South African grade 1 teachers, too, have come to regard themselves as technicians; they believe that appropriate behaviour for grade 1 teachers does not go beyond following the grade 1 teacher’s guide to textbooks or the instructions on programmed materials. Grade 1 teachers will need to be treated as professionals if they are to function as professionals in the area of curriculum improvement. Grade 1 teachers base some aspects of their practical theories on experiences prior to teaching and on recreational experiences outside of school while they are grade 1 teachers. More importantly, grade 1 teachers develop themselves as they observe their own small experiments aimed at improving their work, and ascertain what works well (Mc Cutcheon 1995:39).
Grade 1 teachers are frequently victimized by the ways in which schools are currently organized and operated, with the result that they are unable to deviate from rigid curriculum-related specifications developed at the top for an entire school system. If grade 1 teachers continue to comply with that situation, they are abdicating their responsibility as grade 1 teachers. Knowledge arises out of ongoing conversations about things that matter, conversations that are themselves embedded within larger traditions of discourse that teachers have come to value (Applebee 1996:3). Participation is a key concept in Curriculum 2005/ Curriculum 21. All stakeholders should be actively involved.

Customarily, societal-level decisions have been the functions of local and state boards of education and deal with broad goals for all learners. Institutional-level decisions usually encompass a selection of more localised goals, materials, and methods of assessment for a school system or an individual school. At the classroom level, specific decisions are made within the general policy framework and carried out largely through grade 1 teacher leadership. For grade 1 teachers or their informed representatives to avoid involvement in decision-making about curriculum outcomes is professionally irresponsible. At the national and provincial levels, grade 1 teachers' voices can be heard even though boards and administrators convene the meetings. Not only should grade 1 teachers seek involvement in curriculum-planning, but they should also assume responsibility for involving learners in outcome-setting, planning alternative means for reaching educational outcomes, and evaluating progress.

Part of grade 1 teacher responsibility for responsive curriculum development is grade 1 teacher recognition of the complex nature of curriculum development and the need for expertise of many varieties. If grade 1 teachers themselves cannot contribute the competences that are needed in the process to express their point of view, it is their responsibility either to develop these skills collectively or to invite other competent persons into the curriculum dialogue. The role of the teacher cannot be by-passed by either the administrator or curriculum developer, because at the end of the day teachers have to teach. Decision and recommendations about curriculum development could be made by the Minister of Education, Directors-General and school-boards, but in the end grade 1 teachers' involvement or participation does not mean grade 1 teacher domination of the curriculum; yet it does suggest that SBCD is incomplete without the teachers' input (Carl 1995:82).
Teachers can stimulate dialogue about human values; they can teach the relationship of knowledge to decision-making and purposefully extend curriculum-planning to include a much wider range of resources. Studies of local and international literature in curriculum matters emphasize grade 1 teacher involvement in curriculum matters. There are unanimous feelings that effective grade 1 teacher involvement is essential. It should also be noted that without adequate grade 1 teacher involvement, the chances of successful implementation greatly diminish.

The above argument implies that the teacher’s work speaks for itself. The effectiveness of the grade 1 teacher’s service is determined by the quality of training and craftsmanship, the degree of involvement in the profession, and also the extent to which the teacher is trained to perform duties in the school and the classroom, as well as by the effectiveness with which the grade 1 teacher handles the instructional situation.

The problem is thus that teachers are not involved as curriculum developers. The involvement of grade 1 teachers in this respect is vested primarily in the curriculum development they undertake in their preparation of lesson units and at different levels of operation (see chapter 5).

1.6.3 Curriculum and its dimensions

Print (1993:9) is of the opinion that a curriculum encompasses all the planned learning opportunities offered to learners by the educators in institutions and the experiences that the learners encounter when the curriculum is implemented.

The term “curriculum” is derived from the Latin word “currere” which means “to run” or “race”. In time it came to mean the “course of study” (Lumadi 1995:10). Wiles and Bondi (1998:6) indicate that in the teaching-learning situation the curriculum is compared to a race or course which a learner is entitled to complete. These definitions both focus on the learner and the content as aspects of curriculum design (Lumadi 1995:10 and Wiles and Bondi 1998:6).
According to Longstreet and Shane (1993:47) the *curriculum* is defined as "the sum of experiences leading to the learning that occurs under the auspices of the school whether or not these are part of the written content guide."

A *curriculum* is referred to as "an organized set of intended learning outcomes leading to the achievement of educational goals" (Messick and Reynolds 1992:56). This definition goes hand in hand with the one of Parkay and Hass (1993:3), as it shows that a *curriculum* is concerned with behaviour learnt as a result of experiences with content.

From the foregoing definition, it is evident that a *curriculum* is a plan or programme for teaching and learning which is conceptualized in the light of certain selected outcomes. The three dimensions of *curriculum* are elaborated upon below.

1.6.3.1 Overt *Curriculum*

It is evident that the conceptualization of the terminology goes beyond the opinion of merely preparing a well thought document to be implemented at a later stage. When an overt *curriculum* is implemented at an institution of higher learning, e.g. university, college, technikon, or Further Education institutions such as secondary school, or General Education and Training institutions such as primary schools or kindergartens, interactions take place among learners, educators and the *curriculum* content, with the result that modification occurs and an overt *curriculum* emerges.

Cowie (1998:635) defines the adjective "overt" as "unconcealed or opened." In this study the researcher focuses on a *school-based curriculum* which requires simple preparation of the documents which can be applied. Examples therefore would include:

- schemes of work
- lesson plans
- tests and examinations
- assignments, homework
- projects
- time-tables
progress books and any form of ongoing (continuous) or summative assessment.

This *curriculum* is tailored to suit the needs and interests of the local environment. Its outcomes are clearly outlined. It can also be referred to as a "taught," "explicit," "planned," "organised" or "intended" *curriculum*, because learners are taught different learning areas as part of the *curriculum*. Furthermore, teaching and learning experiences are explicitly intended.

A successful policy regarding this *curriculum* overcomes a historically determined pattern of fragmentation, inequality and inefficiency. It increases access for black people, women, disabled and mature learners, and generates flexible models of learning and teaching, including models of delivery, to accommodate a large and more diverse learner population (Education White Paper 3 of 1997:05).

An overt *curriculum* is regarded as variable and positive for the development of the learners, and the planned education is aimed at attaining its educational outcomes. When the *curriculum* is open and explicit, desired changes for learners are transparent. Learners also become open and their individual needs can be recognised so that they can be easily helped.

An intended *curriculum* always has a specified location with planned experiences offered by the teachers. The learner can see clearly what is entailed by the *curriculum*. When an overt *curriculum* is implemented, all stakeholders are sure of what is happening at the level of implementation. They know what is expected from them and their expectations are derived from the *curriculum*. One could deduce that an overt *curriculum* comprises

- planned learning experience
- organised learning opportunity
- an academic setup
- a document
- outcomes to be attained.
One of the criticisms of *Curriculum* 2005 was that content was not specified in overt terms. Teachers thus had difficulty in selecting and finding appropriate content to fit stated outcomes.

**1.6.3.2 Covert curriculum**

"Covert" means secret, to disguise or to hide (Thompson 1996:194). A covert *curriculum* may also be referred to as a “hidden” *curriculum*.

The teaching and learning outcomes are implicitly intended. Print (1993:10) states that a hidden *curriculum* refers to the outcomes of education, and the processes leading to those outcomes, which are not explicitly intended by educators. The *grade 1 teacher* does not state the intended outcomes orally or in a written form and they are not included in educational statements such as official curricula, *curriculum* projects or school policy. This simply denotes that the covert *curriculum* is undersigned, outcomes are invariable and could become detrimental to learners’ development.

In any school *curriculum* learners receive planned and intentional learning as well as the unplanned and unintentional learning. Learners in a hidden *curriculum* do not know what is expected of them and what to expect in learning. An imposed message is not always clear, because the *grade 1 teacher* does not state what he or she wants to achieve, and as a result things happen spontaneously. In a covert *curriculum*, unlike an overt *curriculum*, learning is unintended and unplanned.

A covert *curriculum* can have positive outcomes because in a school set-up, learners for instance learn about how authority figures such as prefects, Student Representative Council (SRC) members, teachers and headmasters should be treated. They for instance learn about rules and regulations for a school, discipline and the fact that people are not equal in any society, they may observe the exemplary life of a *grade 1 teacher* which may be emulated by learners as a role model, and many other matters. When they learn Mathematics, English, Accountancy or any learning programme, they also learn all sorts of things which are not necessarily documented in any *curriculum*. These are the less obvious aspects which learners learn about at school.
On the other hand, a covert *curriculum* can also yield some pitfalls. The South African education system during the “apartheid” era was a tool to promote apartheid. The following is an example of a covert *curriculum* with negative connotations. In 1953, when H.F. Verwoerd was minister of Native Affairs at the time when Bantu Education was introduced, he stressed:

“... when I have control over native education I will reform it so that natives will be taught from childhood that equality with Europeans is not for them” and “we should not give the natives any academic education. If we do, who is going to do the manual labour in the community?” (Le Roux 1945 [National Party politician] cited in Christie 1992:12).

A covert *curriculum* can be the result of:

- a divided schooling system;
- government control;
- the authority structure of school,
- school organization;
- examination and certification procedures and processes; and
- particular teaching strategies and methods and many others.

1.6.3.3 Null *Curriculum*

Shulman (1990:51) defines the null *curriculum* as those areas of learning content, intellectual processes and values which are left out of the constructed *curriculum*. No *curriculum* contains everything. Decisions have to be made with various stakeholders about the components which should be included in the *curriculum*. The adjective null means something which is invalid and non-existent (Cowie 1998:608). A *curriculum* may be regarded as null, if it does not meet the learning needs of learners and also hampers SBCD.

Although this may *de facto* be an invalid *curriculum*, it may be viewed as an official *curriculum* by a particular body or government. The *curriculum* policy and guidelines are formulated by the National Department of Education. An example thereof would include: teachers’ guides, learners’ guides, textbooks, equipment and many others. The National Department’s role is to promote the clarity of education and training policies from the GNU,
also those included in the Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP), and to promote the provisions of the Constitution into a national framework within which institutions can develop their human resources (Yearbook 1998:318).

A criticism to be levelled against this type of curriculum is that it is a centre-periphery model. It does not address the needs and interests of an entire community. It is drawn up by people who do not know the problems experienced in the practical teaching-learning situations. Although government officials, teachers, parents and learners are stakeholders in the curriculum, teachers are expected to implement a curriculum which is disseminated to them without prior involvement.

Neither grade I teachers nor curriculum developers should possess absolute professional autonomy over the school curriculum, independently of other groups who should have legitimate claim. Grade I teachers are more qualified to devise the most relevant curriculum than other curriculum developers who may be unaware of the local needs and experience of learners. The characteristics of a null curriculum are as following:

(a) The decision-making structure

In this case the government structures are mostly hierarchic. In a school, the principal is largely responsible for curriculum decision-making. His decision is always final and no consultation is allowed. (See chapter 5 paragraph 5.1.2.1).

(b) The teacher’s role paradigm

Brady (1990:14) shows that SBCD involves a change in teachers’ perceptions of their role. Once considered to be the implementers of prescribed curricula, grade I teachers are expected to take an active role in curriculum development. (Refer to chapter 6 item 6.2 paragraph 6.2.2). Grade I teachers in a null curriculum are viewed as “passive acceptors” of the null curriculum. Unless grade I teachers were to make a major adjustment, SBCD could not function effectively.
(c) The problem of expertise

The expertise of most government officials in developing a relevant school *curriculum* is questionable. In fact some were trained when courses in *curriculum development* at institutions of higher learning were rudimentary or non-existent. Not only may there be a lack of experience, but there may also be a lack of theoretical knowledge and some confusion as to an appropriate procedure for developing a *curriculum*.

A null *curriculum* does not ascertain the exact nature and area of the dissatisfaction. It may be that developers are not concerned with relevance of the content and processes in the existing *curriculum* which may not necessitate the rewriting of outcomes and methodologies.

1.6.4  *Curriculum development, decision-making and meta-orientations*

Shiundu and Omulando (1992:159) are of the idea that *curriculum development* is the planning of learning opportunities intended to bring about certain changes in the learners. It also involves the assessment of the extent to which these changes have taken place. They identify the following nine stages of *curriculum development*:

- Situation analysis
- Formulation of outcomes
- Setting of the *curriculum* project
- Programme building
- Piloting the new programme in selected schools
- Improving the programme
- Implementation
- Evaluation and
- Maintenance.

According to Brady (1990:21) *curriculum development* begins with a critical examination of the situation at the school level, and because every school is different, a situation analysis cannot be transferred from one school to another. Only when the situation is understood, can a *curriculum* be developed to fulfil the potential of that situation.
Carl (1995:82), in support of Brady (1990:21), takes a step further by showing that decisions and recommendations about the *curriculum* could be made by the Minister of Education, Director General and school boards, but in the end *grade 1 teachers' involvement* or participation does not mean *grade 1 teacher* domination of the *curriculum*, but rather suggests that *curriculum development* is incomplete without the *grade 1 teachers'* participation.

*Curriculum development* may also be referred to as the process of planning, implementing, innovating and assessing learning experiences and opportunities intended to produce desired changes in learners (Vermeulen 1997:18). *Curriculum development* could be fostered by cross institutional sharing of high quality learning materials. Both the quality and cost effectiveness of teacher education provision is likely to be improved by conceiving of it as an organic system which needs to find innovative ways to exploit institutional linkages and the rapidly expanding range and variety of communication and information media technology (Department of Education 1996:74).

Van der Stoep and Louw (1992:215) propound that *curriculum development* must recognise that the planning of teaching which is the outcome of research must also keep the level of achievement in mind. It is of vital importance that *grade 1 teachers* should be directly involved in *curriculum development* because they have much knowledge concerning the choice of strategies and materials that should be included in the *curriculum*. It is unlikely that a single *curriculum* developer, acting independently, will be able to choose successfully the most appropriate *curriculum* packages on behalf of *grade 1 teachers* and learners in different geographical and social locations.

Söhnge, De Munnik, Van der Horst and Vakalisa (1999:27-29) identify the three types of *curriculum* decision-making and meta-orientations.

### 1.6.4.1 Transmission orientation

A transmission orientation is also viewed as an autocratic or traditional approach. Two parties are identified in this orientation. On the one hand, there is a *curriculum* which is designed and developed by a government. On the other hand, there is a school which should
implement the *curriculum* in the teaching-learning situation. This is a one-way traffic system, in which the needs and interests of learners are not considered. The system is top-down because the *curriculum* is centrally designed and transmitted to the school for implementation. It may also be regarded as a subject-centred design model because the content is always at the centre of the *curriculum* process.

The *curriculum* is disseminated from the national level to schools around the country. (Compare chapter 5 item 5.1.8). The system is not open to public comment and it ignores other stakeholders in the sense that they are not fully involved in *curriculum* decision-making. Rote learning is encouraged and learners memorize textbook knowledge without understanding. The learners act passively and respond to a structured learning situation (see figure 1.4).

**Figure 1.4 A transmission orientation**

![Diagram of transmission orientation](image)

*Söhnge, De Munnik, Van der Horst and Vakalisa (1999:22)*

The Education White Paper 3 of (1997:23) shows that successful negotiation and co-operative practice depend on the parties reaching agreement about the mission of the institution and this joint responsibilities toward it. The challenges of modern societies cannot be met by either party acting alone.

*Söhnge, de Munnik, Van der Horst and Vakalisa (1999:22)* maintain that *curriculum* planning in the transmission paradigm takes place in terms of a mechanistic concept of human behaviour. The transfer of facts from teachers to learners amounts to a one-way communication. It is an atomistic paradigm in which reality is broken down into distinct, separate elements. It is philosophically allied with an empiricist world view, psychologically allied with behaviourism, and politically allied with the conservative economic theory,
laissez-faire capitalism, which is characterised by an atomistic view of economic and social activity. In short, this is a centralized curriculum system. The previous curriculum in South Africa was typical of a transmission-oriented, content-driven curriculum.

1.6.4.2 Transaction orientation

The transaction orientation is a dialogical approach. It may also be viewed as a theme or problem-centred design model because real life problems should always be at the centre of the curriculum process.

Emphasis is on curriculum strategies which facilitate cognitive problems-solving skills, with which knowledge may be constructed. The transaction between the curriculum and the learners is a two-way traffic system. A learner-oriented philosophy is important to secure learner involvement and success which is critical to their learning (National Department of Education 1996:11). Although the system is two way, the final decision regarding the curriculum comes from the centre. The grade 1 teacher must be familiar with the appropriate resources and be able to stimulate inquiry with probes and questions. The grade 1 teacher will also be interested in how learners think and how they approach problems, and be able to listen to their reasons and thinking processes (see figure 1.5)

![Figure 1.5](image-url)

_Sohnge, De Munnik, Van der Horst and Vakalisa (1999:22)_

Sohnge, de Munnik, Van der Horst and Vakalisa (1999:24) indicate that a transaction-oriented evaluation focuses on the learner’s acquisition of complex intellectual frameworks and skills and on social skills that are important in a democratic context. This curriculum is viewed as a regional or decentralized system. The goal of curriculum based on the transaction position is the development of rational intelligence in general and complex problem solving skills in particular. This type of curriculum meets certain principles of OBE,
for example a dialogue between learners, and a focus on critical thinking and curriculum problem solving, and on the teacher as facilitator.

1.6.4.3 Transformation orientation

This is a school-based curriculum system which implies teacher involvement and democratic ownership of the curriculum. Brady (1992:17) shows that a transformation orientation aims at encouraging teachers to take a greater role in programme creation but assumes a set of activities outside of individual classroom as necessary to bring about desired outcomes.

Without the active involvement of all stakeholders in education the vision of quality education cannot be realised (School Governance; Northern Province 1997:3). Administering the curriculum can very easily become a matter of adjusting learners and teachers to a general pattern of instruction that has long since been accepted as the only way of providing schooling. Keeping the existing instructional machinery oiled is the main job in this approach of administration. The basic principle is that through practice in controlling learners in school situations, learners will be better prepared to participate in community and government after school years. There is nothing alarming or sensational about the idea that learners learn through experience. This is as old as life itself. The only learning that comes to a learner takes place through the steps he or she takes to do something. A learner needs direction and advice from his teacher but he must also take the initiative in acting and doing.

The transformation orientation concentrates on skills which can be used to bring about personal and social changes. Social change entails entering into a relationship with the environment (see figure 1.6). The outcomes of this orientation are self-transcendence, self actualization and social involvement. The curriculum focuses on learning experiences that centre around inter-disciplinary activities. Disciplines are intertwined, e.g. one’s internal and external worlds, and relations between school and community are sought; the curriculum tends to be oriented around projects of a social nature related to self-inquiry. Grade 1 teachers in this meta-orientation will forge linkages with the community; which will in turn, facilitate learner contact with the community (Söhnge, De Munnik, Van der Horst and Vakalisa 1999:25).
See table 1.2 for a detailed discussion on the *curriculum* dimensions or meta-orientations.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Outcome</th>
<th>Transmission</th>
<th>Transaction</th>
<th>Transformation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Outcomes</strong></td>
<td>Behavioural Content-oriented</td>
<td>Complex intellectual skills</td>
<td>Integrated outcomes e.g. Cognitive, psychomotor and affective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Content</strong></td>
<td>Knowledge viewed atomistically as objective Content should reinforce traditional values</td>
<td>Knowledge is related to mental process and cognitive frameworks. Social content focuses on public policy questions</td>
<td>Personal knowledge is as important as public knowledge. Social content stresses identification and resolution of pressing social concerns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Teaching Strategies</strong></td>
<td>Structured teaching approaches Transmission of facts and values.</td>
<td>Focus is on problem solving and analysis. Teaching strategies are matched to learner developmental frameworks.</td>
<td>Focus on connecting inner life of learner to outer worlds. Divergent thinking is encouraged. Authentic learning activities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Organisation</strong></td>
<td>Subject-centred design Hierarchical</td>
<td>Problem-centred design Developmental</td>
<td>Learner-centred design Integrative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Study of New Programmes</strong></td>
<td>Focus on content</td>
<td>Focus on how teaching methodologies affect cognitive processes</td>
<td>Focus on how the programme affects the learner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Resources</strong></td>
<td>Textbooks</td>
<td>Variety of resources to stimulate mental processes</td>
<td>Human resources are stressed; personal growth of teacher is central.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Roles</strong></td>
<td>Roles fixed within system hierarchy. No flexibility</td>
<td>Roles more flexible, allows for interaction among teachers</td>
<td>Roles very flexible with emphasis on informal relationship among teachers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Professional development</strong></td>
<td>General professional development sessions focus on information transmission</td>
<td>More individualised professional development Stress on practice and feedback.</td>
<td>Individual professional development, emphasis on coaching and personal growth for teachers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Timeline</strong></td>
<td>Short timeline, implementation seen as event, not process</td>
<td>Reasonable, flexible timeline, implementation seen as process, not event</td>
<td>Long, flexible timeline Implementation seen as holistic process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Communication system</strong></td>
<td>One-way traffic, top-down approach</td>
<td>Two-way traffic and Interactive communication</td>
<td>Two-way interactive communication, that goes beyond cognitive elements, combination of top-down and bottom-up approach.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Monitoring system</strong></td>
<td>Focus on accountability through use of tests</td>
<td>Variety of methods used to monitor progress</td>
<td>Informal methods are used, particularly teacher feedback, formative and continuous.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Söhnge, De Munnik, Van der Horst and Vakalisa (1999:27-29)
1.6.5 *School-Based Curriculum development*

*School-Based Curriculum development* represents a way of decentralising education control. The whole process of *curriculum development* is regarded as the responsibility of the different relevant people such as teachers, learners, parents and the community, who must be involved right from the beginning until the implementation stage.

According to Marsh (1992:128) *SBCD* includes the planning, designing, implementing and assessing of a programme of learners' learning by the educational institution of which those learners are members.

Print (1993:20) in support of Marsh (1992:128) stresses that *SBCD* is the development of a *curriculum*, or an aspect of it, by one or more grade 1 teachers in a school to meet the perceived needs of a school population, that is an on-site resolution, in *curriculum* terms, of problems experienced with the existing curricula.

In the analysis of the above definitions, although postulated by different educationists, one comes to the conclusion that *SBCD* can only be possible when identified and existing problems have been acknowledged by grade 1 teachers in that particular institution, and when basic and action research have been carefully conducted. *SBCD* can only be successfully carried out when a situation analysis and a needs assessment have been conducted. The researchers as well as the *curriculum* developers can then come up with solutions and a plan of action, i.e. strategies that will enable the school teachers and their principal to implement the *curriculum*.

Marsh (1992:128) emphasises four aspects of *SBCD*, namely:

- shared decision-making between teachers and learners;
- *SBCD* is internal and organic;
- involves a network of relationship with various groups;
- it is characterised by a definite pattern of values, norms, procedures and roles.
The above aspects confirm that problems are identified by the concerned group (i.e. teachers and learners) and that they are directly involved. These are the people who have a firsthand knowledge of the situation and they also know what their particular needs are. Shared decision-making is therefore vitally important. (Compare chapter 2 paragraph 2.1.2.6, chapter 3 paragraph 3.12, chapter 4 item 4.3.3 and chapter 5 item 5.1).

SBCD is one of the constituents of the school structure, because it has a very strong relationship with all the activities that are done to improve the internal school functioning. There must be relevancy to what other groups are doing in the development of such a curriculum, e.g. the values and norms of the community should be taken into consideration. Norms and standards for procedures and roles played by different groups are to be relevant to SBCD.

Van der Horst and McDonald (1997:86) reveal that the learning outcomes and the experiences are for the learner to master. There should be a paradigm shift from a teacher competence-based curriculum to a learner-based curriculum by encouraging learners to exhibit their own competence in demonstrating what they are able to do on their own, without teachers’ driving inputs. This approach is typical of an outcomes-based curricular approach, as envisaged in Curriculum 2005 and Curriculum 21.

In order to achieve effective curriculum decision-making and development, African governments and education systems should change from their current directive and authoritarian curriculum development practices to more participatory approaches which incorporate teachers at the local level in effective decision-making responsibility. For details regarding School-Based Curriculum development see chapter two.
1.6.6 *The Northern Province*

The Republic of South Africa is comprised of nine provinces, namely:

- Gauteng
- Western Cape
- Eastern Cape
- Northern Cape
- Kwazulu-Natal
- North West
- Free State
- Mpumalanga
- *Northern Province.*

For details regarding the nine provinces of the Republic of South Africa, see figure 1.7.
Figure 1.7 The Provinces of South Africa
The Northern Province is the fifth largest of South Africa's nine provinces (10% of the total area) and the third largest in terms of school enrolment with 1 642 417 learners in 1991, updated to 1 873 023 in 1994. The figure increased by 1 975 learners from 1995 to 2 549 159 in 1999. This figure simply denotes that the Northern Province has 16%-20% of the total school population of South Africa. It is also imperative to take proper cognizance of the fact that population estimates on 27 April 1994 indicate that of the 5 201 630 people living in the Northern Province, 5 044 880 are Africans (97%), with a very small number of Whites, Coloureds and Indians (Republic of South Africa 1994a). The current figure shows that of the 5 802 566 people residing in the Northern Province 5 612 180 are Africans (97.2%) with a number of whites, Coloureds and Indians (Republic of South Africa 1999a).

It should be noted that the former African education systems of the Department of Education and Training (DET), Venda, Lebowa and Gazankulu were responsible for the education of the vast majority of learners in the Northern Province. Its population density is relatively high with 41 people per square kilometre, making it the third most densely populated province after Gauteng and Kwazulu Natal (Scott 1995:6).

The large population of the Northern Province and its high growth rate have important implications for the planning of infrastructure, particularly educational and health facilities. Another important demographic factor is that the Northern Province suffers from the second highest male migration rate of all provinces, i.e. 28%. This means that almost one third of all men do not live with their families but have become migrant labourers. The former Venda, Lebowa and Gazankulu “homelands” could not provide sufficient employment opportunities for the rapidly growing labour force, which has led workers to migrate to the larger industrial, mining or urban nodes in adjacent districts, especially Gauteng.
Grade 1 teacher qualifications in the Northern Province are poor (e.g. 79.5% under-qualified African teachers in 1991). The Northern Province has the greatest number of under-qualified primary and secondary teachers in the country (Scott 1995:vii). The data provided above indicates that the Northern Province requires in depth research in the field of education, as the people in this Province need guidelines on developing their educational institutions maximally.

1.7 SYNTHESIS

The statement of the problem in this chapter enables the researcher to explore the field of investigation by means of the implementation of the research instruments and qualitative research as a strategy to address problems in SBCD – see chapter 3. The results of chapters 2, 3 and 4 will thus be logically analysed, interpreted and synthesised in order to arrive at guidelines which may serve as a framework for grade 1 teachers' involvement in SBCD in the Northern Province.

1.8 FURTHER PROGRAMME AND CHAPTER DIVISION

This study comprises 6 chapters, namely:

Chapter 1

This chapter comprises an introductory orientation (see aim of chapter for details).

Chapter 2

A literature study on the theories of SBCD and OBE is undertaken. The problems of both SBCD and OBE theories are reflected and a theoretical component and background present a basis for assessing the significance of SBCD in an OBE framework.
Chapter 3

In this chapter empirical research is dealt with at great length. A literature review on qualitative research as a strategy to address problems in SBCD is first undertaken. Thereafter an analysis of this information forms the foundation for the application of research theory to practice in schools in the Northern Province.

Chapter 4

Research instruments and data analysis are explored in a comprehensive way. Qualitative research is implemented and the research sample and findings thereof are presented in a systematic way.

Chapter 5

Guidelines with regard to grade 1 teacher involvement in SBCD are formulated with a view to empowering involvement to be able to develop a School-Based Curriculum. These guidelines evolve from the literature study and qualitative research data analysis dealt with in chapters 2, 3 and 4.

Chapter 6

Evolving from the study, the final chapter provides a summary of the research results, a conclusion and recommendations for an improved curriculum policy and teaching practice in South Africa.

Diagrammatically a further programme and chapter division could be illustrated as follows:
In the next chapter the theories of both SBCD and OBE will be investigated.
CHAPTER TWO

THEORIES OF SCHOOL-BASED CURRICULUM DEVELOPMENT (SBCD) AND OUTCOMES-BASED EDUCATION (OBE)

Aim of chapter 2: Chapter 1 provided an introductory orientation, statement of the problem, outcome of the study, research motivation and a further programme and chapter division. Chapter 2 will address the theories of both SBCD and OBE (based on a literature study). The theoretical component and background thereof will present a basis for the importance of SBCD in an OBE framework.

2.1 SCHOOL-BASED CURRICULUM DEVELOPMENT AND ITS NATURE

The concept of School-Based Curriculum development (hereafter referred to by the acronym SBCD) is used in various ways in literature but typically as a slogan for devolution of control, for grass roots decision-making, and as a representation of the polar opposite of centralized education. SBCD gained both credence and support in the 1970s. Furthermore it became one of the major factors in curriculum development in England, Wales and South Australia except in Queensland. Brady (1992:3) shows that in Australia, there has been a developing trend towards the devolution of educational decision-making from central authorities to the schools. Part of this trend is a shift in responsibility for curriculum decision-making to grade 1 teachers. This shift stems from beliefs that curriculum decisions should be made by the grade 1 teachers who are implementing them and that the decisions should be shared by all who are involved. (Compare chapters 4 paragraph 4.3.3 and 5 paragraph 5.1.1-5.1.8).

According to Burton (1992:17)

"SBCD aims at encouraging teachers to take a greater role in program creation but assumes a set of activities outside of individual classrooms as necessary to bring about desired outcomes."
SBCD concerns itself not only with the initiation of the changes but also with the staffing and administration implications that arise. The school rather than the classroom is the context in which planning and support activities take place. The educational team rather than the individual teacher is the operational unit. Hence those who are ultimately responsible for implementing the *curriculum* are given a greater degree of commitment to the *curriculum* on the part of the *curriculum* design team, as well as a more valid *curriculum* design.

Brady (1992:21) claims

"SBCD implies a model of *curriculum development* which begins with an analysis of the factors which comprise the situation. This is a more comprehensive approach to *curriculum development* than the traditional approach embodied in the objectives model which begins with objectives, but which does not provide a detailed account of the source of those objectives".

Often unplanned and at times unnoticed, SBCD nonetheless plays a significant part, even a major part, in determining the details of the *curriculum* followed in an increasing number of schools both at primary and secondary level in South Africa in general, and *Northern Province* in particular. More importantly, it has become a key instrument for the exercise of power within the school system.

Print (1993:13) stresses that

"SBCD is the development of a *curriculum*, or an aspect of it, by one or more teachers in a school to meet the *perceived needs* of a school population, that is, an one-site resolution, in *curriculum* terms, of problems experienced with the existing curricula".
This resolution is carried out by grade 1 teachers, with or without outside advice, as they are considered to be those educators most aware of learners' needs. In effect, then, SBCD is the reverse of the bureaucratic, hierarchical, centralist approach to curriculum development. Examples of SBCD would include multicultural experiences in a multi-ethnic school. SBCD is one of the constituents of the school structure because it has a very strong relationship with all the activities that are done to improve the internal school functioning. There must be relevancy to what other groups are doing in the development of such a curriculum, e.g. the values and norms of the community should be borne in mind. Norms and standards for procedures and roles played by different groups are to correlate with SBCD.

Brady (1990:04) stresses that the curricula of schools in England and Wales have always been determined within the school to a substantial extent. The autonomy of the professional grade 1 teacher is one of the most central features of the educational arrangements of England and Wales. Subject to broad constraints, the grade 1 teacher has been trusted to “act professionally” to determine his or her own curriculum and methodology in a manner that is appropriate for the learners he or she teaches, the community in which they live and the school and its resources wherein his work is undertaken. Yet the autonomy of the grade 1 teacher in the curriculum has until very recently been exercised as the freedom to follow a largely traditional curriculum (Molteno in Kallaway 1990:50).

Shiundu and Omulando (1992:216) show that professional responsibility has been believed to be best exercised by the adoption of tried and tested forms of knowledge that have stood the test of time.

For almost a century, professional autonomy has not, except in isolated examples, led to curriculum development in any regularly recognisable form. Writing about grade 1 teacher autonomy in the curriculum, one could say that it tends to embrace beliefs that the knowledge, skills and values learnt by previous generations have a continuing and major validity in the socialisation of the young; that the curriculum possesses a
"mystique" into which the young are initiated and that, when received by those who are
chosen to receive it, it will be of continuing relevance throughout their adult lives.

Such a curriculum has usually been a subject curriculum comprising separate elements
representing established disciplines or forms of knowledge, that if not "given" are
certainly legitimated by practice. Grade 1 teachers who have sought to use their
professional autonomy to establish alternative or experimental curricula have found
themselves, in most cases, obliged to work in the experimental or "progressive" school.

Marsh (1992:128) defines SBCD as "the planning, designing, implementing and
evaluating of a programme of learners' learning by the educational institutions of which
those students are members." He also points out that SBCD is a new name for an old
idea. The idea is that the best place for designing the curriculum is where the learner and
the grade 1 teacher meet. For example, unlike the Sophists, who claimed to have plans
and schemes to teach anyone useful knowledge and pre-defined techniques, Socrates built
up his curriculum in and through a relationship with students who displayed an aptitude
for philosophical and mathematical reasoning. This was SBCD with the public places of
Athens serving as the school and the joint dialectical experiences of the teacher, his peers
and his public constituting the curriculum".

Glatthorn (1994:66) argues that SBCD should operate within the parameters of the
curriculum of the district to ensure equity and co-ordination across the district. Yet the
assumption that school-based planning should operate within the district's limits does not
mean that school leaders have no role in curriculum development. As a matter of fact,
they play a very active part in developing a special curriculum for their school within
district constraints.

Irrespective of the committee structure used for curriculum work at the school, there will
be a need for strong leadership, which is typically prompted by the principal – compare
chapter 1 item 1.6.3.3 paragraph (a) and chapter 5 paragraph 5.1.2.1.
To recap on what was highlighted in the preceding paragraphs, definitions of SBCD reflect to a large degree the predispositions of the respective authors. For example, Skilbeck (1992:2) defines SBCD as:

"the planning, design, implementation and evaluation of a programme of students' learning by the educational institution of which those students are members." This definition in itself may seem quite acceptable in accompanying descriptions, Skilbeck is emphasizing particular aspects such as shared decision-making between teachers and students; that SBCD is internal and organic to the institution; and that it involves a network of relationships with various groups and is characterized by a definite pattern of values, norms, procedures and roles.

From the analysis of the foregoing definitions of SBCD, one can draw the conclusion that SBCD can only be possible when identified and existing problems have been acknowledged by teachers, in that particular institutional and basic and action research have been carefully conducted. A successful SBCD depends on the democratic or liberal management of the institution so that opportunities can be created for committed and industrious grade 1 teacher work in a responsible manner.

2.1.1 Features of SBCD

According to Brady (1992:05)
(a) SBCD implies teacher participation. This may involve only teachers or other groups as well, but teachers have a significant input. (Compare chapter 5 items 5.1.1-5.1.8).
(b) SBCD does not of necessity need to be a whole school exercise. The exercise in SBCD could apply to a few classes (for example, junior primary or upper primary) or to some aspect of content (for example, core subject or non-core subjects or psychomotor developing subjects) or some approaches to teaching (for example,
competency-based education or behaviour modification) or finally, some particular developments in evaluation (for example, non-testing evaluation).

(c) SBCD should not imply severance from the centre. It does, however, imply different development according to local needs. It also involves a shift of responsibility for curriculum decision-making (Bauer and Sapona 1994:92-93).

(d) Teachers and administrators will need to modify their outdated roles. They will need to become more concerned with the development of the total curriculum and with the sharing of decision-making power in curriculum areas (Caldwell and Spinks 1992:81).

(e) SBCD may be selective, adaptive or creative, that is, teachers may concentrate upon the provision of appropriate resources; they may adapt existing materials to meet the needs of their students; or they may be involved in creating new curricula.

(f) SBCD is a continuing and dynamic process. As well, support structures such as advisers, finances and materials, are necessary in order to keep the process on-going (Print 1993:13).

2.1.2 Characteristics of SBCD

Various characteristics of SBCD will be discussed below. Based on different theories of management, many aspects of the school’s internal functioning may differ between school-based management and external control management (see table 2.1).
TABLE 2.1. SCHOOL-BASED MANAGEMENT AND EXTERNAL CONTROL MANAGEMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INTERNAL FUNCTIONING</th>
<th>SCHOOL-BASED MANAGEMENT</th>
<th>EXTERNAL CONTROL MANAGEMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **School Mission**   | *Mission clear, shared, and developed willingly.  
*Emphasize participation in developing educational mission.  
*Strong and unique organizational culture exists.  
| **Nature of School Activities** | *School-based activities: Managing and educating according to characteristics and needs of a school.  
| **Management Strategies concept of Human Nature** | *Theory Y  
*complex person.  
*Participation and development regarded as important.  
| **Concept of School Organisation** | *School is an institution in which earners, teachers and administrators live, everybody has the right for development.  
| **Style of Decision-making** | *Decentralization.  
*Participation of teachers, parents and even students.  
| **Leadership Style** | *Multi-level leadership: symbolic, cultural and education leadership in addition to technical and human leadership.  
| **Use of Power** | *Mainly expert and reference power.  
| **Managing Techniques** | *Sophisticated scientific techniques  
| **Use of Resources** | *Autonomy, self-budgeting.  
*According to school needs.  
*In time to solve problems.  
*Tend to broaden sources of education resources.  
| **Role Differences Role of School** | *Active-developing style: exploit all possibilities for development of the school, teachers, and learners.  
*Problem-solving.  
| **Role of Central Authority** | *Supporter and advisor.  
| **Role of School** | *Goal developer and leader.  
| **Role of Central Authority** | *Strict supervisor and controller.  
| **Role Differences** | *Passive-receptive style: implement centralized mission, follow administration procedure.  
*Avoid making mistakes.  
| **Role** | *Watcher of static goals.  

*Mission unclear, given by outside, not developed and accepted by members.  
*Emphasize keeping and implementing external mission.  
*Weak and vague organizational culture exists.  
Non school-based activities: content and style of education and management determined by external authority.  
*Theory X  
*Rational Economic man  
*Supervision and control regarded as important.  
School is a tool, teacher is employee, kept when needed, out when not needed.  
*Centralization.  
*Administrators make decisions.  
*Low level leadership: mainly technical and human leadership.  
*Mainly legitimate, reward and coercive power.  
*Simple techniques or experiences.  
*Simple techniques or experiences.  
*Tightly restricted by the central.  
*According to external rules.  
*Apply and wait for permission procedures for more resources.
| Administrator                      | *People resources starter and coordinator.  
|                                    | *Resources controller.                                  |
| Role of Teacher                   | *Partner.                                                | *Employee. |
|                                    | *Decision maker.                                         | *Follower. |
|                                    | *Developer.                                               | *Order receiver. |
|                                    | *Implementer.                                             | *Implementer. |
| Role of Parent                    | *Receiver of quality services.                           | *Receiver of quantity services. |
|                                    | *Partner positive.                                        | *Outsider: not eligible for participation and cooperation. |
|                                    | *Shared commitment.                                       |
|                                    | *Organizational climate: Commitment style.                |
| Human Relations                   | *Partnership                                              | *Hierarchical. |
|                                    | *Team spirit, open and cooperative.                       | *Superior subordinates, closed and defensive. |
|                                    | *Shared commitment.                                       | *Conflict of interest and Organisational climate: headless disengagement, or control style. |
|                                    | *Organisational climate: commitment style.               |
| Quality of Administrator          | *Possess knowledge techniques of modern management.      | *Possess considerable administrative experience. |
|                                    | *Continue to learn and grow discover and solve problems. | *Work according to ordinances and rules, avoid problems. |
|                                    | *Open-minded.                                             | *Familiar with current ordinances. |
| Index of Effectiveness            | *Multi-level and multiple, including input, process and output, academic achievement being only one of them. | *Pay much attention to academic achievement or a few final outcomes, neglect the process and development. |
|                                    | *Evaluation is a learning process for school improvement. | *Evaluation is a means of administrative supervision. |

Adapted from Yukl (1994:10)

2.1.2.1 School Mission

A school without a mission does not have a direction. Shiundu and Omulando (1992: 238) claim, that universally, causes leading to higher attention rates focus on poor professional environment. (Compare chapter 4 item 4.3 paragraph 4.3.1 and chapter 5 item 5.1.2). Although almost every school seems to have a mission, many are abstract and impractical such as “to develop the five virtues of a person”, “to foster human ability for the society”, “to educate people to become talented”, etc. All these cannot be used as guidelines for the managing and teaching activities of a school. From the viewpoint of external control management, the school is regarded as a tool which implements the standard education mission given by the central authority, with well organized
supervision of teaching. Unified public examinations are often used as a focus, which influences teaching. The ideal of a school itself may thus seem to be unimportant or vague, and the ideal of guiding teaching activities has in fact been externally moulded or given. No development of or commitment to the school mission is needed for school members. If we believe that the ideal or mission of a school represents its organizational culture, then schools under external control management probably lack a vivid and strong organizational culture which motivates school members to be hard-working and fully involved in the school (Schein 1992: 49).

2.1.2.2 School-based activities

Hargreaves (1994:17) believes that SBCD is based on the beliefs that the curriculum consists of experiences, and that there should be development from the learners' needs and characteristics, so that it represents a commitment to the view that educational provision must be individualized. A large measure of freedom for both teacher and learner is a necessary condition for education. SBCD views the school as a human social institution. The school must be responsive to its own way.

In terms of management, the school process may be differentiated into either school-based or non school-based control. The nature of school-based activities means that a school, conducts its educational activities according to the characteristics, needs and situation of the school, while the nature of non school-based activities means a school allows external factors (especially the central authorities) to decide its educational activities.

When a school is externally controlled, it implements any assigned tasks according to the policy of the central authority. The content and method of teaching and examinations tend to have unified standards and the facilities, personnel organization, teaching and managing of the school are all carefully controlled by the external central authority and therefore the activities of the school are in essence non-school-based. For example, the curriculum of South African schools is standardized, directed and controlled by the
central authority. Although school-based curriculum design has been advocated recently, it is confined to changes in teaching methods and teaching aids. Undoubtedly, when school management remains externally controlled, it is difficult for school activities to become really school-based (Sergiovanni 1992:19).

It has thus been shown that school-based control is important in enhancing the quality of education. It indirectly promotes the change to school management from the external control model to the school-based model. However, the effectiveness of any individual school-based activity, such as school-based staff development, always depends on the extent to which the school is functioning in the mode of school-based management. Therefore, it is not difficult to understand why School-Based Curriculum development activities often cannot be effectively carried out in externally controlled schools.

2.1.2.3 Management strategies

Stoll and Fink (1992:88) are of the opinion that the change along the direction from external control management to SBCD can be reflected in the following aspects of management strategies: concept of human nature, concept of school organization, decision-making style, leadership style, use of power and management skills.

2.1.2.4 Assumptions about human nature

Holding different assumptions about the human nature of teachers and learners, school administrators may develop different means of school management. There are two different assumptions about human nature in management, theory X and theory Y. According to theory X, a school curriculum can be designed and developed by external authorities. The managing method and punishment for controlling is inevitable. The latter assumes that humans do not have an innate dislike for work. Under suitable conditions, a human is willing to serve towards his or her shared goals without being pushed, not only to bear responsibility, but also to look for more responsibilities to take up. Theory Y suggests that democratic participation, professional development, and
work-life improvement are important to motivate teachers and learners. *Grade 1 teachers* and learners may have different levels of need, apart from economic gains. They pursue social interaction and affiliation, self-actualization and development opportunities. In order to satisfy higher level needs, they are willing to accept challenges and work harder (Mohrman and Wohlstetter 1994:80).

### 2.1.2.5 School organization

According to Arnott (1992:97) in the external control management model, school managers view the goals of the school as clear and simple and the school is only a means to achieve the goals. The *grade 1 teachers* in a school are only employees and their value is instrumental. Suitable *grade 1 teachers* are kept while unsuitable ones are out. Obviously this concept of school organization may not be appropriate in modern management. People believe that an organization is a place for life and development, not only a tool for achieving certain static goals, for example, quantity of product. The school as an organization should not only be a place for the preparation for the future of learners, but also a place for learners, *grade 1 teachers* and even administrators to live, to grow and to pursue development.

Without professional development and enthusiastic involvement of *grade 1 teachers* and administrators, a school cannot be developed and improved continuously, and students cannot have a rich learning life. Therefore, a school-based managing school is not only a place which fosters learners growth, but also a place to foster the development of *grade 1 teachers* and administrators. This is also the reason why school-based staff development is important to school effectiveness. The *grade 1 teacher*’s management task is to establish and maintain an effective learning environment for classroom groups (Bauer and Sapona 1994:06).
2.1.2.6 Decision-making style

The National Department of Education (1996:12) shows that decision-making power should be devolved to the lowest possible level at which people are able to make effective decisions. (Compare chapter 1 item 1.6.5, chapter 3 item 3.12, chapter 4 item 4.3.3 and chapter 5 item 5.1). Under the tight control of the central authority, the decision-making of traditional schools is usually done by administrators or the central authority and then the tasks decided on are carried out by grade 1 teachers (see table 2.2). Grade 1 teachers’ participation in decision-making is often minimal, or treated as unnecessary.

However, as educational work and the external environment have become more complicated day-by-day, school management should change from the decision-making style at the school level to power-sharing or participation, for the following reasons:

- The goal of a school is often unclear and changeable. The involvement of teachers, parents, students, and even alumni can help to develop goals which will be more able to reflect the present situation and future needs;
- The goals of a school are multiple and the mission of a school is complicated; they need the intelligence, imagination and effort of more people to accomplish. The participation or involvement of teachers, parents and students in decision-making is an important contribution to the school;
- Participation in decision-making provides opportunities for members and even administrators to learn and develop, and also to understand and manage the school;
- Participation in decision-making is the best process for encouraging teachers, parents and students to be involved in the school (Fullan 1992:101).
## TABLE 2.2. TRADITIONAL CONCEPTS AND NEW CONCEPTS OF STAFF DEVELOPMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRADITIONAL CONCEPTS OF STAFF DEVELOPMENT</th>
<th>NEW CONCEPTS OF STAFF DEVELOPMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1. Externally controlled</strong></td>
<td><strong>1. School based</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* The central education authorities plan and manage the activities with emphasis mainly on policy concerns. * Staff members are not willing to participate and give opinions. * Activities cannot meet the needs of the staff. * Activities are held outside the school, participants must be absent from their duty and normal school work is affected.</td>
<td>* The staff member plans and manages the activities and the content is designed according to the needs of the staff of each school. * Staff are willing to participate and contribute their ideas. * Activities are mostly carried out in the school, teachers need not be absent from their duty and can have immediate practice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2. Remedial</strong></td>
<td><strong>2. Developmental</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Activities are arranged for remedial purposes when the education process goes wrong. * Only take care of problems in general, not particular needs of each school.</td>
<td>* Activities are planned for development purposes on the needs of the school, groups and individuals. * Serve the needs of the school.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3. Temporary, not systematic</strong></td>
<td><strong>3. Continuous, systematic</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Activities are mainly temporary, planned and carried out by outside experts. * Has no long-term strategy for development and no systematic management.</td>
<td>* Activities are included in the annual school plan, fully supported by school administration. * Has long-term strategies and systematic management.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4. Content</strong></td>
<td><strong>4. Content</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Fragmentary. * Stress too much on achievement of technical knowledge and behavioural changes.</td>
<td>* Continuous and comprehensive. * Developments of techniques, affects, values and beliefs are taken into account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>5. Focus on individuals</strong></td>
<td><strong>5. Focus on individuals, groups and the school</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Fragmentary. * Stress too much on achievement of technical knowledge and behavioural changes.</td>
<td>* Emphasize development at all the individual, group and whole school levels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>6. For teachers only</strong></td>
<td><strong>6. Not only for teachers, but also administrators and supporting staff.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>7. External speakers mainly</strong></td>
<td><strong>7. Both internal and external speakers.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* They are not familiar with the school situation, and irrelevant examples are used.</td>
<td>* The content fits the needs of participants and the real cases they share are helpful in practice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>8. The role of staff is passive</strong></td>
<td><strong>8. The role of staff is active</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>9. Simplistic types of activities</strong></td>
<td><strong>9. Various types of activities.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Lectures mainly</td>
<td>* Seminars, talks, workshops, coaching, quality circle, classroom research, evaluation, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>10. Motivation</strong></td>
<td><strong>10. Motivation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Encourage staff participation by extrinsic rewards such as promotion and reduction of work load.</td>
<td>* Staff participation is self-motivated by intrinsic rewards such as professional growth and ownership.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hargreaves (1994:111)
2.1.3 Categories of SBCD

2.1.3.1 External factors

This is a situation in which the main imperatives have sprung predominantly from outside the school, but where the initiative has been taken in a distinctive manner within the individual school, as the direct by-product of a national curriculum development project. Here SBCD is set in motion by the project but takes off in distinctive ways in different schools and the schools are encouraged to “do their own thing” within the ambience of the project (Mohrman and Wohlstetter 1994:82).

A school-initiated response to a national project occurs when the school, having been involved in a national curriculum development project, goes on to develop its own distinctive development, taking the ideas further, in many cases transforming them far beyond the vision of the national team. See chapter 5 item 5.1.8. Here the school is distinctively adapting a nationally initiated curriculum to its own specialised purposes, enhancing its strengths or alleviating its shortcomings so that they may be more appropriate to its special needs. When a school itself becomes and “takes over” the main focus of a national project; where the project itself is transformed into a SBCD exercise; everything becomes effective.

2.1.3.2 Internal Factors

Dimmock (1993:17) is of the notion that SBCD can arise from the specific decision of the school to operate courses and teach in a distinctive way. A decision thus places the school within a set of requirements different from those of most other schools. If these distinctive strategies are to be implemented, then the school is faced with the need to help its grade 1 teachers to explore these ways to the full. Specific strategies for curriculum development have to be generated from within the school. (See chapter 5 item 5.1.1-5.1.8).
SBCD can also arise from the specific teaching needs of the school – this is where a school finds itself in a distinctive catchment area with specific local needs, and a group of learners who have problems or advantages that are not generally to be found, or where the school has a particular concern for aspects of student development that are not generally sought. In such cases an important emphasis is placed upon curriculum and upon teacher development (Stoll and Fink 1992:94).

2.1.4 Approaches to SBCD

From these conceptions of curriculum effectiveness, the approaches to maximizing teaching effectiveness and learning effectiveness through curriculum change can be categorized as follows:

2.1.4.1 The simplistic SBCD approach

The curriculum should be developed or changed at the individual, program, or school level to fit in with grade 1 teacher competence and student characteristics, in addition to its consistency with school goals. This approach assumes that grade 1 teachers are passive, teacher competence is static, and curriculum change can be planned and implemented effectively by administrators or external experts.

2.1.4.2 The teachers’ competence approach

Sergiovanni (1992:94) shows that the participation of grade 1 teachers, parents, learners and even alumni can help to develop outcomes which will be more able to affect the present situation and future needs. Participation in decision-making is the process for encouraging grade 1 teachers, parents and learners to be involved in the curriculum. See chapter 4 paragraph 4.3.3. Responding to the change to school-based management, the grade 1 teacher’s leadership style may be changed from the lower levels to multi-levels of leadership.
Teacher competence should be developed to meet the demand of the *curriculum*. This approach assumes that *curriculum* change is imposed by administrators or external experts and that teacher competence can be developed easily to satisfy the needs of the school.

### 2.1.4.3 The dynamic *curriculum* change approach

Yukl (1994:55) says both *curriculum* and teacher competence should be developed and changed in order to maximize *curriculum* effectiveness in terms of facilitating teaching and learning. This approach assumes that:

- *Curriculum* effectiveness is a dynamic concept involving a continuous and cyclical process for developing both *curriculum* and teacher competence;
- The *curriculum* can be developed and changed effectively only when teachers are sufficiently involved in the process;
- Teacher competence should be developed not only to satisfy the demands of the existing *curriculum* or the changed *curriculum*, but also to develop the *curriculum* more appropriately to fit students' characteristics, school goals, and preexisting school conditions in the long run. The comparison between the approaches to *curriculum* change is summarized in table 2.3.
The first and second approaches employ a short-term, mechanical perspective for conducting curriculum change and implementation. They ignore the dynamic nature of curriculum change and grade 1 teacher development and the importance of the grade 1 teachers' active role, involvement and commitment to curriculum planning and their own professional development. Because of this ignorance, curriculum change through these two approaches may not bring long-term effectiveness to teaching and learning, even if it is not frustrated by resistance including grade 1 teacher sabotage, slowdown, protest and apathy.
2.1.5 The significance of SBCD

Brady (1990:09) points out that of learners, as well as parents, students and teachers, it is the last group who typically get directly involved. To simplify the analysis, the initial discussion focuses upon grade I teachers. Grade I teachers have a major interest in their craft. Maximum satisfactions are achieved if they are able to teach in ways which suit the majority of their students. The occasional successes they have with extremely difficult learners make their endeavours well worth the effort.

Grade I teachers generally become involved in SBCD activities if they have particular needs but these will be tempered by the limits of their particular teaching environment. Grade I teachers will be highly motivated to participate if there are important needs to be satisfied, but only if these can be accommodated within the value system of the school community. (Compare chapter 1 paragraph 1.5, chapter 2 paragraph 2.1.1, chapter 3 3.12.3). There are four factors which can affect the directions that grade I teachers might take and that some compromise between them is always needed. These four factors include predilections of what grade I teachers would like to do, situations that have to be taken into account and wider external factors of expectations and prescriptions (Smith 1992:76).

However, as indicated in figure 2.1, there will be some teachers who want to participate in SBCD activities even though they might be relatively satisfied with their current teaching position. For example, those grade I teachers seeking promotion realize that they will need to do something extra to give themselves a chance of earning promotion.
They might consider that their active participation in an SBCD activity could be a useful way of highlighting their particular strengths, and details of this activity could be included in their curriculum vitae. Then again there might be teachers who are prepared to reflect upon their current practices – they have the ability and the desire to do problem-solving about their teaching, even though they are relatively satisfied with their current position.

In addition to those grade 1 teachers who might be in the category of being satisfied but mobile, there is the much bigger group of teachers who might be dissatisfied with their present teaching position. A major reason for their dissatisfaction might be poor student attainments in their particular subjects, or individual students performing poorly across a range of subjects. Another reason could be their dissatisfaction with inadequate resources, time-tableing constraints or insufficient preparation time. A related reason might be sheer boredom with the system of rules and regulations and teaching practices.

Eraut (1993:63) argued, therefore, that educators in general, and teachers in particular, are very susceptible to educational innovations. There are various pressures from the media, educational suppliers, professional associations and head office personnel for grade 1 teachers to try new teaching practices.

However, grade 1 teachers have to balance competing forces when making decisions about whether to use an innovation or not. As the result of considering needs and constraints, grade 1 teachers may decide to try out some innovations but not others. The process they undertake may be akin to the force field of “driving” and “restraining” forces (Sergiovanni 1992:87).

It goes without saying that every grade teacher develops his or her own unique configuration of driving and restraining forces, as indicated in figure 2.2.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Driving forces</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Group pressure from other staff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal ambitions (e.g. promotion)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excitement of being involved/identification with group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organisational goals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Learner needs not being adequately covered</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Restraining forces</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>↔ Too much time involved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>↔ Chance of failure too great</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>↔ No perceived rewards of classroom pay – off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>↔ Likelihood of receiving criticism from important groups (e.g. Parents)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>↔ Not confident in small group planning situations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 2.2.  Force field for using educational innovations (Sergiovanni 1992:87).
Figure 2.3 Matrix of school-based curriculum change
Shulman (1990: 180)
Two or more grade 1 teachers will only be willing to interact on SBCD activities if they perceive mutually supplementary results from sharing their ideas and preferences (a mutual linking of configurations).

The organisation model of curriculum change depicted in figure 2.4 is for groups of grade 1 teachers to undertake their chosen innovatory SBCD activities on the assumption that improved teaching and learning situations for themselves, and then their learners, will be the result. They are likely to be seeking a new position of stability, a different set of relationships and procedures which will provide them in turn with a reasonable degree of homeostasis.

As indicated at the beginning of this section, SBCD can involve parents and learners as well as grade 1 teachers. It is argued that the conceptual model applies also to parents and learners. For example parents through their formal contacts (for example, school councils) and informal meetings can lobby for changes and the adoption of certain innovations if they perceive that there are problem areas and issues to be resolved. On the other hand, they may be the restraining forces who feel strongly that certain innovations proposed by the teaching staff should not be adopted (Stoll and Flink 1992:11).

As mentioned in paragraphs 2.1.4.2 and 2.1.4.3, curriculum change and teacher competence development are important for effective teaching and learning, but how can they be effectively initiated and maintained towards achievement of planned school outcomes? How does an SBCD mechanism contribute to a dynamic approach to curriculum change?

Inevitably, all forms of school curriculum change happen in a complex organizational context, including grade 1 teachers’ personal factors, group norms, organizational structure, school culture, leadership, etc. How are curriculum changes and teacher development related to organizational factors? Specifically, how can they be facilitated but not hindered by organizational factors?
Figure 2.4 The organizational model of curriculum change
Adapted from Cheung (1994: 80)
The school-based management mechanism can initiate and sustain a continuous process of school development, including curriculum change and teacher development (Dimmock 1993:19).

2.1.5.1 A three-level organisation context

Curriculum change and grade I teacher competence development happen in a three-level context of school organization, including the individual level, the group level and the whole-school level as shown in figure 2.5.

2.1.5.2 Mutual development

Curriculum change and grade I teacher competence development are mutually developed and reinforced at each of the three levels of school organizational context in the long term (Fullan 1992:84).

2.1.5.3 Hierarchy of influence

Maeroff (1993) points out that curriculum change and teacher competence development at the individual level are influenced by those at the group level, and that all at these two levels are affected by those at the whole-school level. There is a hierarchy of influence across these levels.

2.1.5.4 Effectiveness and interaction

The effectiveness of curriculum change at the classroom or individual level (i.e., effects on teaching and learning) is directly determined by the interaction between changes in curriculum, grade I teacher competence and the characteristics of learners and the class. (See chapter 6 item 6.2.1.2 (e)). It is also indirectly affected by curriculum change and teacher development at the group/programme level and the whole school level (Valentine 1992: 54).
Figure 2.5 School-based cycle at multi-levels
Shulman (1990:111)
2.1.5.5 Congruence

According to the principle of congruence in the school-based management mechanism, the effectiveness of curriculum change may be affected by two types of congruence: congruence between curriculum change and grade teacher competence development, and congruence between levels. They form a matrix of congruence as congruence is defined in terms of conceptual (cognitive) consistency in goals, objectives, values and assumptions (about change, development, management, teaching and learning) and in terms of operational consistency (for example, coordination). To a great extent, congruence reflects the strength of school culture, (i.e., the strength of sharing of values, beliefs, and assumptions among members) and is believed to be a determinant of school effectiveness (Schein 1992:81).

2.1.6. SBCD – in school community situations

Brady (1990:07) indicated that since change agents need information from other school members to design school based change, this technique is appropriate. It aims to encourage staff participation and involvement in planning the change, to improve the quality of decision-making and to enhance staff acceptance and commitment to change implementation. The following factors provide technical support to involved members to face and implement the change:

(a) mission – school goals  
(b) readiness of participants – teachers, parents, students  
(c) leaders or change agents  
(d) group dynamics and school climate  
(e) time – provisions and allowances  
(f) resources – financial and organizational  
(g) professional development  
(h) processes (Mortimore 1993:19).
2.1.7 Merits of SBCD

Grade 1 teachers' involvement in decision-making is an important contribution to the school. (See chapter 1 paragraph 1.6.2, chapter 2 item 2.3.4, chapter 3 item 3.12.3.1 and chapter 5 item 5.1). This approach assumes that curriculum change is imposed by external experts and that grade 1 teachers' involvement can be developed easily to satisfy all the needs of the changed curriculum. In view of this, Print (1993:14) shows that school management should change from the decision-making style at the school level to power-sharing for the following reasons.

(a) Those in the best position to appreciate the needs of a specific group of learners are the local teachers who can also determine the best use of the school's resources.
(b) Those who implement the curriculum are those who have developed it. This gives a greater sense of identification with the learning tasks.
(c) The needs of specific groups of students are met, which in turn has a powerful impact upon learners.
(d) Greater accountability for curricula and teacher performance is noticed.
(e) Parents and community members may be easily involved in meaningful curriculum planning.

2.1.8 Demerits of SBCD

Curriculum change as a form of planned change in the school may meet resistance, and its implementation may be affected by different organisational factors. Resistance may also be influenced by the following crucial factors:

(a) Lack of support structures for administrators and teachers.
(b) Conformity syndrome of administrators and teachers reduces creativity.
(c) Lack of time for teachers to undertake SBCD.
(d) Lack of teachers experienced or trained in the process of SBCD.
(e) Movement of teachers between schools for promotion, country service and the like produces an unstable teacher base.

(f) Requires significant changes in the roles of teachers and administrators which are naturally resisted (Print 1993:14 and Brady 1990:08).

As grade 1 teachers become increasingly involved with school-level curriculum decision-making, they will require a sound understanding of curriculum concepts. To participate in SBCD effectively, it is imperative that grade 1 teachers acquire a basic familiarity with the principles of curriculum design and development.

2.2 LIMITATIONS OF SBCD AND GRADE 1 TEACHERS

The above demerits should not be underrated, as they are very real and are often given as the reasons why particular SBCD activities have been abandoned. However, it can be argued that there are more deeply rooted problems about SBCD which need to be considered. One major problem revolves around the dichotomy of "policy" and "action." Many educators argue that teachers are concerned predominantly with "action," relating to how to teach specific topics and how to develop particular curriculum materials (Eraut 1993:60).

These may be due to several factors such as their relative isolation in the classroom, or their perceived low status in the education hierarchy and lack of empowerment, or their lack of academic training in policy studies. The effect of this dichotomy is that if head offices devolve both policy and action decisions to individual schools it is likely that they will be unable to cope with both tasks. Either head offices will need to give more guidance and information about policy matters, or provide considerably more funds for professional development so as to enable school staffs to develop these skills. The rhetoric of devolving policy decisions to schools rings hollow if little assistance is given to schools to achieve these ends. Grade 1 teachers and learners should work hand in hand in order to achieve worthwhile results (See figure 2.6).
Figure 2.6 The level-layer management
Bolman and Deal (1991:192)
2.2.1 Centre-periphery model

Schon (1991:17) is of the opinion that centre-periphery systems are prone to failure because the demands made on the centre by the periphery invariably outstrip its capacity to manage an appropriate supply of human and material resources to meet them. The centre also outstrips its capacity to stimulate and manage feedback from the periphery. In these circumstances, the centre tends to compensate by flooding the periphery with large quantities of information. Lacking adequate feedback mechanisms, it tends to misinterpret the problem at the periphery as either a problem of communication or a resistance to change on the part of vested interests.

According to Shiundu and Omulando (1993:20) the role of the grade 1 teacher in curriculum development can be viewed basically from two perspectives, first from the point of view of SBCD, and secondly from that of centrally-based curriculum development. The former situation is relevant in this study, because the grade 1 teacher is responsible for most of the curriculum activities right from planning up to assessment and the external influence is minimal. In this way grade 1 teachers have a much greater opportunity to participate in translating educational goals into specific objectives and content. In the latter case, the grade 1 teachers’ role is dominant only at the implementation stage since most curricular activities are done by the central office.

For most systems, especially in the less developed countries, approaches to curriculum development are centrally-based. In the case of South Africa, the school curriculum is planned centrally at the national Department of Education. This is antithetical to the establishing of democratic, operative forms of SBCD. In many education systems grade 1 teachers are perceived to be languishing at the bottom of the hierarchy and decisions are filtered down to them. One of the shortcomings in this approach is that teachers tend to think that their role is only in the classroom, and to implement what they have received from the central office. Worse still, some grade teachers follow this externally planned curriculum to the letter without appropriately relating it to the local situation.
Bush, Coleman and Glover (1993:135) says that governors view the *curriculum* as the driving force behind school development. As *grade 1 teachers* become increasingly involved with school level *curriculum decision-making*, they will require a sound understanding of *curriculum* concepts. To participate in *SBCD* effectively, it is quite imperative that teachers acquire a basic familiarity with the principles of *curriculum* design and development. Yet, though *SBCD* in some form or other is now fairly common in South African schools, there are many schools in which it does not exist at all and still more wherein, at most, it only occurs rarely and spasmodically. It is therefore necessary to ask the question – what are the conditions in which *SBCD* flourishes?

The creation of proper interests and enthusiasm is of paramount importance. The ability to group learners with others pursuing the same interest demands that a *grade 1 teacher* be able to create groups from a wide selection of learners, more perhaps than one would find within one classroom. Two common terms used in grouping in the school are heterogeneous and homogeneous groups. Usually, these two types of groups are used interchangeably during a school day. Teachers who organize skill groups in the classroom use homogeneous grouping. The key is flexibility: students are moved from group to group as they achieve required skills (Wiles and Bondi 1998:254).

McCUTCHEON (1995:34) propounds that by its nature, teaching at any grade level, in any community, or in any specific discipline or area, is a complex task. Not only must a *grade 1 teacher* adhere to a *curriculum* policy, but he or she also must adapt such policy to fit comfortably with his or her own practical theory. Moreover, *grade 1 teachers* are provided with particular *curriculum* materials. Administrative *curriculum* policies may be fairly consistent from one educational system to another, but *grade 1 teachers'* practical theories vary.

The ability to respond to varying needs in the learners also demands a wide range of skills and interests in the *grade 1 teacher*. The question arose as to whether, as the learners grow older, one teacher could assemble all those skills and interests. But such a need must not only exist; teachers must recognise that it exists and be ready to respond to
it. Autonomous grade 1 teachers may well be encouraged and even inspired to participate in SBCD; they cannot be forced to do so. There is also little doubt that their enthusiasm may be reinforced if they see that adequate support – administrative, material and moral – is available. Good resources, adequate professional and non-professional staffing and sympathetic leadership inside and outside the school seem to be important components of ensuring SBCD. A good grade 1 teacher knows what resources are presently available and what resources will be available in future (Brubaker and Simon 1993:11).

Naicker (1999:94) shows that education for liberation engages the teacher as learner, and learners as teachers, in a process of dialogue. This dialogue means that the learner and grade 1 teachers are creating and re-educating knowledge. Effective liaison with the schools from which the SBCD school draws its learners – and the schools and other institutions to which they proceed – is also vital. One has already emphasised that no school is an island; if SBCD attempts to make it so, then surely its students will be the first victims of its self-imposed isolation. Faced with the many variables that can affect the introduction and subsequent survival of SBCD, it is clear that the enthusiasm of the individual teacher, his or her enthusiasm and his or her readiness are central. Not only are such personal characteristics necessary to ensure an adequate level of individual participation, but also the degree of collective responsibility that is accepted and “internalised” by the individual rather than being attributed to “them.”

In short, the grade 1 teacher must be “inner directed” rather than “outer directed”. In reaching this conclusion it is useful to remember that one is not making yet another unrealistic and idealistic prescription. In the realities of school life the inner direction of the teacher may spring not only from high pedagogical principle but also imperative self interest. The search for a solution to new and pressing problems in the classroom situation may well lie at the heart of some of the most successful SBCD programmes.

Elliot (1998:22) in support of this view, shows that the stance towards knowledge indicated in curricula either invites grade 1 teachers to express and extend their powers
of understanding in the ways they represent knowledge to learners (transaction or
transformation orientation), or that their imprisons grade 1 teachers as transmission
deVICES which represent knowledge as inert information (a transmission orientation).

2.2.2 Teachers' lack of motivation

Shiundu and Omulando (1992:219) point out that teachers' roles, their status in society,
the work they do and the values they represent are related in complex ways to the socio-
economic setting in which they operate. Poor motivation is detrimental to SBCD. Grade
1 teachers, however, are not the sole arbiters of their classroom practice. Just as our
decisions in everyday life are sometimes tightly constrained, grade 1 teachers' decision
in both the preactive and interactive phases of teaching occur within a context that can
ultimately exert a powerful influence upon what happens in the classroom. Physical
constraints such as the size and composition of the class and the materials available, and
expectations about the content and methods of teaching, often determine what is possible
for grade 1 teachers to do.

These constraints demotivate grade 1 teachers as they are beyond their jurisdiction, and
as such the teachers develop a negative attitude towards SBCD. To develop an
understanding of grade 1 teachers' classroom practice, of how it may be changed and
improved, and of the capacity for teachers themselves to bring about such improvement,
the study of teachers' thinking and decision-making must include investigation of the
teaching context and the extent to which grade 1 teachers are involved in SBCD, e.g. in
establishing that context and the ways in which it limits or constraints grade 1 teachers'
thoughts, decisions and activities.

Eggleston (1991:76) maintains that

"Faced with the pressing day to day curricular problems of
discipline, marking children's work, preparing laboratory
practicals, maintaining supplies of goods and stationery and
keeping **au fait** with the requirements of the examination boards, do teachers have the opportunity, let alone the incentive, to concern themselves with ideology in their day to day curricular organisations.”

The success or the failure of *curriculum development* is determined by the availability of adequate resources, personnel, space and determined time. Expertise in *curriculum* issues is strongly influenced by the resources support base. In summary, the demotivating factors may be categorised as cultural, socio-political and economic.

### 2.2.3 Localism and parochialism

Another major problem relates to teacher attitudes and values and levels of motivation (Skilbeck 1992:28). There will be some members of teaching staff who for various reasons have negative reactions to any form of *SBCD*. It may be that they have had unsuccessful experiences with *SBCD* in the past, at another school.

A third problem revolves around the hierarchical structures typically found in schools which are antithetical to the establishing of democratic, cooperative forms of *SBCD*. In many education systems grade 1 teachers are perceived to be at the bottom of the hierarchy – decisions are filtered down to them.

A fourth problem relates to aspects of localism, parochialism and conservatism which can often dominate *SBCD* practices (Yukl 1994:08). Too often, superficial “tinkering” by a few active individuals can occur and, because of their limited vision and or experience, the resultant changes can be less than desirable. Worse still, on some occasions powerful lobby groups can bring about changes at the local level which produce curricula that are lacking in breadth, or are biased and out-dated.

The local contexts, whether countries or schools in one province, differ from one another in various aspects e.g. politically, geographically, and socially between and within
systems. It would be ridiculous to expect that intentions for a given curriculum package will be valid and reliable for every school. Various teaching-learning situations are likely to manifest quite differing curriculum needs and interests. Grade 1 teachers, too, similarly vary in the aims they have for education, and therefore by implication possess different criteria for judging the effectiveness of teaching. Some primary school teachers emphasize the importance of basic skills. Others attach more value to personal development and intellectual autonomy. The logical interdependence between the centre and schools, and the need for consultation in curriculum decision-making and development between teachers and external curriculum developers, is preserved (Eraut 1993:44).

Skilbeck (1992:274) is of the opinion that:

"... action to effect curriculum development in the school cannot be taken independently of action elsewhere in the education system... the school must work through its relations, discovering how these make its own development possible. The actions that schools take towards developing the curriculum are therefore but a part, albeit a key part, of what we mean by curriculum development."

Our conception of an effective curriculum may, in addition, be complicated by taking into account the process by which certain effects are attained. Some curricula are in themselves more or less desirable. To cite an example, an outdated curriculum might be useless in that it might not be relevant to current issues. Not surprisingly, a daily discussion of an effective curriculum tends to be somewhat superficial.

Judgements of an effective curriculum are often impressionistic and subjective. They are based upon relatively little objective information and involve personal and subjective criteria of what constitutes a good curriculum (Fullan 1992:86).
Wiles and Bondi (1998:03) indicate that curriculum development usually begins with a set of questions that initially reveal value preferences and later undersized planning efforts.

To a great extent, curriculum development or change aims to maximize the effectiveness of teaching and learning through changes in planned content, activities and arrangements for educational processes. If we accept this line of thinking, the discussion of curriculum change should be related to another concept – curriculum effectiveness. It is crucial to know what, and how, a curriculum is effective for teaching and learning, and what main factors contribute to this effectiveness. The structure of curriculum effectiveness can be illustrated as shown in figure 2.7. Based on this structure, a curriculum is effective if it can appropriately interact with grade 1 teachers’ competence to facilitate grade 1 teacher performance, help learners gain learning experiences that fit their needs and produce expected educational outcomes, under the constraints of preexisting characteristics such as national goals, school goals, school management, subject content, educational technology and resources. The structure suggests that the evaluation of curriculum effectiveness may include process and outcome criteria such as grade 1 teacher performance, student learning experience and outcomes. The variables that can be manipulated, changed or developed to improve grade 1 teacher performance and student learning experience and outcomes, are curriculum and grade 1 teacher competence.

2.2.4. Curriculum and democratic ownership

The question to be posed here is, which stakeholders enjoy democratic ownership of the school curriculum? It is difficult for one to acknowledge that grade 1 teachers have equal access to control of the school curriculum.

SBCD will not come to fruition if there is no respect for the various opinions from various legitimate stakeholders. (Compare chapter 4 item 4.3 paragraph 4.3.3). When all parties are on an equal footing, SBCD would be implemented successfully.
Figure 2.7 Effectiveness in SBCD

Cheng (1994: 80)
Mutual dependence, necessitating a policy of democracy in *curriculum* planning, is intended to reduce a polarisation of this type. In many school districts, a failure to assess the true needs of the learners results in a dysfunctional *curriculum* (Wiles and Bondi 1998: 89).

One major criticism of many school systems is that the administrative staff have kept instructional problem identification as their responsibility and have not shown an eagerness to share it with the teaching staff. Perhaps this action results from the foolish notion that the discovery of problem situations indicates inefficient administration. Whatever the rationale, *SBCD* thrives on the identification of problems by the teacher or a group at least, and typically, the *grade 1 teacher* will identify a series of problems which are more related to the instructional programme than problems administrators would identify. Logically, outcomes of *curriculum* warrant definition prior to the planning stage. Therefore, many school administrators have begun a *curriculum* planning program by asking *grade 1 teachers* to define the objectives of the school, study the objectives or write a philosophical task about the task of the school. The *grade 1 teacher* is thus a design professional, who plans and theorizes on the *curriculum* (Bauer and Sapona 1991:09).

### 2.2.5 Political syndrome

Christie and Collins in Kallaway (1990:162) show that the cornerstone of liberal analysis of South Africa is a distinction between racial oppression with its concomitant notion of "baasskap" (dominance) and was a political factor whose monolithic characters affected *SBCD*. Political parties in some countries take much more interest in education than their counterparts elsewhere. In Sweden, for example, the inclusion of a new subject in the *curriculum* could be debated in parliament. Other countries might consider that only the general structure of the education system is important enough for this. To the extent that *SBCD* increases the power of the school at the expense of central authorities, very close political control could be restrictive.
Perhaps more significant is the presence or absence of a strong political will for equality or opportunity, with the implication that opportunities should in fact be equal, that all students should be offered as far as possible the same educational experiences. This belief would be directly challenged by the introduction of full-scale SBCD. In such systems SBCD is often limited to certain areas of the curriculum.

2.2.6 Implication in administration

Whether education is administered and controlled centrally or locally affects the nature of its influence on SBCD. In most countries with tight administrative control of the curriculum, there is a reluctance to abandon power, and the further the administration is from the school, the more threatening this prospect seems. Even when autonomy has been granted for the curriculum – or some part of it, - the supervisory capacity does not overstep central guidelines (Mortimore 1993: 91).

As it is not possible to enumerate all the constraints developed by different administration systems, a few general points will be listed. First, it matters little if the central control is “rational” or “provincial”: either way the centre of control is comparatively remote from the schools, and the main constraint will be the reluctance of both politicians and administrators to abandon control. Every country has legal provisions affecting education and these extreme details, e.g. laying down the hours to be spent at school, have strong effects. Clearly such restrictions are obstacles to change, and it is surprising to find some countries introducing educational change without modifying the relevant laws.

2.2.7 Financial shortcomings

South Africa’s yearbook (1998:320) shows that the R40-billion education budget accounted for 21,3 per cent of the government’s total 1997/98 expenditure. This equals 6.5% of the gross domestic product. There are two major financial constraints to SBCD.
First of all the process itself is expensive; it involves teacher-time spent on other than teaching activities, new materials and support services outside the school.

The amount of money needed is often underestimated when the conditions are created to permit SBCD. But SBCD also implies a certain flexibility when the financial cake is divided up within the school (Bush et al. 1993: 109).

From the above discussion, it is evident that SBCD can be summarized as having two basic characteristics:

- School as the major decision-making unit: decisions should be made at the frontier of school functioning; therefore school autonomy on finance and management should be increased and control from the central office should be reduced;
- Ownership as the major requirement of school reform: effective reform does not rely on external procedures but it does need the participation of members concerned to share decision-making.

In addition to these two characteristics, we may further conceptualize school-based management:

Mohrman and Wohlstetter (1994:55) maintains that school-based management means that the school management tasks are set according to the characteristics and needs of the school itself. Therefore school members including SGBS (School Governing Bodies), inspectors, subject specialists, principal, grade 1 teachers, parents, learners and other relevant stakeholders) have autonomy and responsibility for the use of resources to solve problems and carry out effective education activities, for the long-term development of the school.

Schein (1992:53) stipulates that traditional school management is often a type of external control management characterized by tight external control from the central office of the school system. In external control management, the school management tasks are performed under instructions from the external central authority, often not in accordance
with school characteristics and needs, and school members do not have much autonomy. The major differences in assumptions about education and management theories are summarized in table 2.4 and illustrated as follows:

**TABLE 2.4 THEORY OF SCHOOL-BASED MANAGEMENT VERSUS THEORY OF EXTERNAL CONTROL MANAGEMENT.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MANAGEMENT</th>
<th>SCHOOL-BASED</th>
<th>EXTERNAL CONTROL MANAGEMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assumptions about Education</td>
<td>* Multiplicity of educational goals</td>
<td>* Unification of educational goals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Complex and changing educational environment</td>
<td>* Simple and nearly static educational environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Need for educational reforms</td>
<td>* No need for educational reforms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Effectiveness and adaptation oriented</td>
<td>* Standardization and stability oriented</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Pursuit of quality</td>
<td>* Pursuit of quantity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theories used to Manage Schools</td>
<td>Principle of equifinality:</td>
<td>Principle of standard structure:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Many different ways to achieve goals</td>
<td>* Standard methods and procedures to achieve goals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Emphasizes flexibility</td>
<td>* Emphasizes generalizability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Principle of decentralization:</td>
<td>Principle of centralization:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Problems are inevitable, should be solved at where they happen in time</td>
<td>* Things big or small are carefully controlled to avoid problems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Looks for efficiency and problems-solving</td>
<td>* Pursues procedural control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Principle of self-managing system:</td>
<td>Principle of implementing system:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Self-managing</td>
<td>* Externally controlled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Actively exploitative</td>
<td>* Passively receptive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Responsible</td>
<td>* Not accountable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Principle of human initiative:</td>
<td>Principle of structural control:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Develops internal human resources</td>
<td>* Enforces external supervision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Broad participation of school members</td>
<td>* Expansion of bureaucratic system</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Schein (1992:84)
2.2.7.1 Differences in assumptions about education

In the tradition of external control management, educational goals are often assumed to be simple and unified, and the educational environment is seen as nearly static. Therefore, there is no strong need to conduct any educational reforms to adapt to the environment, and the management tends to emphasize standardization and stability and pursue educational quantity.

But in school-based management, educational goals are assumed as multiple, based on the expectations of multiple-school constituencies, and the educational environment is believed to be complex and changing (Eraut 1993:39).

2.2.7.2 Equifinality versus standard structure

Stoll and Fink (1992:84) indicates that the traditional management of school systems emphasizes the function of organizational structures and standard procedures. In external control management, it is assumed that there should be standard methods and procedures to achieve management goals, and that they are suitable for all schools. Therefore, the major means of managing schools is only by inspection from outside, of the extent to which the standard structures have been used. On the contrary, school-based management is based on the principle of equifinality, a modern management theory assuming that there may be different ways to achieve goals. Flexibility is emphasized and schools should be managed by themselves according to their own conditions.

2.2.7.3 Decentralisation versus centralisation

Decentralization and centralization represent two entirely different principles of management. Centralization is consistent with the principle of standard structure, both looking for controlling procedures to avoid creating problems in schools. Being carefully controlled by the central authority, schools have little power of decision-making and have to consult the central authority on nearly everything. As a result, the problems and crises
a school runs into cannot be solved or attended to quickly. This management style has become increasingly ineffective, especially since educational tasks have become more complicated and changeable. Decentralization is an important phenomenon of modern school management reform, which is consistent with the principle of equifinality. It brings about school-based management, of which the basic theory is that school management and teaching activities inevitably have difficulties and problems. Therefore schools should be given the power and responsibility to solve problems effectively.

2.2.7.4 Self-managing system versus implementing system

In the whole education system, schools are often regarded as a tool to achieve educational policy goals, or as a passive implementing system which needs careful external control. The role of the school is to receive orders from the central authority passively, and no initiative, power or accountability are explicitly assigned to it. School-based management does not deny that schools need to achieve policy goals, but there should be many different ways to achieve them (i.e. principle of equifinality). Therefore, it is necessary to let schools become a self-managing system under the umbrella of major policies and structure, possessing considerable autonomy to develop teaching objectives and management strategies, distributing manpower and resources, solving problems and accomplishing goals according to their own conditions. As the schools are self-managing, they are more likely to take the initiative for their own responsibility (Slater and Tedlie 1992: 247-248).

2.2.7.5 Principle of human initiative versus principle of structural control

Wiles and Bondi (1998:170) indicate that a curriculum management plan begins with an acknowledgement of power; that is certain persons in each school or district have the power to make decisions. They alter policy, allocate resources, and use proceedings and regulations to provide emphasis to activities. School-based management and external control management represent the past experiences of two different ideologies of management. What is more important, human factor or structure? As long as the goals
and tasks of the organization are clear and well-defined, the structural factors of organization may be emphasized, and an ideal organizational structure or a precise system may be designed to make people work effectively. But if the functioning is not sound or if it creates any problem, something must be wrong with the structure or with the external control. From this perspective, there is always a tendency to enforce supervision on schools and increase ordinances for controlling them. Naturally the result is the expansion of the bureaucratic system of the central authority. A possible ecological phenomenon would be that the more the external control is enforced, the more the school members depend on the central authority, and the lower their initiative. An integrated global economy and changing technologies are having profound effects on knowledge education, work, culture and society. The new information technologies have changed the focus of knowledge from content to skills and competence (National Department of Education 1996: 41).

2.2.7.6 Managerial skills

Following the rapid development of studies in theories of behavioural science and organization, many important management skills have been developed and widely applied to various organizations. For example, there are many scientific methods for decision analysis, various skills for conflict management, and effective strategies for organizational change and development. In external control management, school implement only orders from the central authority which bears most of the internal managing responsibility of the school and thus the managing work and skills required for school administrators are comparatively more simple.

2.2.7.7 The utilisation of resources

In order to carry out universal education, most of the resources and expenses of public schools come directly from the government. The government needs to watch closely how the schools use the resources. (See chapter 4 item 4.3.2). In general, it is also not easy for public schools to procure new resources by themselves under the constraints of the
central authority. Therefore, it is not surprising that schools cannot use their resources effectively in accordance with the needs of management and teaching activities. At the same time the central authority needs a lot of manpower and resources to supervise the use of resources in schools.

2.2.7.8 The role of the school

The role of externally controlled schools is generally passive and receptive. Its major concern is to carry out assigned duties and to follow closely administrative procedures to avoid making any mistakes. Even when some procedural rules may contradict the benefits of students and grade 1 teachers, they will still be given priority. But school-based management, however aims at inculcating learners, grade 1 teachers and the school in an initiative-developing style, solving problems and exploring all possibilities for facilitating grade 1 teachers' effective teaching and learners' effective learning (Sergiovanni 1992: 82).

2.2.7.9 Importance of the education department

Maeroff (1993:89) says that in external control management, the key factor is the central authority (or education department) whose role is that of a strict supervisor to control and supervise all school activities, no matter how big or small, and the expansion of a bureaucratic system is inevitable. In school-based management, the key factor is the school; the role of the central authority is only as a supporter or advisor which helps schools to develop their resources, and especially to carry out effective teaching activities.

2.2.7.10 Significance of administrators

For externally controlled schools, the school mission and goals are provided from outside. The role of school administrators is primarily that of a goalkeeper whose job is to prevent the school from not abiding by the central ordinances. Administrators are also
personnel supervisors and resource controllers who handle personnel affairs and resources by following the regulations. On the contrary, the role of the administrator in school-based management is that of a goal developer and leader, a staff starter and coordinator and also a resource developer (Mortimore 1993: 102).

2.2.7.11 Task of grade 1 teachers

According to Dimmock (1993:66), under external control management, the role of the teacher is that of employee, follower, and receiver and implementer of orders. They are passive and cannot participate in decision-making. They only listen to orders and perform duties assigned by the school and the central authority. But in school-based management, the school ideal and managing strategies encourage participation and development, and the role of grade 1 teacher is partner, decision maker, developer and, of course, implementer. They work together with shared commitment and participate in decision-making, to promote effective teaching and develop their schools with enthusiasm.

In terms of the nature of SBCD, human relations tend to be open and cooperative; team spirit and mutual commitment are emphasized; and the organizational climate seems to be the commitment type. In comparison, external control management emphasizes the hierarchical relationship and implementation of orders, and there are different interests for higher and lower staff. Human relations tend to be closed and realistic. The organizational climate may not be healthy: if the principal is disengaged from the school, the climate will have a headless style; if most teachers tend to be disengaged or not interested in work, while the principal is not helping, the climate will have a disengagement style (Hargreaves 1994: 88).

Bush et al. (1993:20) take a step further by showing that in the school-based management mode, schools have considerable autonomy. Participation and development are regarded as important in facing complicated education work and pursuing educational effectiveness. In this case, the requirements or administrator quality is very high. They not only should be equipped with modern management knowledge and techniques to
develop resources and manpower, but also need to learn and grow continuously, to
discover and solve problems for school improvement. In short, in addition to being
familiar with the present school ordinances, they also need to broaden their views and
open their minds to learning so that they can promote long-term development for their
schools. Developed from Bolman and Deal (1991:18) the principal’s leadership was
assessed by the following dimension:

Human Leadership – refers to the extent to which the principal is supportive and fosters
participation. It includes seven items and is rated on a seven-point scale; including
utilization of resources among different task groups and encouraging effective use of all
scarc resources. Additional resources, guidance and support may be provided whenever
a need is identified. This stage ensures that the implementation of all programs is
effective and consistent with the school policies and objectives.

2.3 MONITORING AND EVALUATING SBCD

Bauer and Sapona (1991:40) indicate that the performance of the school as a whole is
assessed and monitored to ensure the progress towards the outcomes outlined by its
programmes and school plan. The school establishes its own reporting and evaluation
systems (for staff appraisal, programme evaluation and school assessment), performance
indicators, and standards and reward system for individual staff and programme teams.
By means of these systems, the performance of the school is monitored and assessed.
The performance is summarized in staff reports, programme reports and the school
profile. The focus is to ensure the quality of school programmes, take corrective actions
and plan developments. The information obtained at this stage is useful for reflecting on
the school’s environments, reconsidering the school’s direction, re-establishing policies,
re-planning action programs and reorganizing structures. In other words, the results of
monitoring and evaluating will contribute to the start of the next strategic managing
cycle. This stage will provide the necessary information for helping individuals, groups
and the school to learn, improve and develop.
2.3.1 Leadership and participation

Throughout the process, participation of school members and the leadership of the principal and administrators are necessary and crucial. Leadership is responsible for initiating and maintaining the strategic management process for developing a school culture that facilitates the continuous pursuit of school effectiveness and development (Caldwell and Spinks 1992:70). Participation serves the following purposes:

- Participation can produce high quality decisions and plans by involving different perspectives and expertise;
- Greater participation can promote greater responsibility, accountability, commitment, support of implementation and results;
- Participation in planning and decision-making is a form of meaning development or culture building that contributes to team spirit and organizational integration;
- Participation in management provides opportunities for individuals and groups to enrich their professional experience and pursue professional development;
- Participation in planning and decision-making provides greater opportunities for schools to overcome resistance and change ineffective practices (Arnott 1992:15).

2.3.2 The potential advantages of strategic management in school

From the experience of using strategic management in the business sector or other organizations as described by Greenley (1991:15), the potential strengths of strategic management in a school may be summarized as follows:

- It helps the school to allocate and use resources more effectively;
- It boosts the commitment of school members to achieve long-term outcomes through participative planning;
- It signals that problems may arise before they happen;
- It alerts the school to changes and allows for action in response to change;
• It improves the channeling of effort toward the attainment of predetermined objectives;
• It facilitates the identification and exploitation of future opportunities for school development and improvement (Greenley 1991:15-16).

2.4 THE ROOTS OF CURRICULUM 2005 / CURRICULUM 21

The future is embedded in the present, just as the present bears imprints of the past. Therefore, any project that is designed to contemplate a reconstruction of the future of education in a transformed South Africa must first be grounded on a firm understanding of the genesis, evolution and nature of the current educational system and the crisis it has produced. From such an understanding must then issue a clear vision of the rest of the educational enterprise that will serve the broad interest of a unitary and democratically constituted society. The reconstructed education system should and must possess knowledge of the assumptions, canons, philosophical orientations and practices of the old education system and their relation to the prevailing political economy. That critical understanding must inform and undergird the construction of a system that is antithetical to the old in its praxis (Nkomo 1990:291).

In the history of education in South Africa, a scrutiny of policy during the Verwoerdian era reflects that education was determined by the character of the country’s racial capitalism and reinforced the social relations of apartheid. Enslin in Kallaway (1990:140) stresses that economic exploitation of black labour power was the primary motivation, and political domination by the white minority became the instrument of this, and was carried out through the educational institutions. The National Party (NP) victory in 1948 launched an extraordinary determination to gain firm control over all education institutions for blacks and to implement its Christian National Education (CNE) principles, formulated in 1939. With the passage of the acts a major transformation of education policy was effectuated, catapulting “laissez faire” racial segregation in education into a systematic racial ideology that left no aspect of life, abstract or mundane, untouched. To achieve the grandiose aim of separate development, education was the principal instrument.
Christie and Collins in Kallaway (1990:160) argue that the Eiselen commission, which reported in 1951, considered black education as an integral part of a carefully planned policy of segregated socio-economic development for the black people. Above all it emphasised the functional value of the school as an institution for the transmission and development of the black cultural heritage. 1994 became a watershed year in the South African history in general, and its education system in particular is no exception in this regard. The GNU with the African National Congress (ANC) in the forefront was empowered by the general elections. In the elections, where the ANC was optimistic of victory, the black masses were fed a diet, rich in euphoria, of an ontological utopia wherein all ills of the definite apartheid regime would be straightened out.

The ANC leadership had for some time realized that Curriculum 2005 could become the driving force to direct the process of transforming South Africa from its pariah status to a mover and shaker in the international community. The Department of Education (1996:40) shows that the GNU spelled out the significance of Curriculum 2005 with particular reference to Science and Technology. To the National Department of Education, Curriculum transformation was a “sine qua non” in this process as it was considered fundamental. Curriculum 2005 gained both credence and visibility in March 1997 when the previous minister of education unveiled South Africa’s national curriculum for the twenty first century. Curriculum 2005 was intended as a therapeutic cocktail, with some essentials as panacea for this country, and other ingredients as performance enhancing steroids to take it to the forefront at international level.

Naicker (1999:67) propounds that “it is not surprising that many people are perplexed by the changes that they have been confronted with. After all, the shift from apartheid education is extremely complex.”

In terms of the Foundation Phase Policy Document (Department of Education 1997:1) produced by the Department, the paradigm shift entails moving away from a curriculum that perpetuated race class, gender and ethnic divisions and has emphasized separateness
rather than citizenship and nationhood. *Curriculum 2005* called for a paradigm shift from content based teaching and learning to one based on outcomes. For details see table 2.5.

### Table 2.5 Difference between the old and the new approaches

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OLD</th>
<th>NEW</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Passive learners</td>
<td>Active learners</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exam-driven</td>
<td>Learners are assessed on an on-going basis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rote-learning</td>
<td>Critical thinking, reasoning, reflection and action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syllabus is content-based and broken down into subject</td>
<td>An integration of knowledge; learning relevant and connected to real-life situations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Textbook/worksheet-bound and teacher-centred</td>
<td>Learner-centred; teacher is facilitator; teacher constantly uses groupwork and teamwork to consolidate the new approach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sees syllabus as rigid and non-negotiable</td>
<td>Learning programmes seen as guides that allow teachers to be innovative and creative in designing programmes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers responsible for learning; motivation dependent on the personality of teacher</td>
<td>Learners take responsibility for their learning; learners motivated by constant feedback and affirmation of their worth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emphasis on what the teacher hopes to achieve</td>
<td>Emphasis on outcomes – what the learner becomes and understands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content placed into rigid time-frames</td>
<td>Flexible time-frames allow learners to work at their own pace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Curriculum development</em> process not open to public comment</td>
<td>Comments and input from the wider community are encouraged</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The *Northern Province* as the other South African Provinces, has embarked on this new system of *OBE* in the Foundation Phase or *grade 1* with effect from 1998. *Curriculum 2005* (1997:9) propounds that “other countries in the world like Australia and the Netherlands are also using the *OBE* approach.” This may be taken to mean that these are the countries from which we have adopted the approach. Canada, New Zealand and some states in the United States of America (USA) have also had some experience with the *OBE* approach.

In their report “A South African *Curriculum* for the twenty-first century,” the Review Committee on *Curriculum 2005* (2000:17) stress that *Outcomes-Based Education* will be retained in *Curriculum 21*, for the majority of those who have had exposure to *Outcomes-Based Education* support the underlying principles of the new *curriculum* regardless of the observed flaws of *Curriculum 2005*.

**2.5 THE CONCEPT OBE: AN OVERVIEW**

To avoid monotony, the acronym *OBE* will be used instead of *Outcomes-Based Education*. According to McDonald and Van der Horst (1997:7), *Outcomes-Based Education* is

> "an integrated and holistic approach to teaching and learning. In the past, teaching often concentrated on the memorization and reproduction of content. The *curriculum* was content-driven. According to the principles of *OBE*, the learner’s intellect, skills and attitudes, values or habits of mind are developed together. It is therefore an holistic approach which educates the whole person, not only the memory part of the intellect." (See table 2.6)
TABLE 2.6  New directions and old traditions in studying school effectiveness
(Valentine 1992:87)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>NEW DIRECTIONS</strong></th>
<th><strong>OLD TRADITIONS</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nature of School Effectiveness</strong></td>
<td><strong>Based on simplistic conception of school functions, particularly on technical and social functions only.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Based on multiple conception of school functions: technical, social, political, cultural and educational.</td>
<td>*Based on simplistic conception of school functions, particularly on technical and social functions only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Conception at five levels: individual, institutional, community, society and international.</td>
<td>*Conception only at one to two levels, particularly at the individual or institutional levels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Expectation of School Effectiveness</strong></td>
<td><strong>Emphasizing mainly technical or social effectiveness, assuming no big differences in expectations.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*To different constituencies, different types of school effectiveness are expected.</td>
<td>*Emphasizing mainly technical or social effectiveness, assuming no big differences in expectations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Dilemmas exist.</td>
<td>*Dilemmas are ignored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Assumption about Relationships</strong></td>
<td><strong>Positive relationship between types.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Complicated relationship between types</td>
<td>*Positive relationship between levels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Complicated relationship between levels</td>
<td>*Positive relationship between effectiveness and efficiency.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Complicated relationship between effectiveness and efficiency</td>
<td>*No strong need to study and manage between-relationships.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Between-relationships not necessarily positive, need to be studied and managed.</td>
<td>*No strong need to study and manage between-relationships.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplines for investigation</strong></td>
<td><strong>Mainly single discipline is used, separate efforts are made.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Interdisciplinary cooperation and efforts are needed.</td>
<td>*Mainly single discipline is used, separate efforts are made.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Focus of Study and Discussion</strong></td>
<td><strong>Separate/single type of effectiveness</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Multi-types of effectiveness</td>
<td><strong>Separate/single level of effectiveness</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Multi-levels of effectiveness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Relationship between types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Relationship between levels</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Relationship between effectiveness and efficiency.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Implications for Management and Policy</strong></td>
<td><strong>Mainly to maximize effectiveness in separate type at single level.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*To maximize effectiveness in multi-types of multi-levels.</td>
<td><strong>Mainly to maximize efficiency in separate type at single level.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*To maximize efficiency in multi-types at multi-levels.</td>
<td>*Mainly to maximize efficiency in separate type at single level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Need to ensure congruence between types and between levels.</td>
<td>*No need to ensure congruence between types and levels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Need to ensure congruence between effectiveness and efficiency.</td>
<td>*No need to ensure congruence between effectiveness and efficiency.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lubisi, Wedekind and Parker (1998:3), in support of McDonald and Van der Horst, maintain that:

"OBE is education which is not planned around certain prescribed subject matter that students ‘ought to learn’; it is geared instead towards the students being able to show clear signs of having learnt valued skills, knowledge or attitudes" (these are the educational outcomes).

OBE means clearly focusing and organizing everything in an educational system around what is essential for all students to be able to do successfully at the end of their learning experiences. This means starting with a clear picture of what is important for learners to be able to do, than organizing curriculum, instruction, and assessment to make sure this learning ultimately happens. The keys to having an outcome-based system are:

- Developing a clear set of learning outcomes around which all of the system’s components can be focused.
- Establishing the conditions and opportunities within the system that enable and encourage all students to achieve those essential outcomes (Spady 1994:1).

The proponent frequently associated with the OBE approach in the USA literature is that of William Spady.

Guskey quoted by Schwartz and Cavener (1994:326) indicates that:

“all the basic tenets of what we now call ‘OBE’ were elegantly set forth by Ralph Tyler over 40 years ago.”
King and Evans (1992:73), like Schwartz and Cavener (1994:326), argue that:

"While its label is relatively new, OBE actually developed over the course of the past several decades."

These scholars also identify the names of Bloom and Mager, and their work on behavioural objectives, with the roots of OBE. In Bloom’s taxonomy of educational objectives, outcomes of learning are commonly categorized into three domains namely: the cognitive which is an area of knowledge, the affective, an area of emotion, and the psychomotor, an area of skills (see table 2.7). Spady uses outcomes and goals interchangeably (King and Evans 1991:73).

**TABLE 2.7. ACTIVITIES AND OBJECTIVES FOR STAFF DEVELOPMENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Behaviour (Technique)</th>
<th>FOR TEACHERS</th>
<th>FOR ADMINISTRATORS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Behaviour (Technique) | *Increase knowledge, techniques and special teaching and learning.  
*Find out the factors hindering the full play of teachers’ competence.  
*Improve teaching performance.  
*Encourage participation and development.  
*Assist the work of colleagues. | *Enhance administrative efficiency  
*Improve leadership  
*Master techniques of planning and management.  
*Improve supervision style.  
*Encourage open mind and learning.  
*Assist the development of colleagues. |
| Effective | *Reinforce confidence in the teaching profession.  
*Enhance satisfaction in teaching.  
*Increase personal commitment to education. | *Reinforce confidence as administrative leader.  
*Enhance satisfaction in administration.  
*Increase concern and support for colleagues.  
*Increase personal commitment to education and administrative work. |
| Cognition | *Understand current educational trends.  
*Understand current policies and objectives of school functions.  
*Recognise the values of teaching and establish personal beliefs about education.  
*Provide teachers with opportunities for role clarification.  
*Identify with the school mission.  
*Self-evaluate and reflect on educational work. | *Understand current educational trends.  
*Reflect on current school policies and objectives of school functions.  
*Recognise ethical and moral issues of administration.  
*Recognise the values of administration.  
*Establish personal beliefs about leadership. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*Provide opportunities for members to learn from each other. *Work together to teach and develop curriculum. *Provide inter-class visits. *Learn to share and participate.</td>
<td>*Solve internal conflicts and improve communication. *Lead group/team work. *Learn to delegate and distribute work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cognition</td>
<td>*Discuss and understand the relationship between group work and school policies. *Evaluate the effectiveness of group work. *Analyze strengths, weaknesses and development of the group. *Ensure the role and value of group work. *Commitment to group effectiveness.</td>
<td>*Discuss and ensure the relationship between groups and school policies. *Recognize the values of collaborative management and participative decision-making. *Evaluate strengths and weaknesses of each policy. *Ensure the role and value of the administrative group. *Commitment to policy effectiveness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Behaviour (Technique)</td>
<td>*Provide opportunities for whole-school teaching collaboration. *Improve the use of whole-school resources. *Find out whole-school factors unfavourable for teaching.</td>
<td>*Provide opportunities for whole-school collaboration for teaching and management. *Improve the management of whole-school resources. *Find out and prevent factors unfavourable for the full development of staff. *Develop the whole-school image.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adapted from Eraut (1993:74)
King and Evans (1991:74) take a step further by pointing out that OBE itself has emerged during a decade of accountability concerns and they further point out that:

“the real attraction of OBE may be effective coupling of control with autonomy. At the central level, legislatures and school boards exert control by setting exit outcomes, at the same time, they give schools the autonomy to achieve these outcomes in any number of ways. With the ends set, the means to those ends can rest totally in the hands of school people, and the OBE challenge becomes a technical one of implementation. Schools have both the freedom to effect exit outcomes in any appropriate way and the responsibility for producing a result.”

Schartz and Cavener (1994:335), unlike King and Evans, argue that “the emphasis on standardization and accountability, on a paradigm shift not necessarily selected by them, keeps grade 1 teachers voiceless, yet responsible for the results.”

Van der Horst and McDonald (1997:07) in line with documentation on curriculum 2005/curriculum 21 (1997:9) are of the notion that OBE can be described as an approach which requires teachers and learners to focus their attention on two things:

- **Firstly** the focus is on the desired end results of each learning process. These desired end results are called the outcomes of learning and learners need to demonstrate that they have attained them.
- **Secondly** the focus is on the instructive and learning process that will guide learners to these end results. Teachers are required to use the learning outcome as a focus when they make instructional decisions and plan their lessons.

OBE is perceived as an approach that aims at transforming the education and training system which will equip South Africans to meet the challenges of the new millennium.
The focus changes from the consumption of knowledge to the construction of knowledge. The learner, and not the subject, is always at the centre of the *curriculum* process. In a nutshell, the approach is meant to encourage and to promote a thirst for knowledge and love for learning (Lumadi 1998:2).

Spady and Marshall (1991:67) explain that *OBE* is based on three basic premises, namely:

- All students can learn and succeed
- Success breeds success
- Schools control the condition for success.

Glatthorn (1993:359), in line with Spady, is of the notion that the *OBE curriculum* model is "a design down process moving from the exit outcomes to the lesson outcomes." The skeleton outline of Spady's design model is as follows:

1. Exit Outcomes
2. Programme Outcomes
3. Course (Grade Level) Outcomes
4. Unit Outcomes
5. Lesson Outcomes.

Spady (1994:18) defines the concept outcomes as:

"of high quality, culminating in demonstrations of significant learning in contexts. Demonstration is the key word, an outcome is not a score or grade, but the end product of a clearly defined process that students carry out."

106
• According to *OBE* an educator’s success will be measured by learning outcomes; participatory management says a school’s success must be measured by its learning outputs.

• Educators must provide evidence for learning success by clearly defining performance indicators; participatory management states that schools must do the same.

• Educators must continuously assess their own and their learners’ progress; participatory management states that schools must continuously assess or evaluate their progress towards their defined ‘outputs’.

• Teaching should be learner-centred (it must be inclusive) and outcomes and performance indicators must be shared with learners; participatory management talks of an inclusive, people-centred approach with pre-defined and transparent performance indicators (*Curriculum 2005* 1998:8).

McDonald (1991:85) in support of the above argument shows that:

"die onderwyser moet wegbeweeg van die inhoud in die riging van die leerling om die leerlinge die geleentheid te gee om selfstandig met die inhoud om te gaan."

Spady, however regards aspects of *Curriculum 2005* as not typical of *OBE* (e.g. technicist language and “overprogramming”). He calls for a return to the source of the original idea which is sound *Outcomes-Based Education* (Review Committee on *Curriculum 2005*:11).
2.6 KEY PRINCIPLES OF EFFECTIVE OBE TEACHING:

The following principles of effective OBE teaching are described in *Curriculum* 2005 (1998:11) documentation:

- *Firstly*, all the steps in the teaching process are linked. This makes OBE different from the previous practices of many educators who saw planning as the beginning and assessing as the end. Now assessment provides the information needed for planning.

- *Secondly*, OBE shifts the bulk of the educator's work to the planning stage. Rather than doing lots of talking in the classroom, educators need to think and prepare interesting and appropriate learning activities before they go to class.

- *Thirdly*, it should specified what learners should learn and how they can be more certain that they have learned these things. To do this, we must be clear about our learning outcomes, but even more so, the evidence we require to prove that learners have achieved these outcomes must be clearly stated. These pieces of evidence are called performance indicators.

- *Lastly*, OBE: focuses more on what learners do and learn than on what we, as educators, do. In other words, as educators we must ensure that our learners leave with useful skills and knowledge and not only with an ability to use the information we taught them to write examinations (see figure 2.8).

The above principles hold for sound Outcomes-Based Education, and therefore also for *Curriculum* 21.
Focusses on what learners do

Teaching process
-all the steps are linked

Planning

Four important principles of good OBE teaching

Precise and Certain

Figure 2.8 National Department of Education (Curriculum 2005, 1997)
Curriculum 2005 (1998:11) stresses that good OBE educators guide their practices by asking some inter-related questions, such as:

- What does one want learners to know, be able to do, value and be like as a result of effective teaching?
- What sort of learning environment (activities and assessment) should one construct to assist them in developing this knowledge and ability?
- How will one know if learners are achieving this knowledge and ability? Are one's performance indicators clearly spelt out and communicated to learners?
- How will one use assessment to improve teaching and learners' learning? How will one change the activities designed?
- Can one construct a school environment where collaboration with colleagues in planning and teaching becomes normal and accepted?

The starting point is a clear statement of intended learning outcomes and their associated performance indicators. When these are clearly and publicly stated and then used as the foundation for all other decisions about teaching and learning, there is an OBE system.

All individual learners must be allowed to learn to their full potential. This means that both grade I teachers and learners must have high expectations for successful learning on the part of all learners, regardless of background, previous achievement, age, sex, learning style, or other factors. It has been proved time and again that learners rise to their teachers' expectations of them. Those expectations must, however, be realistic. In South Africa we have to guard against stereotyping learners from different groups in this regard, such as regarding learners from a certain group as uncreative, lazy, weak in Mathematics, et cetera (Van der Horst and McDonald 1997:7).

Teaching in an OBE approach is more creative and innovative than teaching in a traditional approach. No longer will grade I teachers and trainees just implement a curriculum designed by an education department. They can instead be creative in implementing a curriculum which they designed and developed in order to produce the
required outcomes. In fact, both trainers and grade 1 teachers will no longer be overburdened by becoming depositors of knowledge. Learners will be trained to take full responsibility for their own learning which will alleviate the pressure on both grade 1 teachers and learners.

2.6.1 TYPES OF OBE

According to Spady and Marshall (1991:69) three types of OBE are identified namely: traditional, transitional and transformation.

2.6.1.1 Traditional OBE

*Curriculum 2005* (1998:17) indicates that traditional OBE is similar to the old objectives approach to education. It does focus on clearly defined outcomes, but these are narrow (rather than holistic) and are often not linked to the learner’s ability to use this learning in work or life. Outcomes are drawn direct from the content of an existing *curriculum*. Some forms of traditional OBE, or objectives teaching, have been called mastery learning because the intention behind defining the objectives is to help learners master small sections of content or discrete skills.

(a) Characteristics of traditional OBE

- It doesn’t give learners or educators an understanding of why this learning is important.
- It focuses strongly on either applying or recalling content.
- Because of this, educators do not change the learning environment much. Things carry on just as before the outcomes were defined.

Le Grange and Reddy (1998:3) show that the *Curriculum-Based Education* OBE is based on a certain understanding of what educational processes try to achieve, so it has a certain formy, assessment to match that understanding of the learning and teaching process.
2.6.1.2 Transitional OBE

Although transitional OBE is related to traditional OBE, in that it compels educators to be clear about what they want to achieve, its deep seated difference is that:

- Planning begins with the critical outcomes and the curriculum is simply used to achieve these outcomes.
- It always asks whether the outcomes have any value in society.
- It focuses strongly on integrating knowing, doing and feeling.
- Because integration is so important, and because educators must develop ‘competence’, it requires changes in the learning environment.

In the Transitional OBE staff and community members almost universally emphasize broad attitudinal, effective, motivational, and relational qualities or orientations. These schools give priority to higher-level competencies, such as critical thinking, effective communication, technological applications, and complex problem solving, rather than particular kinds of knowledge or information and curriculum, mastery learning, accountability and criterion-referenced assessment (Spady and Marshall 1991:69).

Critics of this form of OBE say that it does not necessarily lead to enough real changes in the education system. Irrelevant content remains, and although it is possible to use the existing curriculum in new ways, this is not always easy and old practices remain unchanged. Others argue that by keeping the content and using it to develop new approaches, educators will be offered a stepping stone – a “frame” – that will guide the transition towards other expressions of OBE (Curriculum 2005 1998:18).

Both Curriculum 2005 and Curriculum 21 can be classed on a continuum from transitional to transformational OBE.
2.6.1.3 Transformational OBE

Transformational OBE arises from a sense that the existing education system and curriculum impede the development of a new society and do not meet the needs of learners. They do not help learners to develop the attitudes, knowledge and skills that will enable them to participate competently in society. Naicker (1999:88) maintains that the grade 1 teacher interacts with learners on the understanding that there are different learning styles and different learning rates. Learners could have talents in any area, e.g. spatial, linguistic, inter-personal.

This situation arises most commonly when there has been, or is a demand for, rapid social change. In societies that are complex, dynamic and technologically sophisticated, an education system that is flexible and able to prepare adaptable learners for life and work in a rapidly changing society, is necessary. Transformational OBE is a collaborative, flexible, transdisciplinary outcomes-based, open system, empowerment-oriented approach to schooling (Spady and Marshall 1991:68).

According to Spady and Marshall (1991:68) transformational OBE is centred on “Why do schools exist in this day and age?” The OBE response is to equip all students with the knowledge, competence, and orientations needed for success after they leave school. Hence, its guiding vision of the graduate is that of the competent future citizen (Spady and Marshall, 1991:78). To its credit, transformational OBE takes nothing about schooling today as a given; no existing features are considered untouchable in carrying out a curriculum design. Spady and Marshall (1991:69) argue that transformational OBE fully embraces and embodies the four OBE principles which they call ‘success for all’ and state:

- Ensure Clarity of Focus on Outcomes of Significance. Culminating demonstrations become the starting point, focal point, and ultimate goal of curriculum design and instruction, Schools and districts work to carefully align (or match) curriculum,
instruction, assessment, and credentialing with the substance (criteria) and process of the intended demonstration.

- **Design Down from Ultimate Outcomes.** *Curriculum* and instructional design inherently should carefully proceed backward from the culminating demonstrations (outcomes) on which everything ultimately focuses and rests, thereby ensuring that all components of a successful culminating demonstration are in place.

- **Emphasize High Expectations for All to Succeed.** Outcomes should represent a high level of challenge for students, and all students should be expected to accomplish them eventually at high performance levels and be given credit for their performance whenever it occurs.

- **Provide Expanded Opportunities and Support for Learning Success.** Time should be used as a flexible resource rather than a predefined absolute in both instructional design and delivery (to better match differences in student learning rates and aptitudes). Educators should deliberately allow students more than one uniform, routine chance to receive needed instruction and to demonstrate their learning successfully (Spady and Marshall 1991:70).

In summary, *OBE*, following a long line of related *curriculum* work, can be characterized as traditional, transitional, or transformational, and points to objectives tied to learner outcomes, core and extended information management systems (Capper and Jamison 1993:432).

Spady (1994:21) introduced the metaphor of the Demonstration Mountain which represents the three forms of *OBE*. It also represents the act of climbing from the most basic demonstration of outcomes of learning, with the modes of the traditional classroom setting, to the contraction of outcome based on transformational *OBE*. Failing mid-way between the base (i.e. traditional *OBE*) and the top of the Demonstration Mountain lies the demonstration of outcomes from the traditional *OBE* model.
It is argued at great length that all implementers of the *OBE* model must of necessity go through all three levels of the Demonstration Mountain. This would mean that one endorses the application of the *OBE* principles at the traditional level where they are applied to the traditional school contents, as long as the system allows the gradual climbing that will add the outcomes of less traditional areas (Transformational *OBE*), with the aim of possibly moving away from the traditional school disciplines to more contextualised outcomes relating to the real life situations outside the confines of the school. About the top part of the Demonstration Mountain, there is some uncertainty concerning its relevance to learning as it occurs in the schools:

> "Because this zone of the mountain seems beyond the structures and frames of reference used most often in the schools, we might ask two questions: are complex Role Performances possible in school? What Role Performances link the world of schooling to the real life?" (Spady 1994:21).

From these questions it would appear that Spady himself is not ready to commit the schools to the so-called Transformational *OBE*. Spady and Marshall (1991:70) say that Transformational *OBE* represents the highest evolution of the concept of *OBE*. They explain that the school districts, which are attempting Transformational *OBE*, set their existing *curriculum* frameworks aside when addressing the issue of future-driven exit outcomes. They further note that,

> ...because these districts have few examples of mature *OBE* designs on which to model their efforts, these pioneers are building a new legacy of work whose designs and results are not yet certain (Spady and Marshall 1991: 70-71).
Is it not strange then that this is the very format of OBE which our Department of National Education is ready to assign to South African schools? Or has our preoccupation with the concept of "transformation" contributed to this decision? In a nutshell, transformational OBE is an approach to teaching and learning which stresses the need to be clear about what learners are expected to achieve (Sieborger and Macintosh 1998:35).

2.6.2 The key values of Curriculum 2005 / Curriculum 21

Shiundu and Omulando acknowledge the following principles of curriculum design followed by the national Department of Education:

(a) Learner-centred designs

In this design, a learner should always be at the centre of the curriculum process. Supporters of these curriculum designs generally view society in democratic terms and perceive individuals as being 'naturally good'. Hence learner-centred designs emphasize individual development and their approach to organizing the curriculum emerges from the needs, interest and purposes of learners. As a result, there are two essential differences between this and the subject-centred designs.

Learner-centred designs take their organizational cues from individual student needs rather than a body of subject matter. Consequently learner-centred designs are usually not as preplanned as other designs, for they evolve from teacher-student interaction in relation to learning tasks. In some cases the curriculum may have no preplanning at all, and may emerge as a group of students reveal their concerns, interests and needs.

Print (1993:99) identifies two forms of learner-centred approaches which can be distinguished in curriculum design:
• **Activity/experience design.** This approach is based on determining the genuine needs and interests of learners which in turn form the basis of the *curriculum*. An important claim of this approach is that “People only learn what they experience... Learning in its true sense is an active transaction”. Consequently it is very difficult to preplan, although with experience certain trends emerge. An important role for the teacher, therefore, is to develop the ability to ascertain genuine student interests and then create an appropriate *curriculum* around them (Shiundu and Omulando 1992: 115).

• **Humanistic design.** Similar in approach to the experience design, the humanistic design emphasizes the meeting of individual needs in a conducive, supportive learning environment. The humanistic approach to *curriculum* design may well incorporate all the features of the experience design with the additional factor of providing a supportive environment for the individual learner (Print 1993: 100).

The essential differences between the two designs is that the *curriculum* developer has some preconceived views, based on the intents of humanistic psychology, on what is of value to learners and that these ideas are integrated into a *curriculum* based upon the learner’s needs (Le Grange and Reddy 1998: 4).

**(b) Integration of education**

One of the key principles of *OBE* is the integration of education and training. Many schools of thought recognize the gulf between theory and practice. This is the existing and much criticized divorce between theory and practice in education, and, more broadly between education and life. Therefore in designing *Curriculum 2005* and its implementation, the learner must learn what has relevance and meaning for everyday experiences which are likely to enlarge his horizons as an outcome. The approach of learning and integration of knowledge, skills, values, attitudes and practical work is of great significance. The implication is that the teacher must be initiated into a wide variety of learning areas at university level. Learners make sense of the new knowledge
in the context of their own knowledge and then develop their original concept as learning takes place (Le Grange and Reddy 1998:06).

(c) Attainability

Naicker (1999:87) shows that learners need to demonstrate clearly what they have learnt. In other words, outcomes are described with clear action verbs, e.g. “counteract”. For outcomes to be viable they must be attainable by learners. Levels of learner competency and experience, the availability of resources and the availability of time must be taken into account when devising outcomes in order to ensure they are attainable. It may well be sensible for learners to understand and appreciate, for example, a gravitational force. However, it would be extremely difficult, in terms of time and cost, for students to acquire that learning experientially. If the outcome is important, it would need to be constructed in a way that was attainable (by using audio-visual material perhaps).

(d) Validity

Sieborger and Macintosh (1998:11) view validity as the extent to which the assessment measures what it is supposed to measure, or whether it does what it is meant to do. In order to be valid and reliable a curriculum must reflect the reality it purports to represent. In other words, the curriculum must state what it is intended to state. If, for example, a curriculum refers to standards of student literacy and the ensuing objectives refer only to literature, then these outcomes are likely to be invalid. Leedy (1993:40) indicates that validity is concerned with the soundness and the effectiveness of the measuring instrument.

(e) Consistency

Hammersley (1992:67) shows that the degree of consistency with which instances are assigned to the same category by different people may be referred to as reliability. Not only should outcomes be comprehensive but they must also be consistent with each other
and with the goals from which they come. When constructing outcomes it is important to see that they relate effectively to each other. If an outcome for enhancing the learner self-concept, for example, emphasized a supportive, nurturing environment, and another required all learning experiences to be assessed through rigorous, multiple-choice testing procedures, then inconsistency and a clash would occur. To maintain a logical development and extension of the fundamental curriculum intent, outcomes must always be consistent.

(f) Specificity

The noun “specificity” is derived from the adjective “specific,” which means clearly defined or relating to a particular subject (Thompson 1996:876). To avoid ambiguity and to be readily understandable to all concerned, outcomes should be precise. Outcomes that lack specificity, and thus perhaps clarity, are likely to be misunderstood by both learners and instructors. To some curriculum developers this means writing outcomes in behavioural terms. Furthermore, an outcome may be precise, although not in strict behavioural terms, and still meet the criteria of specificity. As so much of the curriculum is concerned with outcomes, and as they are so important in subsequent curriculum planning, it is a worthwhile investment of time and effort to make them effective. Using the above criteria as a screening device, curriculum developers will enhance their outcomes and hence their subsequent curricula.

(g) Suitability

The South African yearbook (1998:323) states explicitly that the National Commission on Special Needs in Education and Training (NCSNET) and the National Committee on Education Support Service (NCESS) were appointed by the Minister of Education in October 1996. The role of the NCSNET is to restructure the curriculum to such an extent that it becomes suitable for the needs of learners at all levels.
The issue of the suitability of a *curriculum* is a somewhat vexed one, as educators hold different opinions as to what those needs are and who will decide on them. *Curriculum* developers agree that outcomes must be suitable to learners’ needs, but what are these needs, and who decides if they are suitable? Furthermore, are the objectives suitable for learners, given their level of maturation and the social context within which they function?

*Curriculum* developers may decide, for example, that all learners in grade 1 should learn about human reproduction. This appears to be a logical need of learners, particularly in the context of modern society where the acquisition of such knowledge may be, at best, haphazard. But do all *curriculum* developers agree that students should acquire this learning? And at what age? And do the learners want this information or do certain adults suggest they do?

### 2.6.2.1 Different Outcomes

According to Sieborger and Macintosh (1998:35-36) outcomes are also called attainment targets or standards. The targets that which learners have to aim at, or a statement of the standards which they are expected to achieve. Spady (1994:49) shows that outcomes are the learning results we desire from students, which lead to culminating demonstrations. These results and their demonstrations occur at or after the end of a significant learning experience; hence the term “culminating.” This also means that outcomes are not simply the things students believe, feel, remember, know, or understand; these and other similar things are all internal mental processes, rather than clear demonstrations of learning. Instead, outcomes are what students actually can do with what they know and understand.

The South African *OBE* is currently comprised of three different outcomes namely, critical cross-field outcomes, Learning Area outcomes and specific outcomes. In *Curriculum 21* the Learning Area Outcomes may be dropped (Review Committee on Curriculum 2005 2600:X).
(a) Critical cross-field outcomes

According to Naicker (1999:97) *curriculum 2005/Curriculum 21* is informed by twelve critical outcomes which are in turn informed by the constitution of the new South Africa. Le Grange and Reddy (1998:8) name seven outcomes which perpetuate the development of productive and independent citizens. The following critical outcomes have been adopted by the South African Qualification Authority (SAQA).

Learners will:
- Identify and solve problems and make decisions using critical and creative thinking
- Work effectively with others as members of a team, organisation and community
- Organise and manage themselves and their activities responsibly and effectively
- Collect, analyse and critically evaluate information
- Communicate effectively using visual or language skills in various modes
- Use Science and Technology effectively and critically
- Demonstrate an understanding of the world as a set of related systems by recognising that problem solving contexts do not exist in isolation
- Reflect on and exploring a variety of strategies to learn more effectively
- Participate as responsible citizens in the life of local, national and global communities
- Be culturally and aesthetically sensitive across a range of social contexts
- Explore education and career opportunities
- Develop entrepreneurial opportunities

(b) Learning area outcomes

*Curriculum 2005* has been criticised for having too many Learning Areas (eight). The Review Committee on *Curriculum 2005* have suggested that the eight Learning Areas be diminished to six, as the Economic and Management Sciences Learning Area and the Technology Learning Area should be dropped (2000:X).
OBE endorses a holistic approach where a fusion of learning content is emphasized. Curriculum 2005 (1997:17) shows that every learning area will have its own broad outcomes which are called the Learning Area Outcomes (LAO). These are general skills, abilities and values a learner will be expected to demonstrate in that learning area. The following eight learning areas in curriculum 2005 are tabulated by Naicker (1999:98):

i. Communication, Literacy and Language Learning
ii. Numeracy and Mathematics
iii. Human and Social Sciences
iv. Natural Sciences
v. Arts and Culture
vi. Economic and Management Sciences
vii. Life Orientation
viii. Technology (see figure 2.9 for these eight Learning Areas)
Figure 2.9 A Balanced *Curriculum*
*Curriculum* (2005:15)

(a) **Specific outcomes**

These refer to the specific knowledge, values and attitudes, which should be displayed in a particular context (Van der Horst and McDonald 1997:48).

McDonald (1991:86) shows that "die onderwyser se funksie as ontsluieter van die werklıkheid strek veel verder as die onderrig van vakinhoude. ’n Onderwyser met wye,
spronklike en lewensegte algemene kennis en kundigheids vertoon beweeglik en effektief in die lessituatie.”

The South African Critical Outcomes have been informed by the values and vision of the South African constitution and these outcomes form the foundation for the description of more specific outcomes in all learning areas (Van der Horst and McDonald 1997:48).

2.6.2.2 The rationale behind OBE

The rationale behind the introduction of OBE is that there has been a steep decline in the quality of educational performance by most learners. The main rationale is that there is inequality in education provision. For instance, for the past two years, the Northern Province has experienced the highest unemployment rate, which is rocketing sky high because the education learning received does not enable people to become competent and marketable outside the classroom situation.

Bhika (1997:49) has pointed out that the past and current matriculants are misfits in society and the outside world. The National Department of Education felt that something had to be done urgently to rescue the situation before it went out of hand, hence the introduction of the OBE approach. OBE is therefore not a programme, but a way of designing, delivering and documenting instruction in terms of its intended goals and outcomes. OBE puts emphasis on competencies (knowledge, skills and behaviour) that are observable and thus measurable.

Hager and Beckett (1995:2) point out that “the concept of competence includes the notion of the abilities or capabilities being applied to the performance of some tasks.”

Van Schalkwyk (1995:20) is of the view that “the scheme, curriculum 2005, sounds good in principle, for it is intended to equip school leavers with the skills and knowledge required by the market, through the development of intellectual and social skills resting on an inter-active process which will not require rote learning. The Outcomes Based
*Curriculum* is the product of the enlightened concept that education is a life-long process."

### 2.6.2.3 The cascade model

The cascade model's objective is to co-ordinate and consolidate the existing *OBE* management capacity within the Department of Education, Arts, Culture and Sports (DEACS) and the development of a cadre of *OBE* trainer-facilitators capable of preparing *grade 1 teachers* to implement *OBE*. The DEACS decided to utilize either the cascade or train – the trainer model and the cluster model for phasing in *curriculum 2005* (DEACS 1998:1).

Prior to *Curriculum 2005*’s implementation, quite a number of educators were selected in all South African provinces to attend the train – the trainer workshop organized by the national Department of Education in Pretoria in 1997. The overall aim of the workshop was to equip and empower educators so that they should in turn equip their fellow *grade 1 teachers* in their respective provinces. In the *Northern Province* which educates learners at school level, only twenty facilitators were selected to attend the workshop.

**a) Strengths of the model**

- It is economic in the sense that the ones trained in turn train trainees
- Teachers are trained in stages
- Developments can be assessed easily
- It equips and empowers educators (Eraut 1993:70)

**b) Weaknesses of the model**

- It warrants a lot of time to train all teachers
- Incompetent educators dilute the content to be carried over the teacher (Eraut 1993:70).
In Northern Province, for example, the provincial facilitators, who were trained nationally, in turn trained thirty grade one educators from the 30 identified pilot schools, across the length and the breadth of the province – five schools per region. Out of 31 areas, only 19 areas had seconded educators and 12 areas had no facilitators. The shortage of training staff is in effect a problem, which needs urgent attention. Towards the end of 1997 Northern Province further workshoped 5000 grade 1 teachers in preparation for the implementation of Curriculum 2005 (DEACS 1998:01).

2.6.2.4 The cluster model

The DEACS (1998:1) shows that apart from the cascade model, the cluster model is used in order to change the classroom practice of teachers of grades one, two, three and seven in schools, by equipping them with skills to develop learning activities, in order to enhance their implementation of the new curriculum.

(a) Strengths of the Model

- It focuses on consolidation of knowledge and skills
- It boosts teachers’ confidence and reinforces their prior knowledge (DEACS 1998:02).

(b) Weaknesses of the model

- It has financial constraints because teachers from different schools meet weekly at a stipulated venue – and scheduled time
- Facilitators experience problems on visiting schools for follow up sessions (Arnott 1992:76).

2.6.2.5 OBE’s constraints

(a) Inadequate training at workshops, e.g. half a day or once a month without a follow-up
session  
(b) Poor resource materials and infrastructure e.g. overcrowded classrooms, shortage of water etc 
(c) A death of expertise in OBE which results in lack of motivation in teaching.
(d) Financial constraints experienced in delivery  
(e) Bombastic terminology  
(f) Politics and education  
(g) Poor involvement by many key stakeholders such as teachers, principals, lecturers, educational practitioners, parents, students and many others.  
(h) Continuous assessment where there is a dearth of resources (Arnott 1992:76).

2.6.3 OBE Critique  

2.6.3.1 Ongoing assessment  

Although ongoing assessment is a key principle of OBE, it becomes difficult to implement in overcrowded classrooms. (See chapter 4 item 4.3.1). Lumadi (1998:142) shows that one of the basic principles of OBE is that learners have to progress at their own pace. If they have to progress at their own pace, will it become possible for a facilitator to apply thus principle of individualization? Proper cognizance should be taken of the fact that three groups of learners are found in a classroom situation such as above average, average and below average.

The classrooms for most black institutions are predominantly overcrowded. If the learner-teacher ratio is abnormal, how can one apply the principle of individualization? Turney et al. (1992:5), in support of this principle of individualization, argue that teachers must seek to know and understand learners' individual needs, interests, abilities and backgrounds. When learners are squeezed into one classroom, they become psychologically disturbed. As such, they do not concentrate fully. Unless something is done, this will remain a futile exercise.
2.6.3.2 Financial constraints

The discussion document (1996:67) shows that a policy for financing education in South Africa should attend to institutions, resources, facilities, learners and their financial needs. Initially, the Ministry of Education had intended to implement OBE in grade 1 and 7 in 1998. However, the department managed to implement it in grade one only. Facilitators of OBE in various regions indicated that the department could not succeed because of budgetary constraints. Officials were hardly able to visit schools to assess whether everything is up to date because of the financial implications. Facilitators also pointed out that there are many schools that could not be covered due to long distances and a shortage of manpower. Although they requested the department to appoint more people, this was in vain. The negative response they got from the department was that new appointments had serious financial implications. Can we say OBE is going to be a success when the departments are failing at grassroots level? OBE implementation warrants both a curriculum review and retraining of teachers.

2.6.3.3 Time factor

The failure of the cascade model shows that time spent on training teachers in the OBE approach has been insufficient. For instance, in the Northern Province, grade 1 teachers received six days for intensive training (with the exclusion of cluster meetings). Enough time should have been given for the assessment of OBE. (See chapter 4 item 4.3.4 regarding this matter). In terms of continuous assessment, learners need to progress at their own pace. Why can the same not apply to grade 1 teachers? There is no point in doing this in a haphazard way. If some of the schools’ grade 1 teachers are not clear regarding the OBE approach, how do we expect them to deliver the goods in the classroom situation, given such a short period? They will still resort to the subject-centred approach (Lumadi 1998:142).
2.6.3.4 Political ploy

Jansen (1990:32) shows that racial education change is essentially a response to historical conditions; in this case the racial capitalism of *apartheid*, which continues to be reproduced in the South African school system, influenced the decision to implement *OBE* in 1998. The introduction of *OBE* was speeded up because of the 1999 elections that were just around the corner. The decision-making process to adopt and to implement *OBE* was to a certain extent hierarchical and only to a lesser extent participatory. Is democracy in education viewed along those lines in our country or are the stakeholders (e.g. *grade 1 teachers*) maximally involved in *curriculum development*?

2.6.3.5 Backlog in infrastructure

"Almost one quarter of our schools have no access to water within walking distance. Over half have no electricity. In some provinces, 40% of school buildings are in poor condition. About 13% of schools have no toilets at all and of those that do, nearly half are pit latrines. Refer to chapter 4 item 4.3.2 and chapter 5 items 5.1.1-5.1.8 and chapter 6 item 6.2.1.1(b). Nearly 40% of schools have poor stationery suppliers. Libraries and laboratories are beyond the wildest dreams of most of our 3200 schools. There is a shortage of nearly 58000 classrooms, over a million desks and chairs for pupils and over 100000 chairs for teachers" (The Star 26 August 1997).

Apparently there are still areas that do not have enough materials on *OBE*. Are enough materials going to be supplied in schools? Adequate facilities are needed for *OBE* to become a reality. There is a drastic shortage of classrooms, media and many other related factors. Should one expect miracles for *OBE* to become a reality?

The enormous backlog in infrastructure is a major barrier to the effective implementation of *Outcomes-Based Education*. In economically backward provinces like the *Northern Province*, serious efforts must be made to redress the inequities of the past so that the
minimum infrastructure is in place for the introduction of “Curriculum 2005 /Curriculum 21.”

2.6.3.6 Technical jargon

A multitude of terms, which sound familiar, but have unique meanings in the context of OBE, need to be clearly understood, learned and applied. How many of the majority of the fully qualified, let alone unqualified and underqualified, grade 1 teachers are able to understand and correctly apply terms.

Jansen (1997:67) shows that the language of innovation associated with OBE is too complex, confusing and at times contradictory: For instance, concepts such as critical outcomes, specific outcomes, NQF, performance indicators, SAQA fields and many others. Simple, clear and straightforward language ought to have been used. Although one does not dispute the fact that various terminologies should be used in various learning areas, a policy document should always be simplified for various stakeholders. The role of teacher preparation in this regard the cascade has failed according to the Minister Asmal.

2.6.3.7 The hidden curriculum

Serious concerns have been raised by critics in the USA where OBE has been in place in quite a number of states. The following are a selection of comments from an article titled “Outcomes-Based Education: Political Hot Potato. Educational Miasma?” that appeared in Sowetan (1999:14).

1. “The biggest problem is that it is inherently a system of social change. Outcomes are determined by educators and policy makers rather than by a standard level of expectations, social demands for achievement, or parental output.
This leaves the educational process open to interpretation and abuse according to individual political and social agendas.

2. *OBE* is brainwashing, not education. Skinnerian techniques of psychological conditioning is used to obtain ‘politically correct and compliant workers who feel good about themselves;

3. The objective of *OBE* is the destruction of Judeo-Christian culture by developing a morality of relativism based on what one feels is good in situations;

4. *OBE* undermines academic excellence by “de-emphasizing or lowering academic standards such that all students can meet the requirements.” “Where core academic subjects are taught, they are treated as processes only, used to achieve the real attitudinal goals

5. It makes the teacher into a facilitator or coach in place of conducting a directed learning environment’. Learners self direct their learning through active involvement with each other through group work and team work.

6. There is an integrated curriculum where traditional subjects are grouped into learning areas and where learning “occurs primarily through projects, learning centres and play activities

7. In the *OBE* system, all evaluation is subjective; standardized testing is out and individually formulated methods of evaluation are used to determine when a student has reached the desired outcome. With this type of non-standard evaluation, it is unclear what is being measured, which student knows what, and what the test scores mean.”

2.7 IMPORTANCE SBCD IN AN OBE FRAMEWORK?

Both *SBCD* and *OBE* are intertwined in the teaching-learning situation. In *SBCD*, *grade 1 teachers* have the authority to dictate terms in *curriculum development*. *Grade 1 teachers* are always in the forefront of the teaching-learning situation. Teachers always have high expectations of learners, irrespective of the pace at which they learn (Naicker 1999:89). As such, it is of vital importance for teachers to take part in the development of *OBE* as they are obviously the facilitators and implementers of *OBE* in the teaching-
learning situation. To address the importance of SBCD in an OBE framework, the elements of *curriculum* design will be used below.

### 2.7.1 Components of *curriculum* design

*Curriculum* design refers to the arrangement of its elements, which include *curriculum* intent (aims, goals and outcomes), content (subject matter), learning activities (teaching/learning strategies) and evaluation (assessment procedures) (Print 1993:73). Longstreet and Shane (1993:57) view *curriculum* design as the outcome of a process by which the purposes of education are linked to the selection and organisation of content. Content may be viewed as being in either a dynamic or a static state. Design may be referred to as a deliberate process of devising, planning and selecting the elements, techniques and procedures that constitute some objects (Morrison 1993:165). From these definitions it is quite evident that *curriculum* design identifies the elements of the *curriculum*, indicates what their relationships are to each other, and shows the administrative conditions under which the *curriculum* is to function (Finch and Crunkilton 1993:39).

#### 2.7.1.1 Situation analysis

Van der Horst and McDonald (1997:173) are of the viewpoint that “situation analysis refers to finding out information about the learners at the beginning of a lesson, year, et cetera. What do learners know? What are they interested in? What is their experience? How do they learn? “A situation analysis answers the ‘WHAT’ question? A situation analysis can be considered as the recognition of some school problem which then becomes a springboard for *curriculum development*” (see table 2.8).
TABLE 2.8 DECISION-MAKING IN THE CURRICULUM PROCESS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROCESS</th>
<th>AGENCY</th>
<th>ROLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Situational analysis</td>
<td>Teachers, heads of school departments, and school principal, Learners, Parents, Consultants (local authority), (college and university), (other schools), (research agencies), Administration</td>
<td>D₁, D₂, D₁, D₂, D₂, A, S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outcomes</td>
<td>Teachers, Learners, Parents, Consultants, National governments and government departments, Project teams, Administration</td>
<td>D₁, D₂, D₃, A, A, S, A, D₂, S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Design</td>
<td>Teachers, Learners, Parents, Consultants, Project teams, Administration</td>
<td>D₁, D₂, D₂, S, A, A, S, D₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implementation</td>
<td>Teachers, Learners, Administration</td>
<td>D₁, D₂, S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment</td>
<td>Teachers, Learners, Consultants, Government departments, Administration</td>
<td>D₁, D₂, A, S, A, S</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Key: S = Support; A = Advice; D₁ = Decision; D₂ = Discussion.

Brady (1990:112)

Krüger (1980:76), in support of Marsh (1992:79), shows that “situasie analise behels die geheelsoorsig oor die terrein wat gedek will word in ’n bepaalde onderrigsekwens en die daaruit ontspringende doelstelling of voorneme met die onderrig.”
According to Print (1993:81) the process of examining the content for which a curriculum is to be developed and, the application of that analysis to curriculum planning, is called situation analysis.

Lumadi (1995:15) further indicates that a situation analysis is sometimes termed “diagnosis of needs”. Although it might be much more than a diagnosis of needs, the process of diagnosis must be maintained throughout the whole of the planning and working out of the unit. He argues that though separate steps can be indicated for the purposes of analysis and discussion, there is no point at which one stops and the next begins.

Grade 1 teachers in SBCD may contribute positively through the introduction of OBE in seminars and workshops. Through these teachers, the problems of SBCD are diagnosed. Authority to developing the curriculum has been accorded to teachers, unlike the transitional OBE where the curriculum is disseminated to the consumers for implementation after a thorough consultation. This is a top down approach. For one to conduct a situation analysis, a curriculum developer should obey certain rules and regulations namely problem identification, selection of suitable aspects, data collection and analysis and recommendations which should be made. (See table 2.9).
# TABLE 2.9 FACTORS TO BE CONSIDERED IN THE SCHOOL ENVIRONMENT

## EXTERNAL FACTORS TO THE SCHOOL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><strong>Cultural and social changes and expectations.</strong> This includes major changes to society such as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>unemployment patterns, societal values, economic growth and family relationships. Parental,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>employment and community expectations of schools are included (e.g. the need for improved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>literacy and numeracy).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><strong>Educational system requirements and challenges.</strong> Includes systemic influences such as policy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>requirements, inquiry reports, external examinations, major curriculum projects and significant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>educational research.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><strong>Changing nature of content.</strong> The subject matter taught in schools requires constant revision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to update it with developments in the outside world. Examples include new knowledge acquired,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>technological developments and new literature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><strong>Teacher support systems.</strong> A variety of external systems can contribute to enhancing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>teaching/learning strategies, content updates, evaluation techniques, audio visual material and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>other resources. Support may come from tertiary institutions, educational institutes (ACER,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CDC), local teacher centres, curriculum consultants/advisory teachers, in-service courses and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>subject associations (e.g. Science Teachers Association).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><strong>Resources.</strong> Curriculum developers need to be aware of the availability and flow of resources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>into the school. These may come from Commonwealth sources (Priority Schools Project, projects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of national significance), State education departments, the community and business</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>organisations.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## INTERNAL FACTORS TO THE SCHOOL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><strong>Learners.</strong> Significant data that may be gathered on learners include abilities, physical and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>psychological development, aptitudes, emotional and social development and educational needs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>An accurate understanding of the nature of learners allows for effective curriculum planning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><strong>Teachers.</strong> What are the skills, experience, teaching style, values and special strengths and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>weaknesses of a school teaching staff? Special strengths may broaden curriculum offering (e.g.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>aeronautics, horticulture, meditation) and allow for curriculum enrichment and extension.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><strong>School ethos.</strong> The school climate/environment is a significant factor influencing curriculum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and includes principal involvement, power distribution, social cohesiveness, operational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>procedures and professional cohesiveness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><strong>Material resources.</strong> What exactly does the school possess in terms of buildings, equipment,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>resources (books, curriculum materials), land and vehicles as well as financial resources for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>future purchases? Knowledge of resources facilities curriculum planning (e.g. can we offer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>horticulture, sewing and photography?).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><strong>Perceived problems.</strong> Major stimulus for curriculum change emanates from a perception of needs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or problems. Curriculum planners ascertain these from parents, teachers, learners and the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>community. Needs-assessment techniques may be used.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Print (1993:84)
(a) Problem identification

In order to develop a school *curriculum*, one should be aware of learners’ needs and interests. If a needs assessment technique is continuous, this may be helpful since the key components are related to a situation analysis, namely the learner, the teacher, the particular society and the instructional situation (Le Grange and Reddy 1998:34).

- The learner

According to *OBE* principles, the learner should always be at the centre of the *curriculum* process. All aspects of the learner’s daily milieu should be borne in mind, for example socio-cultural, economic, affective and cognitive development. Significant data that may be gathered on students include abilities, physical and psychological development, aptitudes, emotional and social development and educational needs. An accurate understanding of the nature of learners allows for effective *curriculum* planning. In terms of *OBE*, learners progress into the next phase with their age cohorts (Naicker 1999:88).

- The teacher

Naicker (199:87) points out that the learners and the teacher are both very clear from the beginning about what the learner needs to demonstrate at the end of the learning experience. The following crucial issues are of cardinal importance when a teacher designs and develops a *curriculum*: professionalism, learning area specialization and teaching style. Support may come from tertiary institutions, educational institutes, local teacher centres, advisory teachers, in-service courses and subjects. These strengths broaden the *curriculum* offering and allow for *curriculum* enrichment (Print 1993:84).
• **Nature of society**

Vermeulen (1997:16) shows that society expects the *curriculum* to be up to date with current developments and future trends, especially as they are manifested in technology. An outdated *curriculum* is of no value to *SBCD*. Major changes in society such as unemployment rates, in this instance in South Africa, and family relationships should be dealt with when developing a relevant *curriculum* for a society. Cornbleth (1990:12) shows that in any attempt to provide an adequate *curriculum* in a period of rapid social change, it is necessary to understand the nature of society as it is and to extrapolate likely trends. The *curriculum* designer is bound to survey and interpret the nature of society and its basic stable values, and the areas in which it is changing.

• **The didactic situation**

The didactic situation is also termed the teaching-learning situation or classroom situation (Lunadi 1997:02). Some of the factors to be considered in a didactic situation are resources and funds for school’s academic policy. In fact, *curriculum* developers need to be made aware of the availability of resources.

(a) **Selection of suitable aspects**

After identifying a problem, a *curriculum* designer and developer should address the factors in table 2.9.

(b) **Data collection and analysis**

Various techniques can be used to collect data. See table 2.10. The collected data should be analysed to determine their importance at a particular point in time.
### TABLE 2.10 DATA COLLECTION TECHNIQUES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FACTOR</th>
<th>TECHNIQUES</th>
<th>DATA COLLECTED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Learners</td>
<td>Interviews</td>
<td>Learners’ information and attitudes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>School records</td>
<td>Background and achievement data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Systematic observation</td>
<td>Learners’ behaviour patterns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Questionnaires</td>
<td>Learners’ attitudes (large scale).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>External examination</td>
<td>Comparative student performance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Psychosocial environment</td>
<td>Learners’ perceptions of classroom climate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Self-reporting scales</td>
<td>Learners’ attitudes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers</td>
<td>Anecdotal records</td>
<td>Information on teacher behaviour and attitudes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Staff profiles</td>
<td>Records of staff skills and abilities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Questionnaires</td>
<td>Teacher attitudes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School ethos</td>
<td>Systematic observation</td>
<td>Impression of school climate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Psychosocial environment</td>
<td>Aggregated classroom climate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Interviews</td>
<td>Learners/teacher/parent attitudes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resources</td>
<td>Inventory</td>
<td>Listing of school resources.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Checklist</td>
<td>Impression of school resources.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Systematic observation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Print (1993:87)

(c) **Recommendations**

Recommendations guide the *curriculum* designer and developer in the development of *curriculum* intent, content, activities and evaluation.

Van der Horst and McDonald (1997:14) propound that the teacher must first analyse the learner’s needs, for instance, the learner’s entry level in terms of foreknowledge, level of proficiency, interests, et cetera. Instructional design for each learner is an ongoing process of observation, reflection and analysis.
SBCD must, ideally, form the basis of a situation analysis. In the OBE context relevant stakeholders in education such as teachers, parents, community, learners and many others share the responsibility for learning. This notion is well supported by Brady (1990:05) in his definition of SBCD, where he advocates that different stakeholders must be cooperating partners, both in curriculum development and implementation. Print (1993:22), too, emphasizes that parents and the community, teachers as well as learners may be easily involved in meaningful curriculum planning. This shows that SBCD, like OBE, encourages people to share decisions democratically.

Carl (1995:2) observes that in order to optimize the teaching and learning situation in the school and classroom, teachers and pupils should be empowered with regard to the process of curriculum development. However, empowerment does not mean unrestrained and unstructured actions, but in fact enhances the learning outcome, and other experiences developing the learner.

The empowerment of teachers in SBCD is their autonomy to exercise their craft, for instance by means of OBE, especially in transformational OBE, where the curriculum development assumes that the learner needs something that can be met by the instructional process being planned. Learners too, should be empowered by OBE, as it encourages them to be active and to think reflectively and abstractly.

Van der Horst and McDonald (1997:14) maintain that careful planning is vital for successful teaching in OBE. This argument implies that in OBE one cannot teach effectively unless there is thorough preparation. A relevant curriculum addresses the needs and interests of learners.

2.7.1.2 Curriculum intent

It is imperative to point out that aims and goals are interpreted differently by various scholars. Goals and aims are long-term intentions, whereas objectives refer to school-term intentions.
Curriculum intent is a term which incorporates the various forms of aims, goals, objectives and outcomes found in curriculum documents. Together they will hopefully be achieved by learners as they interact with the curriculum. As such, aims, goals, objectives and outcomes provide guidance to teachers and developers (Print 1993:92).

Vermeulen (1997:17) indicates that the question of “why” a particular learning area is selected seeks clarity regarding the aims (outcomes) of the curriculum. This usually refers to the specific knowledge (learning content), skills and attitudes that the curriculum aims at. To avoid confusion to readers, aims, goals, objectives and outcomes will be defined separately.

(a) Aims

Krüger and Müller (1990:39) define aims as the long-term educational intent. They are an essential component of long-term curriculum planning. Lumadi (1995:20), in support of Krüger and Müller (1990:39), argues that aims are written only for those learning situations that pursue the end results in the long term, and should not be written for situations whose results cannot be foreseen. They are written so as to express and emphasize their continuity, making it possible to translate them into specific learning environments and activities. These guide teaching and learning and if they do not comply with the proviso, they are regarded as worthless.

Aims are broadly phrased statements of educational intent. They state what is hopefully to be achieved by the curriculum. They are purposely stated vaguely because they are developed for a general level of education and by society (Print 1993:93).

Teaching and learning are intentional activities. This means that they are not performed randomly, but with a particular aim in mind. The instructional activities are not only planned, but also guided and assessed by means of explicitly formulated and instructionally justified aims. The outcomes in OBE that must be considered and striven
for in a particular teaching-learning situation, follow from the situation analysis which precedes reflection on the particular situation (Vermeulen 1997:17).

(b) Goals

Print (93:93) indicates that goals are more specific, precisely worded statements of curriculum intent and are derived from aims. Usually phrased in non-technical language, goals are directed towards student achievement by emphasizing content and skills. Goals are medium to long term depending upon how they have been translated from aims.

According to Marsh (1992:85) goals are more precise statements of curriculum interest. Educational goals are written, operational statements of the outcomes of education (Finch and Crunkilton 1993:177).

Parkay and Hass (1993:98) regard goals as properly determined when the demands of society, the characteristics of the students, and the potential contributions of the various fields of knowledge have been taken into consideration. Geyser (1992:62) shows that "met doelstelling word die ideale mikpunt van die kurrikulum bedoel." Without educational goals, the translation of general goals into programmes is likely to be haphazard (Wiles and Bondi 1998:84).

(c) Objectives

Longstreet and Shane (1993:59) maintain that outcomes represent the analysis and transformation of goals, into actions believed to support the achievement of the goals. Objectives are also viewed as specific statements which are short (Marsh 1992:85). Doll (1992:206) stresses that if objectives are written in a way which indicates what the course is intended to achieve, they do not have the same usefulness as guides to planning or as a basis for assessment techniques.
Lumadi (1995:23) argues that aims, goals and objectives play a vital part in the development of curricula and in instruction and assessment. The ideal position regarding this principle is for teachers to have a fairly wide range of objectives which are clearly and precisely expressed. Objectives may also be seen as short term in nature and as such, may cover a month, a day, a week, a term or a semester (see table 2.11).

### TABLE 2.11 RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN AIMS, GOALS AND OBJECTIVES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CRITERIA</th>
<th>AIMS</th>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>OBJECTIVES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Definition</td>
<td>vague, generally phrased statements of what should be achieved by curricula.</td>
<td>More precisely phrased statements of curricula intent derived from aims.</td>
<td>Specific statements of program intent, derived from goals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Expression</td>
<td>Broadly phrased, non-technical language.</td>
<td>Generally phrased in non-technical language although more precise than aims.</td>
<td>Phrased in technical language, using precise key words, may use behavioural terms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Time</td>
<td>Long term, usually covering many years.</td>
<td>Medium to long term, depending upon how they are translated from aims.</td>
<td>Short term, may cover a lesson, a day, a week, a term or a semester.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Stated by</td>
<td>Society through forms such as politicians, education systems, major inquiries, pressure groups.</td>
<td>Education authorities at system, region and subject level curriculum committees, school policy documents.</td>
<td>Classroom teachers individually, groups of teachers. Some curriculum documents (unit objectives).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Examples</td>
<td>Schools should enhance learners self-concepts.</td>
<td>Learners will examine South African curriculum.</td>
<td>Given pen and paper learners will analyse the role if curriculum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Learners should be familiar with mathematical and computer skills.</td>
<td>Learners will construct three pieces of furniture employing woodworking skills.</td>
<td>Learners will draw a map with nine provinces of South Africa on a prepared outline.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Learners should appreciate the role of the skilled trades person in society (TAFE).</td>
<td>Learners will understand reading readiness procedures.</td>
<td>Learners will know the correct use of capital letters.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Brady (1992:14)
Freysen (1991:30) et al. show that when formulating outcomes it is necessary first to determine globally what must be achieved, after which the learning content achievement must be delineated before it is, finally, expressed by the specific nature of the learning content. The phases proceed as follows:

- **Overview phase:** during it, one must look at inter alia, who the target group is, what must be learnt, how it must be learnt, when it must be learnt and for how long it must be learnt as well as the methods, techniques and media to be used.

- **Delineation phase:** here, one must determine within which learning area or domain (cognitive, affective or psychomotor), or combination of learning areas, the learning achievements fall.

- **Expression phase:** learning achievement is embodied in the learning content by means of significant facts, concepts, relationships, structures, methods, skills, values and attitudes. In brief, features of effective objectives are comprehensiveness, consistency, attainability, suitability, validity and specificity.

The question should be posed: what will be the results or outcomes of my teaching. There is no doubt about the fact that SBCD, like OBE, caters for the needs of learners. In OBE what a learner is to learn is clearly identified beforehand. In SBCD a teacher should always have a curriculum intent in advance. There is a clear focus on culminating outcomes of significance. Each learner is provided with time and assistance to realize his or her demonstrated achievement. In OBE each learner’s needs are accommodated through multiple teaching and learning strategies, and assessment tools, and lastly each learner is provided the time for assistance to realize his or her potential (Curriculum 2005:17).

Print (1993:21) argues that SBCD implies teacher participation. This may be only teachers or other groups as well, but teachers have the most significant input. In fact, the benefits of both SBCD and OBE are no less impressive. They can help to advance curriculum ownership. Teachers will become partners in the system and not merely the conducts through which a curriculum is transmitted. They will have encouragement and
every opportunity to expose and nurture the best talents of those in care. OBE is evolved from educational objectives, competency-based education, mastery learning and criterion-referenced assessment. Furthermore, OBE is based on knowledge to be acquired or discovered. In SBCD too explain, teachers will have skills to be mastered and attitudes and values to be formed.

2.7.1.3 Curriculum content

According to Freysen (1991:31) the teacher uses selected learning content to unlock an aspect of reality for the learner. After the teacher has determined which aspect of reality he or she wants to unlock, he or she must determine what content will be representative of the whole. He must also decide how he can present the content as simply as possible to the learner.

Selection and organisation of the content of a curriculum involve criteria other than outcomes, such as validity and significance, and the making of proper distinctions between the various levels of content (Longstreet and Shane 1993:70).

Brady (1990:12) claims that content is sometimes selected because it is necessary to the understanding of something else. Krüger (1980:75) says "geselekteerde en geordende leerinhoud is 'n voorwaarde vir effektiewe onderrig en leer." Geyser (1992:69), in support of Krüger, states that "onderring en leer is ondenkbaar sonder inhoud." Consequently many teachers tend to think in terms of what content students should learn, and of what content is of value to learners, when they begin to plan for curriculum development (Print 1993:107). OBE goes beyond the context beyond the content centred approach since it focuses on the learner-centred design model which addresses outcomes.

Content should meet the following criteria: validity, significance, interest and learning ability (Beane 1990:70). Print (1993:111) goes a step further by including social relevance and utility.
After the learning content reduction a decision must be made as to how to order it. The following principles have become increasingly acceptable as criteria for sequencing content:

- Simple to complex
- Prerequisite learning
- Chronology
- Whole to part learning
- Spiral sequencing.

_SBCD_ is of paramount importance in the _OBE_ framework, in that teachers should always be selective when it comes to the choice of learning content. The teacher should ensure that the learning content to be selected should meet the needs and interests of learners. It should function as a means to facilitate the learner’s achievement of learning outcomes.

This is where Van der Horst and McDonald (1997:14) indicate that in _OBE_ teachers are forced to plan and prepare with a clear instructional purpose in mind. The learning outcomes guide the teacher’s content selection and strategic planning.

The role of the teacher cannot be by-passed by either the administrator or _curriculum_ developer because they have to teach what they selected. A decision about _curriculum development_ could theoretically be made by the Minister of Education, but at the end the teacher’s _involvement_ does not mean that he or she is a teacher of the _curriculum_. Rather, it suggests that _SBCD_ is incomplete without the teacher’s input (Carl 1995:82).

Bhatt (1996:260) says that a satisfactory climate for student participation can be facilitated by democratic administrator-teacher relationships and by means of flexible teaching guides. The teacher has to start at the level on which the learners in the class can think and work co-operatively and move to higher levels, in terms of the maturity level of the group and its growth in the ability to assume greater responsibility.
For *OBE* to become a success, a teacher must therefore be able to prioritise, that is, determine what is most important and what is less important (Van der Horst and McDonald 1997:48).

### 2.7.1.4 Learning opportunities

The question of what is taught focuses on the learning content selected and organized for the purpose of attaining the aims or outcomes of the *curriculum*. The selection of learning content involves singling out and demarcating the content that may contribute meaningfully towards achieving the aims or outcomes (Vermeulen 1997:17). Learning opportunities may be defined as those activities offered to learners in the teaching-learning situation, designed to enable learners to achieve the stated outcomes. This would include all teaching or instructional, strategies as well as those methods by which students may learn by themselves within the classroom (Print 1993:125).

The planning of learning opportunities for someone is viewed as an important teaching skill (Grunnigs 1990:81). Vermeulen (1997:17) shows that the question of how the learning content should be taught requires information regarding the opportunities and activities appropriate for teaching the selected learning content, in order to reach the predetermined outcomes. The teacher creates certain learning opportunities on the basis of his or her knowledge of *curriculum* theory and design (macro-structure), his knowledge of the learners, his or her knowledge of the learning area and the subject structure (micro-structure), as well as on the basis of the aims, objectives and outcomes that are to be pursued (Freysen 1991:33).

Categorising teaching-learning situations in terms of the dominant type of learning opportunity entails the identification of the nature of the learning content which is to be expected. Learning opportunity thus refers to what the teacher does to facilitate learning within the learner. In other words, it simply denotes what is offered to learners and how the teacher imparts content and provides opportunities for learners to acquire that content.
Criteria for selecting learning opportunities are curriculum intentions or outcomes, learner appropriateness, resources and constraints, while the criteria for organising learning opportunities are continuity, sequence and integration.

Brady (1991:04) is of the notion that SBCD is one of the constituents of the school structure because it has a very strong relationship with all the activities that are done to improve the internal school function. There must be relevancy to what other groups are doing in the development of such curriculum, e.g. the values and norms of the community should be taken into account. The roles played by different groups are also relevant in SBCD.

Bush et al. (1993:19) reiterate that teachers are commonly believed to possess a high level of professional autonomy. Equally, they are often held responsible, either collectively or individually, for the events in their classrooms and for the effects of their teaching.

SBCD implies effective teacher involvement, i.e. if other groups are playing a role, the teacher's role is significant because he or she is the one who is constantly in contact with learners. Teachers themselves may well have a set of personal beliefs about the nature of teaching and how they should carry out their work, but in the process of translating these into action, other factors frequently seem to have a powerful effect upon the outcome. If teachers' practice is indeed at least partly determined by the context in which they work, it is imperative for teachers and other curriculum developers to discover the significant features of this context and the process by which their influence is exerted (Shiundu and Omulando 1992:215).

According to Van der Horst and McDonald (1997:92) an effectively managed work-oriented classroom is likely to be orderly and quiet, like a well oiled machine. Learners in work oriented classrooms will be more likely to construct knowledge, and obedience is valued in these classroom. Taking responsibility for one's own learning is valued in the learning-oriented classroom.
A school which operates upon the basis of individual freedom for the teacher, with little or no concerted planning and action, loses its finest opportunity to live democratically and to refine its programme through the pooling of the intelligence of all members of staff. But a school which is alert to its responsibility for meeting the needs of youth is engaged continuously in the process of curriculum reorganization. Every time a teacher utilizes new materials, plans with the learner for new types of learning activities he or she is engaging in curriculum development (Bauer and Saponà 1994:93).

2.7.1.5 Learning experience

Learning experience is characterized by interaction between the learner and the learning content. During this interaction the learner obtains knowledge and practices skills (Vermeulen 1997:17). Freyson (1991:33) claims that learning experiences must be seen as learning opportunities that are utilised by the learners to make the learning content their own. This therefore means that learning experiences are opportunities for the learner to convert the elementals to fundamentals. The accepted premise is that learning experience is a prerequisite to learning (Lumadi 1995:29).

In terms of OBE, the critical cross-field outcomes or specific outcomes guide educators in drawing up learning programmes, teaching or learning experiences (Van der Horst and McDonald 1997:49). This is a good time for students to write about their progress and to share their findings and thoughts with others. According to Bhatt (1996:304) the degree of maturity of the students will determine the activities to be undertaken and the extent to which various areas are to be explored. In selecting learning experiences the teacher and students should examine carefully the suggested activities which relate to the theme of the learning unit.

In a rapidly changing environment educators will have to update their professional and subject content knowledge regularly, so that they continue to develop appropriate and useful learning experience in their learners (Curriculum 2005 1998:13).
2.7.1.6 Evaluation and assessment

Van der Horst and McDonald (1997:169) state that evaluation is the process of making a decision about the learning of the learner, using information gained from formal and informal assessment. They continue to say that evaluation requires that one should make a judgement about learners’ knowledge, learners’ behaviour or performance, or learners’ values or attitudes. Evaluation is the process of determining the extent to which the outcomes and assumptions of the curriculum have actually been achieved. In particular, evaluation reflects upon and provides value judgements concerning the quality and the effectiveness of didactic activities (Vermeulen 1997:17).

Geyser (1992:92) indicates that “die begrip evaluering kan verwys na die bepaling van leerlingprestatie en die toekenning van punte, maar dit kan ook verwys na evaluering van die kurrikulum self.” Lumadi (1995:30) says that evaluation enables us to compare the actual outcomes with the expected outcomes, otherwise it is impossible to know whether objectives or outcomes have been achieved, and if so, to what extent (Suen and Ary 1990:110).

In lesson planning, definite teaching and learning outcomes are set which must be achieved. In order to determine to what extent the outcomes have been achieved, and how successful a lesson has been, assessment must be carried out. Both the learner’s achievement and the teacher’s actions must be assessed throughout the lesson and at its conclusion. (See chapter 6 item 6.2.1.2 paragraph (f).)

Freysen (1991:35) views evaluation as a complex and often subjective activity in which various factors are considered in order to arrive at a qualitative assessment. Various concepts related to evaluation are measuring, testing, examining, norm-referenced and criterion-referenced. Three types of assessment are identified, namely diagnostic, formative and summative evaluation. To avoid confusion, a brief description of each type follows:
(a) **Formative assessment**

Sieborger and Macintosh (1998:24) stress that formative assessment gives information in order to help learners to grow and to make progress. Formative assessment is directed towards determining the degree of mastery during a learning task and to pinpoint that part of the task not mastered (Print, 1993:154). Good examples of this assessment are questions during the lesson, and group work monitored and given feedback on the spot. Formative assessment, also termed continuous or ongoing assessment, helps the teacher to adapt teaching strategies and methods during the lesson time in order to effect greater understanding and learning. Formative assessment therefore has a “teaching” function (Van der Horst and McDonald 1997:171).

(b) **Summative assessment**

Le Grange and Reddy (1998:38) point out that this involves traditional formal testing and is used to provide information about a learner’s knowledge of content at a given time. Van der Horst and McDonald (1997:172) note that summative evaluation is usually conducted at the end of a lesson, a unit or a course. It offers an opportunity for some learners to demonstrate what they have learnt. Summative tests can measure learner outcomes, but are unfortunately often only used to test learner’s recall of knowledge, e.g. mid-year examinations or end of year examinations. Summative evaluation, also termed final assessment, can thus be viewed as a general assessment of the degree to which the larger outcomes have been attained, over the entire course, to indicate progress. In a nutshell, summative assessment is used to report to others about the achievements of a learner (Sieborger and Macintosh (1998:24).

(c) **Diagnostic assessment**

Van der Horst and McDonald (1997:171) show that when diagnostic assessment is used prior to one’s teaching or at the beginning of a lesson, it provides one with planning information. Diagnostic evaluation is directed towards two purposes, or to discover the
underlying cause of deficiencies in student learning, as instruction unfolds (Print 1993:154). Diagnostic evaluation, also termed identification evaluation, diagnoses the nature and extent of possible teaching and learning problems.

In a nutshell, the above types of evaluation mean that teachers make use of decisions before, during and at the end of the course for detailed information (see table 2.12).

**TABLE 2.12. TYPES OF EVALUATION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>FORMATIVE</th>
<th>DIAGNOSTIC</th>
<th>SUMMATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>*At frequent intervals: whether or not preliminary instruction is complete.</td>
<td>*For placement. Before commencing a unit of learning. *During instruction when a learner reveals repeated inability to profit from the learning experiences.</td>
<td>*Generally, at the end of a unit of learning. *More frequently at progressive stages in a course of study (i.e. continuous assessment of developmental stages in learning).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Brady (1992:17)

Bhatt (1996:296) indicates that in planning the method of assessment individually and in groups, each member can evaluate his or her learning habits and thus, more effectively, set for himself or herself a plan to improve his or her ability to use techniques of learning.
SBCD is a continuing and dynamic process wherein support structures such as advisers and specialists are necessary in order to keep the process ongoing. OBE, like SBCD, emphasises that evaluation should take place on an ongoing basis. SBCD should be sustainable and subject to change like other curricula. South African teachers should develop a curriculum that correlates with the recent approach of OBE. Both SBCD and OBE complement each other. The skills, knowledge and values accumulated should always be revisited in order to be up to date.

2.8 SYNTHESIS

In summary, SBCD is a way of decentralising educational control. Here the whole process of development is the responsibility of the teachers, learners, parents and the community. These are the relevant stakeholders who must be involved right from scratch until the implementation stage. In OBE all individual learners must be allowed to learn to their full potential. This means that both teachers and learners must have high expectations for successful learning on the part of all learners regardless of background, provisions, achievement, age, sex, learning style etc (Van der Horst and McDonald 1997:7). If one wants the foregoing issues to be related to SBCD it means that teachers and learners need to work together co-operatively and collaboratively for them to realize the real outcomes that they need to achieve. SBCD can only be successfully carried out when situation analyses and needs assessments have been conducted. The curriculum developer can thus come up with the solutions and a plan of action, strategies that will make training of the school teachers and their principal more closely linked to needs, so that barriers to implementation will be removed. Both SBCD and OBE empower teachers and learners to be responsible for their education.

Chapter 3 will address qualitative research as a strategy to address problems in SBCD.
CHAPTER THREE

QUALITATIVE RESEARCH AS A STRATEGY TO ADDRESS PROBLEMS IN
SCHOOL-BASED CURRICULUM DEVELOPMENT (SBCD)

Aim of chapter 3: Chapter 2 focused on SBCD and OBE while the aim of chapter 3 is to examine qualitative research as a strategy to address problems in SBCD. Qualitative research is preferred in this study because it assesses the quality of findings and it is also concerned with process rather than outcomes.

3.1 THE CONCEPT OF QUALITATIVE RESEARCH

The term qualitative research refers to any kind of research that produces findings not arrived at by means of statistical procedures or other empirical means of quantification. It can also refer to research about persons' lives, stories, behavior, but also about organisational functioning, social movements, or interactional relationships. Some of the data may be quantified, as with census data, but the analysis itself is a qualitative one. Actually, the term qualitative research means different things to different people. Many researchers gather data by means of interview and observation techniques; these are normally associated with qualitative methods (Strauss and Corbin 1990:17).

There is no standard approach among qualitative researchers. For instance, Marshall and Rossman (1990:10) list six different qualitative symbolic interactions. These all share a commitment to naturally occurring data, as each interaction assumes that systematic inquiry must occur in a natural setting, rather than in an artificially constrained one such as an experiment. However, Marshall and Rossman further recognise a wide variation between various approaches. The approaches vary, depending on how intrusive the researcher is required to be in the gathering of data, whether these data document non-verbal or verbal behaviour or both, whether it is appropriate to question the participants as to how they view their worlds, and how the data can be fruitfully and effectively analysed (Marshall and Rossman 1990:11).
Gay (1996:208) states that qualitative research can best be "defined" by describing what it entails, together with its rationale. Qualitative research involves data collection, that is a collection of extensive data on many variables over an extended period of time in a naturalistic setting. Holloway (1997:01) maintains that qualitative research is a form of social inquiry that focuses on the way people interpret and make sense of their experience and the world in which they live. A number of different approaches exist within the wider framework of this type of research, but most of these have the same aim: to understand the social reality of individuals, groups and cultures. Researchers use qualitative approaches to explore the behaviour, perspectives and experiences of the people they study. The basis of qualitative research lies in the interpretative approach to social reality.

Qualitative methods consist of three kinds of data collection: in-depth open-ended interviews, direct observation and written documents including such sources as open-ended written items on questionnaires, personal diaries and programme records. The data from open-ended interviews consists of direct quotations from people about their experiences, day to day activities, opinions, feelings and knowledge. The data from observation consists of detailed descriptions of program activities, participants' behaviour, staff actions and the full range of human interactions that can be part of programme experiences (Patton 1992:07).

Qualitative research relies on observation of interaction and interviews with participants to discover patterns and their meanings. (Compare chapter 4 items 4.1.1-4.1.3). These patterns and meanings form the basis for generalisation. Such patterns and meanings are then tested through further observation and questioning. Approximately ten important aspects of qualitative research can be identified, namely: naturalistic inquiry, inductive analysis, holistic perspective, qualitative data, personal contact and insight, dynamic system, unique case orientation, context sensitivity, empathic neutrality and design flexibility (Gay 1996:41).
Although the researcher will make mention of quantitative research in this study, qualitative research will be preferred because it assesses the quality of things. This is supported by Reaves (1992:16) who propounds that qualitative researchers are primarily concerned with the process rather than mere outcomes of products. The qualitative research in this study focuses on the experience of grade 1 teachers as it is lived and felt in their involvement with SBCD in the Northern Province.

3.2 AN INTRODUCTION TO QUALITATIVE METHODS

Leedy (1993:141) indicates that qualitative research becomes reliable because of its coherence, insight and instrumental quality. Qualitative evaluation data begin as raw, descriptive information about programme and people in programme. The evaluator visits the programme to make firsthand observations of programme activities, sometimes even engaging personally in those activities as a "participant observer." The evaluator talks with participants and staff about their experiences, attitudes, opinions and perceptions. Records and documents are usually also examined. The data from these interviews, observations, and documents are then organised into major themes, categories, and case examples through content analysis.

Dunn, Norton, Stewart, Tudiver and Bass (1994:65) stress that report only aggregate demographic information as ages in ranges. Determining who participated in the study, and who did not, is then only a matter of elimination for those familiar with the research setting. A typical qualitative evaluation report will provide the following:

• detailed description of programme implementation;
• analysis of major program processes;
• description of different types of participants and different kinds of participation;
• descriptions on how the programme has affected participants;
• observed changes (or lack thereof), outcomes, and impacts; and
• analysis of programme strengths and weaknesses as reported by people interviewed (e.g., participants, staff, funders and key informants in the community).
Herbert (1992:134) shows that conventional reporting includes the development of monographs that are available on demand from participants and other interested parties, whether or not peer reviewed publication occurs. Qualitative evaluation data thus may be presented alone or in combination with quantitative data. Recent developments in the evaluation profession have led to an increase in the use of multiple methods, including combinations of qualitative and quantitative data.

Colin (1993:371) identifies types of qualitative analysis. He produced a useful if complex typology of qualitative analyses. A total of twenty-six different kinds of approaches to qualitative research are distinguished and they are reduced to four basic groupings: where interest is in the characteristics of language, the discovery of regularities, the comprehension of the meaning of the text or action and reflection.

Leedy (1993:140) stresses that qualitative methodology should be an alternative to the experimental method. Four major methods used by qualitative researchers are identified: observation, content analysis, interviews, and recording and transcribing. These four methods are often combined. For instance, many case studies combine observation with interviewing. (See chapter 4 item 4.1.2.1). Moreover, each method can be used in either qualitative or quantitative research studies. Refer to Table 3.1 for the overall nature of the research methodology which shapes how each method is utilised effectively.
Methods are ways which take on a specific meaning according to the methodology in which they are used. In qualitative research, small numbers of texts and documents may be analysed for a very different purpose. The aim is to understand the participants’ categories and to see how these are used in concrete activities such as telling stories. Critics argue that researchers employing this method assume that they already know what is important. The reliability of the analysis is less frequently addressed. Instead, qualitative researchers make claims about their ability to reveal the local practices through which given “end-products” are assembled (May 1997:133).

Dooley (1990:07) shows that interviews are peculiar verbal interactional exchanges in which one person (interviewer) attempts to elicit information from another. Interviews are commonly used in both methodologies. Quantitative researchers administer interviews or questionnaires to random samples of the population; this is referred to as “survey research.” “Fixed-choice” questions are usually preferred because the answers they produce lend themselves to simple tabulation, unlike “open-ended” questions which produce answers which need to be subsequently coded.
Both open-ended and close-ended questions will be utilised in this kind of study to establish the extent to which grade I teachers are involved in SBCD. "Authenticity" rather than reliability is often the issue in qualitative research. The aim is usually to gather an "authentic" understanding of people's experiences and it is believed that "open-ended" questions are the most effective route towards this end. So, for instance, in gathering life histories or in interviewing parents of handicapped children, people may simply be asked: "tell me your story." Qualitative interview studies are often conducted with small samples, and the interviewer-interviewee relationship may be defined in political rather than scientific terms (Silverman 1994:10).

Finally, transcripts of audio-recordings are rarely used in quantitative research, probably because of the assumption that they are difficult to quantify. The researcher will not use them because they are inappropriate to his study. Conversely, audio-recordings are an increasingly important part of qualitative research. Transcripts of such recordings, based on standardised conventions, provide an excellent record of "naturally occurring" interaction. Compared to field notes of observational data, transcripts and recordings can offer a reliable record to which researchers return as they develop new hypotheses.

This rather abstract presentation can now be made more concrete by examining a number of qualitative studies using each method. As with any observational study, the aim is to gather first-hand information about social processes in a 'naturally occurring' context. An attempt will be made to interview the grade I teachers concerned because the focus is upon what they actually do in the environment, rather than upon what they think about what they do in SBCD.

In summary, it is worth pointing out that curriculum development must recognise the importance of both process and product. This is the process of developing the curriculum, of the curriculum plan being developed, and of the instructional process to be generated by grade I teachers.
3.2.1 Types of qualitative methods

3.2.1.1 Participant observation

Spindler (1992: 64) indicates that participant observation is frequently possible in traditional anthropological fieldwork. In participant observation the researcher studies an organization or a group by becoming a part of the organization or group. This involvement can either be open or disguised. That is, in some cases, the researcher openly becomes associated with the group for the purpose of studying the group; in other cases the researcher hides the true reasons for involvement. Sometimes, the person doing the research is already a member of the group, as the researcher would be if he or she were to study the organisation for which he or she works. (See chapter 4 paragraph 4.1.3).

The choice of whether to select open or disguised participation depends upon the situation. Ethically, it may seem better to make it clear to group members who a researcher is and what the researcher is doing. This approach certainly makes it easier to take notes and ask questions. There is no need to concoct a cover study that seemingly explains a researcher's desire to be part of the group. Group members may be more willing to co-operate with the researcher and explain group interactions if they know that one is a researcher. Sometimes there is no choice except to be open about what the researcher is doing.

Bogdewic (1992:55) stresses that observation is the more passive dimension of the participants' observer role. By definition, being a participant denotes some form of active involvement. Doing observational research covertly, however, has some drawbacks. From an ethical point of view, the researcher's participation may be uncomfortable. Furthermore, once the researcher has been accepted as a bona fide member of the group, he or she may change the interaction of the group by his or her own interactions with it. For example, suppose that employees of the firm the researcher has joined for covert research purposes want to form a union to act in their interest. If the researcher's position has placed him at the executive level, as a company employee, he should pass on this
information to the top executives, who will probably do everything in their power to squash the unionisation attempt. If the researcher is at the clerical level, he or she may be asked to provide leadership or at least support for the union drive. Either way, the researcher will be under pressure to be more than a passive observer.

Ethically, the researcher can find himself or herself in difficulty whether he or she enters into an observational research situation overtly or covertly. Let us say that one is studying about a high failure rate for grade 1 learners in the Northern Province. To level criticisms against grade 1 teachers as those responsible for the high failure rate in the Northern Province is a serious allegation.

There is no better way than participant observation to become sensitised to a particular social group or social process. By becoming part of the group, the researcher learns to see the world from the perspective of the group. Actions taken by group members that would seem puzzling or illogical from an outside perspective could make sense when viewed from the special perspective of the group. Observation by participants requires prolonged periods of intensive social interaction between the researcher and subject and can take more than a year to complete (Zyzanski, McWhinney, Blake, Miller and Crabtree 1992:234).

This method is viable because the researcher would be involved in SBCD with grade 1 teachers. The grade 1 learners for whom the curriculum is intended are a prime consideration in the process of curriculum design and development. The principle of individualisation is warranted because learners are unique as individuals. It is the various areas of intelligence quotients that call for a suitable approach to developing the curriculum, as well as to actual implementation once a curriculum is operationalized. This can be detected once a researcher becomes an active participant.
3.2.1.2 Case Studies

Miller and Crabtree (1992:05) indicate that case studies examine most or all of the potential aspects of a particular distinctly bounded unit or case. The term case study is often used as a synonym for participant observation. Case study analysis involves an effort to use qualitative research to identify the processes that lead to one type of outcome. In social science jargon, participant observation studies examine many separate independent and many dependent variables. Case study analysis generally involves one dependent variable but many independent variables. In an investigation of the grade 1s' high failure rate, for example, a participant observation study would involve efforts to understand the culture of teaching and learning in the context. Who is involved? How are they involved? Which part do they play in their involvement? Do grade 1 teachers socialise with their learners? Do they create a relaxed atmosphere in their classrooms? Are they not monsters in the teaching-learning situation? In contrast, in a case study, the researcher might try to answer one specific question, such as how grade 1 teachers are involved in SBCD in the Northern Province.

The involvement of the grade 1 teachers is thus a dependent variable. Independent variables might include the culture of teaching and learning in that particular year, the amount of effort department officials expend in restoring the tarnished culture of teaching and learning and so forth. Long-term participant observation studies often contain individual case studies, meant to answer specific questions. In applied research, the same programme may be observed in many different locations in order to find out if there is a common underlying cause for the problems with the programme. Sometimes a team of applied researchers will visit several locations, and observe and talk to, people operating programme at these locations; these trips are called site visits (May 1997:133).

Leedy (1993:186) shows that a case study lies midway between the descriptive and survey method and the experimental method. Case studies become particularly useful where one needs to understand some particular problems or situation in great depth, and where one can identify cases rich in information - rich in the sense that a great deal can be learned from a few examples of the phenomenon in question. For example, a great
deal can often be learned about how to improve an instructional program by studying select dropouts, failures or successes.

Case studies are particularly valuable when the evaluation aims to capture individuals’ differences or unique variations from one programme setting to another, or from one program experience to another. A case could be a person, an event, a programme, a time period, a critical incident or a community. Regardless of the unit of analysis, a qualitative case study seeks to describe that unit in depth, in detail, in context, and holistically. Case study design, because of its flexibility and adaptability to a range of contexts, provides some of the most useful methods available in educational research. Case study allows the researcher to contribute to the development of research based knowledge. More data regarding case studies will be provided at a later stage. Data sources that may be used in a case study approach are usually of various types:

* interviews of various people or participants in the setting who are involved in the phenomenon of study;
* documents such as minutes of meetings, newspaper accounts, and observations of the phenomenon in action.

The more a programme aims at individualised outcomes, the greater the appropriateness of qualitative case methods. The more a programme emphasises common outcomes for all participants, the greater may be the appropriateness of standardised quantitative measures of performance and change (Jennett 1994:104). A case study is more appropriate in SBCD. In a school setup, the rate of absorption in grade 1 learners is grossly affected by individual differences in mental ability; learners in one area, e.g. Northern Province, may be disadvantaged because of earlier environmental deprivation, and as a result may not be as quick in grasping learning materials as those whose environment prior to, and during, school attendance was more favourable. Creation of a conducive learning atmosphere helps deprived grade 1 learners to improve in their day to day academic activities.
3.2.1.3 Focused Interviews

According to May (1997:112) a focused interview is a way of gathering qualitative data by asking respondents specific questions concerning social processes or behaviours of interest. This research tool may be employed as part of a participant observation study, as part of a case study, or by itself. Unlike a structured or semi-structured interview, in which respondents must answer closed-ended questions by choosing one of several predetermined responses, a focused interview is an open-ended approach. That is, the respondent is free to answer the questions in his or her own words, either briefly or at length, but more importantly the respondent should think reflectively. (Compare chapter 4 item 4.1.1).

A focused interview is much freer in form than any survey interview. Although the researcher will have worked out in advance the particular topics that will be raised in the questions, the questions themselves are not written down in a formal questionnaire. For any particular social issue being researched, the topics covered in a focused interview may vary from person to person and from interview to interview (Spindler 1992:80).

It is through these focused interviews that the researcher was able to examine and note stumbling blocks prevalent in various schools in Northern Province. These are stumbling blocks which make change in positive directions rather difficult; the purpose was that grade 1 teachers could understand how these stumbling blocks originate as well as how they could be dealt with accordingly. Grade 1 teachers have to promote democratic values through curricula that will develop in the learners the attitude of mind and value systems that are conducive to the maintenance of democracy.
Table 3.2. Basic forms of qualitative research

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Degree of focus</th>
<th>Degree of involvement by the researcher</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Participant observation</strong></td>
<td>Broad-based effort to understand the lifestyle of a group or general workings of an organisation.</td>
<td>Closely involved with members of the group or organisation, ranging from passively observing to actively participating in group activities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Case study</strong></td>
<td>Focused effort to understand the causes of a specific problem.</td>
<td>Some involvement with members of the group or organisation, but participation is usually less active.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Focused interview</strong></td>
<td>Narrow focus on the perspective of a single individual, on a narrowly defined problem area.</td>
<td>Limited involvement with members of the group or organisation, normally on a one-to-one basis.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Silverman (1992:18)

Table 3.2 sums up the characteristics of the three basic forms of qualitative research: participant observation, case studies, and focused interviews. Depending on the problem to be researched and the amount of time and money available, all three forms may be employed, or only focused interviews may be possible.

3.2.2 Research methodology in qualitative research

Qualitative data analysis requires organisation of information and data reduction. Data analysis in qualitative research is a process of categorisation, description and synthesis. Qualitative research is very researcher-dependent, for example, it has been said that for data collection the researcher is the instrument. This means that while data collection is ongoing, and during the entire research process for that matter, the researcher makes
decisions about what data to collect, who to interview, where and when to interview, and so on. Interviews and observation inventories are less structured and standardised than with quantitative research, so the researcher’s perspectives are highly influential in qualitative research (Tuckman 1994:373).

Qualitative research has the natural setting as the direct source of data, and the researcher is the key instrument. Researchers enter and spend considerable time in schools, neighbourhoods and other local learning sites. Although some researchers use videotape equipment and recording devices, many go completely unarmed, save for a pad and a pencil. Even when equipment is used however, the data are collected on the premises and supplemented by the understanding that is gained by being on location. Qualitative researchers, unlike quantitative researchers, go to particular settings because they are concerned with context. They know that action can best be understood when it is observed in the setting in which it occurs (Biklen 1992:29).

Qualitative research is descriptive because the data collected are in the form of words or pictures rather than numbers. The written results of the research contain direct quotations from the data to illustrate and substantiate the argument. The data include interview transcripts, field notes, photographs, videotapes, personal documents, memoranda and other official records which might be appropriate. The qualitative research approach demands that the world be approached with the assumption that nothing is trivial, that everything has the potential of being a clue that might unlock a more comprehensive understanding of what is being studied (Biklen 1992:29).

Holloway (1997:01) maintains that researchers focus on the everyday life of people in natural settings. The data have primacy; the theoretical framework is not predetermined but derives directly from the data. Qualitative research is thus context bound. This means that the researchers have to be sensitive to the context of the research and must immerse themselves in the setting and situation. Something which is very fascinating, is that qualitative researchers describe in detail: they analyse and interpret; they use thick
description. The relationship between the researcher and the researched is close and is based on a position of equality as human beings.

It is evident from the foregoing discussion that qualitative research is both descriptive and inductive. The researcher chose the qualitative paradigm because of being an inductive research that commences with data collection, empirical observation and builds theoretical categories from relationships discovered among data.

3.2.3 Themes in qualitative methods

3.2.3.1 Making decisions about method

Stewart (1992:15-17) shows that data collection methods require careful selection. Informed choices regarding which information collection tools to adopt, given the research question posed, are vital to the success of any research project. The chosen measurement tools are the bricks, mortar and lathe of the completed research project.

The selection of data collection options and strategies for any particular evaluation depends on answers to several questions:

* Who is the information for and who will use the findings of the evaluation?
* What kind of information is needed?
* How is the information to be used? For what purposes is evaluation being done?
* When is the information needed?
* What resources are available to conduct the evaluation?

In this study, the researcher will thus phrase questions of this kind in the context of grade 1 teacher involvement in SBCD.

Howie (1991:13-15) stresses that the data required to study the questions must be accessible. Questions should be relevant, based upon needs, experience and past research. Answers to these questions will determine the kinds of data that are appropriate in a particular evaluation. The challenge in evaluation is getting the best possible information
to the people who need it - and then getting those people to actually use the information in decision-making.

3.2.3.2 Naturalistic inquiry

Denzin and Lincoln state that qualitative research is multi-method in focus, involving an interpretive, naturalistic approach to its subject matter. This shows that qualitative designs are naturalistic to the extent that the researcher does not attempt to manipulate the programme or its participants for purposes of the evaluation. Evaluations engaged in naturalistic inquiry study are naturally occurring activities and processes, e.g. grade 1 classroom activity in progress. These activities are natural in the sense that they are not planned and manipulated by the evaluator as would be the case reflected in figure 3.1. The researcher should collect and interpret data. An explanation which follows the analysed data gives the researcher an extensive naturalistic inquiry. This approach is particularly useful for studying variations in programme implementation (Patton 1992:13).
Schensul and Schensul (1992:162) show that before considering the strengths and weaknesses of qualitative methods, it is useful to place the decision to gather qualitative data within the larger context of evaluation decision in general. What happens in a programme often varies over time as participants and conditions change. Programme that are implemented in numerous locations will manifest important differences from site to site. The nature of these variations cannot be fully predicted or anticipated.
By capturing whatever happens to occur spontaneously, a naturalistic inquiry is open and sensitive to deviations from plans, unanticipated variations, and important idiosyncrasies of program experience.

Qualitative data can, for instance, be collected in experimental designs where participants have been randomly divided into treatment and control groups. Likewise, some quantitative data may be collected in naturalistic inquiry approaches. Nevertheless, experimental designs predominantly aim for statistical analyses of quantitative data, while qualitative data are the primary focus in naturalistic inquiry. Appropriate data analysis techniques are fundamental to quality work. A careful descriptive review of all collected data is wise as a first step. Then, depending upon the selected research questions, either quantitative and or qualitative analyses may be appropriate (Tudiver and Ferris 1992: 159-162).

Bryman (1990:61) characterises qualitative research according to six criteria. These criteria are set out in Table 3.3.

Table 3.3 Qualitative research: its first version

| • Taking the subject’s perspective |
| • Describing the mundane detail of daily settings |
| • Comprehending actions and meaning in their social context |
| • Emphasis on time and process |
| • Open and relatively unstructured research designs |
| • Avoiding concepts and theories at an early stage |

Adapted from Bryman (1990: 61 – 69)

However, Bryman’s (1990:61) characterisation of qualitative research runs up against the difficulty of over-generalising a variety of different theoretical and research orientations. This means that there are difficulties with some of his criteria. Criterion 1 involves a “subjective” perspective which derives from an analysis of the perspective of the
conceptual framework of those studied. This can involve a failure to analyse objectively, and ignores practices rather than perceptions. As Bryman asserts: "there can be little doubt that the commitment to explicating the subject's interpretation of social reality is a sine qua non of qualitative research."

Similarly, criteria 5 and 6 may be out of tune with the greater sophistication of contemporary field research design, born out of accumulated knowledge of interaction and greater concern with issues of validity and reliability. Hammersley (1990:1-2) offers a definition of ethnography rather than "qualitative research." Nonetheless, it shares some properties in common with Bryman's (1990:61-69). See Table 3.4. Once again, the criteria used in Table 3.4 are problematic, as follows:

Table 3.4 Qualitative research: second version

| • The daily contexts' use instead of experimental situation |
| • Data collection: range of sources |
| • Unstructured data collection preferences |
| • A concern with the 'micro' features of social life |
| • An interest on the meaning and function of social action |
| • The supposition that quantification plays a subordinate role |

Adapted from Hammersley and Atkinson (1990:1-2)

The following criteria are elaborated on by Hammersley and Atkinson (1990:1)

Criterion 1
Most non-ethnographic research does not only use experimental research designs.

Criterion 2
Non-ethnographic research also uses a range of sources. Audio-and video-tapes, as well as official documents, are also used as sources of non-ethnographic data.
Criterion 3
This may have been true in the past, but increasingly ethnography begins with prior hypotheses and or prior definitions.

Criterion 4
This is generally true but qualitative research is increasingly comparative.

Criterion 5
"Meaning" is a term which is contested amongst different field researchers. However, "function" should be central to the analysis of actions.

Criterion 6
This is generally true but there is an increasing use of tabulations in field research. This leaves us with very little that is non-problematic from Table 3.4.
Table 3.5 Qualitative research: third version

- A preference for qualitative data—use of words rather than numbers. However, in principle, there is no reason to prefer any form of data: We are not faced, then, with a stark choice between words and numbers, or even between precise and imprecise data; but rather with a range from more to less precise data. Furthermore, our decisions about what level of precision is appropriate in relation to any particular claim should depend on the nature of what we are trying to describe, on the likely accuracy of our descriptions, on our purposes, and on the resources available to us; not on ideological commitment to one methodological paradigm or another, (Hammersley 1992:163).

- A preference for naturally-occurring data—observation rather than experiment, unstructured versus structured interviews. However, this fails because, even observation can affect a setting, while choosing “a natural setting can be unrepresentative because it differs in important ways from cases in that category.” Also no research is untouched by human hands.

- A preference for meanings rather than behaviour—attempting to document the world from the point of view of the people studied. However, as Hammersley (1992:164) rightly points out, this is a copout since respondents can do this for themselves; ultimately, the social scientist must analyse rather than simply let the participants speak for themselves.

- A rejection of natural science as a model. However, there are many different kinds of natural science (from e.g. botany to theoretical physics). Also qualitative research has a very problematic status if it totally fails to address the validity of its findings or reduces validity to participants’ agreement with a set of findings.

- A preference for inductive, hypothesis-generating research rather than hypothesis-testing. However, hypotheses must at some point be tested, otherwise we are limited to mere speculation. As Hammersley (1992:160) writes: “which of these approaches is most appropriate should depend on our purposes, and the stage that our research has reached, not on paradigmatic commitments.”

Source: adapted from Hammersley 1992: 160-172

Ultimately, Hammersley (1992:182) finds no grounds for distinguishing a separate basis for ethnographic research which would differentiate it from other social science
approaches. Instead, he argues that: “the process of inquiry in science is the same whatever method is used, and the retreat into paradigms effectively stultifies debate and hampers progress.” The following table describes ethnographic research as a social sciences approach.

Table 3.6: Qualitative research: fourth version

| ♦ Preference of natural settings as the primary source of data. |
| ♦ Fidelity to the phenomena under study – this requires a cultural description of the meaning of phenomena to participants. |
| ♦ The use of an inductivist methodology which avoids the premature testing of hypotheses. |

Adapted from Hammersley and Atkinson (1990:69)

The version set out in Table 3.6 depends upon a preference for “naturalism” which presents the following problems:

- “Artificial” and “natural” settings are both “part of society” (11); no data or its analysis is ever asocial or untouched by human hands.

- Drawing data from “natural” settings is no guarantee that one’s findings are valid in other settings or in the similar settings.

- “Naturalism” limits social research to cultural description, allowing no claims to validity other than understanding people’s experiences (Hammersley and Atkinson 1990:69).

Dunn et al. (1994:59) indicate that qualitative research results may be so direct, so on target, that those who have participated may have nowhere to hide. The nature of qualitative research and the fact that its data are collected, stored, and retrieved as descriptive text, lulls the researcher into a false expectation that, after months of recording, reporting will be easy.
Qualitative content analysis is a complex process. It starts with the idea of process, or social context, and views the author as a self-conscious actor addressing an audience under particular circumstances. The task of the analyst becomes a “reading” of the text in terms of its symbols. With this in mind, the text is approached through understanding the context of its production by the analyst themselves. This may be derived either through the use of secondary sources or, as in the above example, other methods such as observational studies. In the process, the researcher picks out what is relevant for analysis and pieces it together to create tendencies, sequences, patterns and orders. The process of deconstruction, interpretation, and reconstruction breaks down many of the assumptions dear to quantitative analysts (Erickson 1992: 54).

According to LeCompte, Milroy and Preissle (1992:04), to claim competence in qualitative research is, at most, to claim general familiarity with what is currently being done, coupled with experience in one or two particular facets. The flexibility of this method, as with participant observation, is regarded as a prime advantage. It enables the researcher to consider not only the ways in which meaning is constructed, but also the ways in which new meanings are developed and employed. Thus, such a study provides us with detailed insight into the relationship between the media used and the cultural construction of environmental issues. In the process, theory is generated, modified and tested, moving from the particulars of the document to a general understanding of its context and ways of representing the social world.

There are two primary approaches to the systematic direct observation of behaviour. These two approaches can be categorised roughly into a qualitative and a quantitative approach. They can be mutually complementary and not mutually exclusive. The quantitative approach, sometimes described as a positivistic approach, contains a number of strengths and weaknesses. The main advantages are its objectivity and replicability. When properly conducted, the results of a quantitative observational study are independent of the observer; in other words, different observers following similar procedures should report similar results. This makes the results more credible to an
external audience. The main disadvantage of this approach is that when a complex
behavioural phenomenon is reduced to a few quantifiable variables, the phenomenon can
be overly simplified. Qualitative research becomes believable because of its coherence,
insight and instrumental utility (Leedy 1993:141).

Fine and Grant (1992:430) maintain that in research, qualitative approaches are often
viewed as a vehicle to generate hypotheses and to identify problems for later positivistic
research. Alternatively, qualitative methods are employed after a basic science study has
been conducted; at this latter stage they are used to identify appropriate strategies for
disseminating the results of basic science research in the community. Countering this
“handmaiden” role in primary research, the researcher believes that qualitative methods
are also relevant in their own right. They are a useful method for interpreting the response
of persons and communities to critical events, and identifying the social-cultural
meanings of these “events-that-happen” by casting problems, purposes, and intentions in
a new light.

In short, qualitative studies enable investigators to examine and explain problems and
events from the perspective of the actor, experiences, understanding, and interpretations
of events and “events-that-happen.” The non-directive methods of participant
observation, semi-structured interviews, and focus groups are commonly used by means
of uncovering these understandings. Qualitative research does not pretend to be
explorable. In *Curriculum Studies*, there is often an interplay between qualitative research
observations and the development and refinement of the hypotheses, and consequently
the categories, to be used in the analysis. The categories for coding the data are often
developed during and after the data collection phases, and this is therefore an inductive

The preference for hypothesis generation rather than hypothesis testing should not be
assigned too rigorously, as otherwise qualitative research will be restricted to speculation,
and at some stage hypotheses will require testing. Because of the interplay between the
stages of qualitative research, and the tendency towards grounded theory, the design,
methods and analysis of each qualitative method will be elaborated on. In view of the above discussion the researcher will attempt to show that involvement by grade 1 teachers is a precondition of responsiveness in curriculum development. It is a process that requires responsibility and demonstration. A fixed curriculum, the output of unresponsive curriculum development, requires minimal complex involvement. It does not require democratic decision-making processes, and operates chiefly by directive coercion rather than by group inquiry. Rigidity in SBCD may be particularly detrimental to unsuccessful learners.

3.2.3.3 Skills required in conducting qualitative research

Wolcott (1990:32) stresses that one way to assemble data is to begin with a set of general questions. What do people in the setting have to know? How are skills and attitudes transmitted and acquired, particularly in the absence of intentional efforts at instructions? The requisite skills for doing qualitative research are to step back and: have refined questions, a sampling design; to critically analyze situations, to recognise and avoid bias, to collect and analyse data, and to manage data. This is strengthened by figure 3.2 which shows that to obtain valid and reliable data the researcher has to think abstractly. To do this, a qualitative researcher requires theoretical and social sensitivity, the ability to maintain analytical distance while at the same time drawing upon past experience, and theoretical knowledge to interpret what is seen, astute powers of observation, and good interactional skills.
3.2.3.4 The rationale for conducting qualitative research

According to Marshall and Rossman (1990:145) qualitative study aims at exploring a problem. A process or a pattern of interaction will be its validity. There are many valid reasons for doing qualitative research. One reason is the nature of the research problem. Some areas of study naturally lend themselves more to qualitative types of research, for instance, research that attempts to uncover the nature of persons' experiences with a phenomenon, such as politics, religious conversion, or addiction. Qualitative methods can be used to uncover and understand what lies behind any phenomenon about which little is yet known. It can be used to gain novel and fresh slants on things about which quite a bit is already known. Also, qualitative methods can uncover the intricate details of phenomena that are difficult to convey with quantitative methods.
3.2.3.5 Who qualifies for conducting qualitative research?

Deyhl, Hess and LeCompte et al. (1992: 27) are of the notion that qualitative researchers in education have never agreed among themselves about whether to make more of the differences among their approaches, or to emphasise their commonality, in order to effect a common front. Qualitative research is done by researchers in the social and behavioural sciences, as well as by practitioners in fields that concern themselves with issues related to human behaviour and functioning. This style of research can be used to study organizations, groups, and individuals. It can be carried out by research teams or by persons acting in pairs, or alone. When qualitative methods are combined with qualitative ones, the qualitative aspect is usually subsidiary to the larger research project and is likely to be carried out by individuals or a small team of specialists.

3.2.3.6 The essential elements of qualitative research

Dunn et al. (1994:121) show that qualitative studies require long and intense data collection that demands time and invades the privacy of workers. Basically, there are three major components, namely data, analytical and verbal reports. Data can come from various sources. Interviews and observations are the most common sources. They are used to arrive at findings or theories. These procedures include techniques for conceptualising data. This process, called "coding", varies with the training, experience, and purpose of the researcher.

Written and verbal reports make up the third component of qualitative research. These may be presented in scientific journals or conferences and take various forms depending upon the audience and the aspect of the findings or theory being presented. For instance, someone may present either an overview of the entire findings or an in-depth discussion of one part of the study.

Often when describing qualitative research, types, purposes, and approaches to analysis become confused and mixed up in the description. Some of the different types of
qualitative research are grounded theory, ethnography, the phenomenological approach, life histories, and conversational analysis. These types can be and are used by researchers of different disciplines. Educators, anthropologists and sociologists may use ethnography to study a problem related to their discipline, just as they could use grounded theory. Qualitative research should respond to concerns that the natural subjectivity of the researcher will shape the research (Marshall and Rossman 1990:147).

One of the major controversies and questions concerning qualitative research pertains to the question of approach. Or, how much interpretation should be there of data? Some researchers believe that, per se; but, rather, the researcher’s task is to gather the data and present them in such a manner that “the informants speak for themselves.” The aim is to give an honest account with little or no interpretation of – interference with – those spoken words or of the observations made by the researcher. Other qualitative researchers are concerned with accurate description, when doing their analysis and presenting their findings.

3.2.3.7 Inductive analysis

Qualitative methods are particularly oriented toward exploration, discovery and inductive logic. An evaluation approach is inductive to the extent that the evaluator attempts to make sense of the situation without imposing pre-existing expectations on the programme setting. Inductive designs begin with specific observations and build toward general patterns. Qualitative analysis is guided not by hypotheses but by questions about issues and a search for patterns (Patton 1992:15).

3.2.3.8 A holistic perspective

Suen and Ary (1990:7) are of the notion that without qualitative exploratory observations, qualitative methods may lead only to superficial results that could be only tangential to the phenomenon under observation. Evaluators using qualitative methods strive to understand programmes and situations as a whole. The evaluator searches for the totality
of the unifying nature of particular settings. The holistic approach assumes that the whole is greater than the sum of its parts. It also assumes that a description and understanding of a programme's social and political context is essential for overall understanding of the programme. In summary, the significance of qualitative research is emphasised in this thesis. Qualitative research addresses the context as well as the problems experienced by the people involved. In this case it refers to grade 1 teachers and the problem experienced in SBCD.

3.3 CHARACTERISTICS AND OUTCOMES OF QUALITATIVE RESEARCH

Different types of qualitative research have common characteristics and use similar procedures, though differences in data collection and analysis do exist. The following elements are part of most, though not all, qualitative approaches.

The data have primacy; the theoretical framework is not predetermined but derives directly from the data. Qualitative research further focuses on the emic perspective; the view of the people involved in the research and their perspectives; meanings and interpretations. The research also describes in detail; it analyses, interprets and it uses thick description. The relationship between the researcher and the researched is close and based on a position of equality as human beings. Data collection and data analysis generally proceed together and interact. Qualitative research is not static but develops mentally and is dynamic in character; the focus is on process as well as outcomes (Deyhl et al. 1992:610).

Qualitative research is context-specific, with the researcher's role being one of inclusion in the situation. As Wiersma (1991:14) indicates, qualitative research is based on the notion of context sensitivity, the belief that the particular physical and social environment has a great bearing on human behaviour. Qualitative researchers emphasise a holistic interpretation. Tuckman (1994:336) identifies various features of qualitative research.
Qualitative research has a natural setting as the direct source of data and the researchers as the key instruments. Researchers enter and spend considerable time in schools, families, neighbourhoods and other locations learning about educational concerns. Although some researchers use videotape equipment and recording devices, many go completely unarmed except for a pad and a pencil. Even when equipment is used, however the data are collected on the premises and supplemented by the understanding that is gained by being on location (Tuckman 1994:336).

Miller and Crabtree (1992:13) are of the opinion that qualitative research is descriptive. The data collected are in the form of words or pictures rather than numbers. The written results of the research contain quotations from the data to illustrate and substantiate the presentation. Qualitative articles and reports have been described by some scholars as "anecdotal." This is because they often contain quotations and try to describe what a particular situation or view of the world is like in narrative form. The written word is very important in the qualitative approach, both in recording data and discriminating amongst the findings.

The qualitative research approach demands that the world be approached with the assumption that nothing is trivial, that everything has the potential of being a clue that might unlock a more comprehensive understanding of what is being studied. Qualitative researchers are concerned with the process rather than simply with outcomes or products. How do people negotiate meaning? How do certain terms and labels come to be applied? In this study, the qualitative emphasis on process will be particularly beneficial in educational research, in clarifying the self-fulfilling prophecy code that learners' cognitive performance in schools is affected by grade 1 teachers' expectations of them. Qualitative research thus involves assessing the quality of things (Reaves 1992:16).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 3.7 CHARACTERISTICS OF QUALITATIVE AND QUANTITATIVE RESEARCH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>QUALITATIVE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terms/Phrases Associated with the Approach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- ethnographic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-fieldwork</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sort data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-symbolic interaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-inner perspective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-naturalistic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ethnomethodological</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-descriptive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Key Concepts Associated with the Approaches</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-common-sense understanding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understanding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bracketing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-definition of situation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-everyday life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Theoretical Affiliation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-symbolic interaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ethnomethodology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-phenomenology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Academic Affiliation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sociology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-history</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Goals</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-develop sensitising concept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-describe multiple realities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Design</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-evolving flexible, general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-describe multiple realities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Written Research Proposals</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-brief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-speculative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-suggests area research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>may be relevant to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-often written after some data have been collected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Data</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-descriptive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-personal documents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-field notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

182
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Techniques or Methods</th>
<th>Sample</th>
<th>Relationship with Subjects</th>
<th>Instruments and Tools</th>
<th>Data Analysis</th>
<th>Problems in Using the Approach</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-observation</td>
<td>-theoretical sampling</td>
<td>-empathy</td>
<td>-transcriber</td>
<td>-ongoing</td>
<td>-time consuming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-reviewing various documents</td>
<td>-participant observation</td>
<td>-intense contact</td>
<td>(the researcher is often the only instrument)</td>
<td>-analytic inducted themes, concepts, models, inductive method</td>
<td>-data reduction difficult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and artifacts</td>
<td>-open-ended interviewing</td>
<td>-subject as friend</td>
<td>-inventories</td>
<td></td>
<td>-reliability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-stay detached</td>
<td>-questionnaires</td>
<td>-deductive</td>
<td>-controlling other variables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-indexes</td>
<td>-occurs at conclusion of data collection</td>
<td>-obstructiveness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-validity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hammersley (1992:3)
3.4 QUALITIES OF QUALITATIVE RESEARCH

3.4.1 Layered truth

Leedy (1993:116) views data as extremely ephemeral. Researchers should recognise therefore that even the most reliable, most refined, most carefully controlled data may have a very elusive quality about them. Data are volatile, they evaporate quickly. In qualitative research, truth is always layered. That is, there are multiple interpretations of any given social phenomenon. No matter how exhaustively the subject is studied, no single common truth may emerge. In other words, one’s view of reality and someone else’s view of reality never precisely coincide. To make matters more perplexing, no one else’s view of reality will be exactly the same because things are viewed from different paradigms.

3.4.2 Sensitisation

The noun sensitisation is derived from the verb sensitise, which means to make sensitive or to require tactful treatment (Thompson 1996:829). The process of sensitisation helps the qualitative researcher recognise that things are not always what they appear to be. Which perspective is the truth? Both are; they are different layers of the overall truth of the situation. To reflect either one because of internal contradictions would be to dismiss important qualitative data that could aid in understanding the social issues involved.

When truth is seen as being layered, many alternate explanations of a social process must be accepted, depending upon the viewpoint of the respondent. This complicates the search for the mechanisms that explain the social process, but helps to emphasize the complexity of social behaviour. Thus, there is less chance that a phenomenon will be oversimplified in explanation. The explanations found tend to be those given by the subjects who are being studied. As a result, the views of the subjects of qualitative research rather than the ultimate users’ view are emphasised; in survey and experimental research it is often the other way round. In fact, theoretically guided research may be used to test an existing theory (Woods 1992:382).

Finally, it should be noted that the explanations obtained through qualitative research emphasise the respondents’ subjective views of their own behaviour rather than the objective view that an outsider might use in coding that behaviour. Although objective
coding might reveal hidden motivations for behaviour, if respondents actually believe that their subjective views represent the truth, such reasoning cannot be lightly dismissed. The researcher needs to be aware of the potential constraints that groups can place on individual’s responses, and if resources allow one can obtain information in individual interviews (Kuzel 1992:36).

3.4.3 Flexibility

According to Zyzanski et al. (1992:32) qualitative research designs are best characterised as unique and flexible. They are evolving constantly throughout the research process. One concurrently frames and reframes not only the research question, but the analysis, and the theory construction. In fact, it is clear that this flexibility maximises the likelihood of gathering data rich in details.

In many ways, qualitative research is far less structured than other forms of applied research. For example, in an experiment, a predetermined hypothesis is tested. Variables are controlled as closely as possible; a narrow focus is maintained. In survey research, the questionnaire is meticulously developed and standardised; again, a tight structure is required. In contrast, qualitative research often begins with a much broader intent. The aim is to first get an overview of the situation. Specific and detailed research hypotheses are not formulated. In applied research, this approach is termed formative evaluation. Formative evaluation is especially advantageous when researching complicated and poorly understood problems. During instruction, grade I teachers have to carry out their own formative evaluation of the teaching process to guide them through their systematic planning for the teaching learning process (Jansen and Peshkin 1992:703).

Erickson (1992:208) shows that despite the limit on the researcher’s information processing capacity, observation and reflection enables the researcher to develop an interpretive model for the organization of the event. Because of the lack of a detailed, preliminary structure imposed during qualitative research, it is possible to reformulate hypotheses in the midst of a project. As new evidence is brought forth and new relationships seen, qualitative social research can refocus the research and concentrate upon newly discovered important problems. Such flexibility is simply not possible in other forms of research, such as survey research, where a detailed and rigid instrument must be prepared in advance. The researcher in this study will be flexible in order to avoid finding himself in a chaotic situation with grade I teachers.
3.4.4 The Total Process

Most data-gathering techniques focus upon one or two narrowly defined cadence. A survey only obtains answers to the specific questions asked; an experimental researcher manipulates two or three variables at most. In contrast, the qualitative researcher attempts to understand how different factors in the environment interact to create observed outcomes. It is the interdependence of different people and their actions that are observed. In observing the total process, the complexity of human interactions is stressed rather than its simplicity. But sometimes an understanding of such complexity is precisely what is needed to determine effective actions. Through observations and in-depth interviews, such complexity can be discovered. In-depth qualitative interviewing with a large number of people is both expensive and time consuming and these considerations frequently dictate the methods employed (May 1997: 129).

Kincheloe (1991:145), in support of the above discussions, mentions that qualitative research endeavours to represent human experience with the necessary empathy towards the people who have experienced it. Renewal in the process of democracy, whether applied to SBCD or government, depends on people working together; it depends entirely on commitment and involvement, not pseudoparticipation.

3.5 ESSENTIAL ASPECTS IN QUALITATIVE RESEARCH

3.5.1 The literature in qualitative research

Creswell (1994:145) maintains that “in qualitative research the literature should be used in a manner consistent with the methodological assumptions; namely it should be used inductively so that it does not direct the questions asked by the researcher. One of the chief reasons for conducting a qualitative study is that the study is exploratory not much has been written about the topic or population being studied and the researcher seeks to listen to informants and to build a picture based on their ideas”.
3.5.2 Problems of qualitative research

(a) The concept is "immature" due to a conspicuous lack of theory and previous research.
(b) A need exists to explore and describe the phenomena and to develop theory.
(c) The nature of the phenomenon may not be suited to qualitative measures.
(d) It could be that the available theory may be inaccurate inappropriate, incorrect, or biased. Any form of bias on the part of the researcher influences results negatively (Lumadi 1995:33).

Before one gets a discussion of the actual methods and procedures used in doing qualitative research, one must consider some of the basic difficulties associated with this approach. Some of these problems have to do with the way the qualitative research is perceived by policy makers; other problems arise from the nature of qualitative research itself (Norton, Dunn, Bain, Birtwhistle, Davis, Herbert, Lemelin, Meslin, Talbot and Woods 1994:100).

3.5.2.1 Misperception of difficulty level

There is a danger in this kind of thinking - both for the applied social researcher and the decision-maker. Qualitative research properly carried out is far from easy, and not just anyone is capable of doing it. Researchers who naively attempt to undertake qualitative research without adequate training will most likely obtain results of little worth or quickly discover the error of their ways. Decision-makers who suggest or approve unqualified qualitative research will only be creating headaches for themselves and the researchers assigned to the task (Jones 1994:53).

3.5.2.2 Organisational and administrative consideration

What makes qualitative research difficult to do properly? This study will address the question in various ways:
First, there is the matter of conceptualisation. A research process is not value free. A typical qualitative research situation is so broadly based as to be almost amorphous (Herbert 1992:131).

Second, there is the problem of instrumentation. In other words, what questions should the researcher ask of research subjects and how should he or she phrase the questions? In survey research, at least the researcher has a prepared set of questions. In qualitative research, the researcher may only have some initial topics - actual questions have to be devised as he or she goes along.

Third, there are “mechanical problems”. According to Bogdewic (1992:58) what may amount to routine activities for the inhabitants become pieces of an interaction puzzle to the participant observer. The temptation to continue observing and participating rather than stopping to record the experience is strong. Decoding field notes from observations or interviews in such a way that information is retrieved takes practice and experience. Decoding observations and interview responses becomes even more difficult when the researcher has to rely upon memory, as is often the case because the situation does not permit immediate recording of data.

Fourth, there is the problem of remaining objective during qualitative research. Regardless of the group the researcher is investigating, his or her emotions influence how he or she perceives individuals and their perceptions. No matter how much training the researcher had in qualitative research, he or she begins each new project basically in a state of apprehension due to ignorance and preconceptions (Morse 1994:59).

Fifth, Norr (1994:116) views another basic problem area with qualitative research as the time that it requires. Qualitative studies are highly labour intensive, and a project seldom has the personnel, time or financial resources to conduct an intensive qualitative investigation of all of these porters. Sometimes, because decision makers realise that qualitative research requires a lot of time, the approach is not sanctioned, and period. That is no problem of time - no research either. But if qualitative research is approved, not enough time may be scheduled for the project. One may be expected to produce results in a few days or a few weeks, when months are actually necessary to gather sufficient valid data. Or, one might be expected to do too many things simultaneously.
3.5.3 Strengths and weaknesses of qualitative research

The great strength of qualitative research is the validity of the data obtained from individuals when they are interviewed in sufficient detail for the results to be taken as true, correct, complete and believable reports of their views and experiences. Its main weakness is that small numbers of respondents cannot be taken as representative, even if great care is taken to choose a fair cross-section of the types of people who are the subjects of the researcher (Hakim 1992:26).

3.5.4 Data recording procedures

Creswell (1994: 149) notes that before entering the field, qualitative researchers plan their approach to data recording. What is to be recorded? And how will it be recorded? It is advisable for the researchers to design in advance protocols for collecting information. Researchers engage in multi observations during the course of a qualitative study. A protocol, or form for recording information, is needed to note observations in the field. One might design an observation protocol as a single page with a dividing line down the middle to separate descriptive notes: portraits of the informants; a reconstruction of dialogue; a description of the physical setting; accounts of particular events, activities from reflective notes; and opportunity for the researcher to record personal thoughts such as speculation, feeling, impressions and prejudices.

A protocol is also useful in conducting interviews. This protocol would include the following components:

(a) a heading
(b) instructions to the interviewer (opening statement)
(c) the key research questions to be asked.
(d) probes to follow key questions.
(e) transition messages for the interviewer.
(f) space for recording the interviewers’ comments
(g) space in which the researcher records reflective notes (Cresswell 1994:149).
3.5.5 Guidelines for coding of qualitative data

Glesne and Webb (1992:796) show that qualitative data analysis is an effort to construct order out of the booming, buzzing confusion that stands before the researcher. Coding is of categories in the data. The researcher should try to discover genuine categories and give them a (provisional) name – and not simply precise phrases in the document or other material. Categories should be related as specifically and variably as possible to the contexts in which they occur, e.g. conditions, consequences. The researcher should always do this on the basis of specific data, underlining or highlighting each occurrence, referencing frequently, giving page, line, etc. Core categories should be developed, relating all categories and sub-categories to the core.

Colin (1993:386) further shows that unrelated categories should be discarded, unless one can find some way of linking them to the core. Simplistically put, qualitative research is the collection and analysis of extensive narrative data, in order to gain insights into a situation of interest which would not be possible using other types of research. Descriptive, correlational, causal comparative and experimental research are considered to be qualitative research because they all involve primarily the collection and analysis of numerical data.

Pitman and Maxwell (1996:736) see qualitative evaluation as being concerned with verification as well as with discovery. A qualitative study’s transferability of generalisability to other settings may be problematic. The generalisation of a qualitative study to other populations, settings, and treatment arrangements - that is, its external validity - is seen by traditional canons as a weakness in the approach. To counter challenges, the researcher can refer back to the original theoretical framework to show how data collection and analysis will be guided by concepts and models. By doing so, the researcher states the theoretical parameters of the research. Then those who make policy or design research studies within those same parameters can determine whether or not the cases described can be generalised for new research policies and can see how research ties into a body of theory.
Gilchrist (1992:87) views triangulation as an essential check for the researcher. Triangulation is the act of bringing more than one source of data to bear on a single point. Derived from navigation science, the concept has been fruitfully applied to social science inquiry. Data from different sources can be used to corroborate, elaborate, or illuminate the research in question. Designing a study in which multiple cases are used, multiple informants or more than one data gathering technique can greatly strengthen the study’s usefulness for other settings.

The third construct is dependability, in which the researcher attempts to account for changing conditions in the phenomenon chosen for study, as well as changes in the design created by increasingly refined understanding of the setting. This represents a set of assumptions very different from those shaping the concept of reliability. Positivist notions of reliability assume an unchanging universe, where inquiry could, quite locally, be replicated. The assumption of an unchanging social world is in direct contrast to the qualitative assumption that the social world is always changing, and the concept of replication is itself problematic. The equivalent terms for reliability and validity are dependability and confirmability (Zyzanski et al. 1992: 234).

The final construct, conformability, captures the traditional concept of objectivity. A qualitative research proposal should respond to concerns that the natural subjectivity of the researcher will shape the research. Again, the researcher must assert the strength of the qualitative study. Some understanding should be gained, even sympathy, for the research participants in order to gain entry into their world. The researcher’s insights increase the likelihood of accurately describing the complex social system being researched.

The qualitative researcher should be familiar with the issues and data quality and analysis, and must display an ability to devise controls and methods that are appropriate to the research. According to Kuzel (1992:33) qualitative research does not pretend to be replicable. The researcher purposefully avoids controlling the research conditions and concentrates on recording the complexity of situational contexts and interrelations as they
occur. Moreover, the researcher's goal of discovering this complexity by altering research strategies within a flexible research design cannot be replicated by future researchers, nor should it be attempted.

However, qualitative researchers can respond to the traditional social science concern for replicability by taking the following steps. First, they can assert that qualitative studies by their nature (and, really, all research) cannot be replicated because the real world changes. Second, by keeping thorough notes and research diaries that records each research design decision and the rationale behind it, researchers allow others to inspect their procedures, protocols, and decisions. Finally, by keeping all collected data in well-organized, retrievable form, researchers can make them available easily if the findings are challenged (Gay 1996:41).

Finally, researchers need to allay the fears (both their own and those of their reviewers) that they will not know how to begin data analysis. Again, a pilot study, a hypothesized model, or an outline of possible data analysis categories can be appended to the proposal. The qualitative researcher should always caution that such models, outlines, and categories are merely tools, tentative guides from which to begin observation and analysis. However, they are reassuring to those who have low tolerance for ambiguity.

3.5.6 Steps in coding qualitative research

Cresswell (1994:145) provides steps to consider coding qualitative research. The researcher should carefully read and acquire a sense of the whole transcriptions. Perhaps some ideas should be jotted down as they come to mind. One document (one interview) should be picked: the most interesting, the shortest, the one on top of the pile. The researcher should go through it, asking himself or herself, what it is all about. The "substance" of the information should not be thought about, but rather its underlying meaning. Thoughts should be written in the margin.
When the researcher has completed this task for several informants, he should make a list of all topics. Cluster together similar topics. Form these topics into columns that might be arranged as major topics, unique topics and leftovers. The topics should be abbreviated as codes and the codes should be written next to the appropriate segments of the text. The preliminary organizing scheme should be tried to see whether new categories and codes emerge.

The most descriptive wording for the topics should be found and they should be turned into categories. The total list of categories should be reduced by grouping topics that relate to each other. Perhaps lines should be drawn between categories to show interrelationships. A final decision on the abbreviation for each category should be made and the codes should be alphabetized. The data material belonging to each category should be assembled in one place and a preliminary analysis performed. If necessary, the existing data should also be recorded (Cresswell 1994:145).

To round this discussion, qualitative research is an excellent way of gaining an overview of complicated and poorly understood social phenomena. Because of its flexibility, qualitative research can also be used to move from a general to a specific research focus by allowing research hypotheses to be reformulated during the course of the study (Leedy 1993:142).

### 3.6 SAMPLING PROCEDURE

#### 3.6.1 Purposeful Sampling

"In qualitative study, the sampling is usually purposive, meaning that the sample is selected purposefully, i.e. precisely because it is believed to be a rich source of data of interest" (Gay 1996: 213-214). Purposeful sampling is done in this thesis to increase the utility of information obtained from school samples. When doing purposeful sampling the researcher searches for information, rich key informants, groups, places, and events to study. The chosen samples are considered as those who are knowledgeable and
informative about the phenomena the researcher is busy investigating. For example, in the case of the school, when the researcher wants to know about the mutual relationship between the school and the community, the researcher will first interview the principal as the head of the school and then the deputy principal to acquire rich information. The head of department will also be interviewed. Teachers and learners, as well as the parents, will then also be interviewed. One member of the school governing body will also be considered as an informant person who could provide rich information that will help the researcher in his investigation.

Purposeful sampling comprises different types of sampling such as site selection, comprehensive sampling, maximum variation sampling, network sampling and sampling by case type. Many probability samples are what is known as simple random sampling, but often it is not possible to simply select a sample from a sampling frame (de Vaus 1991:64).

In this thesis, sampling will be purposive. Since grade 1 teachers are both the curriculum designers and implementers, it is imperative to view those characteristics of the teaching staff that might influence the development of the curriculum. Grade 1 teachers may acknowledge a dislike in a productive learning area. A knowledge of the distribution of such weaknesses and strengths across the whole staff may be helpful in curriculum planning. A grade 1 teacher's preferred style of teaching may influence the selection of learning experiences in curriculum design.

3.6.1.1 Types of purposeful sampling

Spindler (1992:65) argues that there is no hard and fast rule regarding what constitutes sufficient time on the site. Significant discoveries can be made in 2 weeks or less of ethnographic observation, but the validity of ethnographic observation on observation in site that lasts long enough to permit the ethnographic to see things happen not once but repeatedly. The relevance of this discussion will be elaborated on in the forthcoming sections.
(a) Site selection

Kuzel (1992:41) stresses that site is selected to locate and sample the people involved in a particular event. Here, research was conducted in Northern Province with grade 1 teachers and their involvement in SBCD was investigated. The actual activities of curriculum development can be executed by grade teachers. Grade 1 teachers must actively participate in SBCD activities and provide information and feedback. This helps to improve curriculum as well as new teaching resources.

(b) Comprehensive sampling

In comprehensive sampling every participant group, setting, event and other relevant information are examined, for example, if the researcher wants to examine the late arrival of teachers in a particular school, other schools should be looked at to observe the same problem. If the sampling of research participant perception is to be truly holistic, care must be taken to ensure that status and differentials among research participants and researchers are not reinforced through the process of data collection and analysis (Dobbert and Schai 1992:125).

The major purpose of comprehensive sampling is to support the total developmental needs of grade 1 teachers in Northern Province, as well as taking care of the needs generated by educational change. Comprehensive sampling is mooted as the main route to the qualitative improvement of SBCD and must, therefore, give a lead in setting educational standards and in bringing about sound innovations.

(c) Maximum variation sampling

In the maximum variation sampling sub-units of the major units of analysis are represented. The researcher may divide the population of elementary school teachers by number of years (experience in the profession of teaching) into various categories, and select key informants in each category to investigate career development. A selection of
those to be surveyed is made according to a known characteristic such as being a politician, trade union leader etc (May 1997:88).

Here, too, maximum variation sampling is suitable because involvement with a certain experience in the field of teaching will become interviewees. Various aspects with regard to grade 1 teacher involvement will be addressed below. The solution advocated is that primary schools be staffed permanently with experienced curriculum development grade 1 teachers to facilitate SBCD, in liason with school heads and curriculum experts at provincial and national levels.

(d) Network sampling

Burgess (1990:55) maintains that this approach involves using a small group of informants who are asked to put the researcher in touch with their friends who are subsequently interviewed, then asking them about their friends also, and interviewing them as well, until a chain of informants has been selected. Grade 1 teachers from various schools in the Northern Province will be interviewed to determine the task they execute in SBCD.

Another name for network sampling is snowball sampling which is a strategy in which each successive participant or group is named by a preceding group or individual. Network sampling is mostly used for in depth interview studies. It is used in ethnographic interviews by anthropologists, in oral history by historians and many others. Historians interview famous people to obtain details from participants about historical events.

Curriculum decision-making and development in the school necessarily has to be related to external levels. It has already been stressed that decision made at provincial and national levels influence decisions taken in schools. Mediating societal needs by means of the school curriculum requires that elements of society and representatives of schools, e.g. grade 1 teachers, co-operate in making explicit such needs and the school’s ability to implement remedies at the same time.
Silverman (1992:22) maintains that the main question, at least in case study research, is the quality of the analysis rather than the recruitment of the sample. The role played by grade 1 teachers in SBCD and the extent to which they provide opportunities for the learner to participate actively in the process of learning will be examined. In this case the researcher is in need of an in-depth analysis of a phenomenon. Participants or groups who participated in the study are reported in such a manner as to protect confidentiality of data.

3.6.2 Random versus Fixed Sampling

May (1997:87) indicates that random sampling is also called probability sampling. It is so called because it is possible to express the mathematical probability of sample characteristics being reproduced in the population. Random in this case refers to a haphazard selection of schools in terms of language, area and circuit. (Compare chapter 1 item 1.4.2).

Moreover, it is worth pointing out that the function of inference in statistics is the generation of reasonable statements about parameters, based upon careful examination and analysis of statistics. Requisites for the valid use of inferential statistics are both an adequate definition of the target population and access to a sample that is representative of this population. Furthermore, random selection of subjects for inclusion in samples constitutes not only the ideal method to achieve representation, but is also fundamental to the proper operation of the machinery of statistical inference.

It should be acknowledged that it is not always possible in practice to use random selection procedures to the extent that might be desired. When samples cannot be drawn at random, two options are available. The practitioner may elect to define the desired population from which inference will be made (the target population) and then proceed intelligently to use all relevant available information, in an attempt to structure a sample.
that appears to be representative of the target population. A second option, and the only option available when the sample has been predetermined, is to study the sample at hand and then attempt to define a population from which the factory substitute for random sampling - yet research is an enterprise broader than the exact application of statistical methodology (Kuzel 1992:33).

Sometimes the researchers' concern is that the group they are interested in is not fully represented in the sample. In this case, a stratified random sample may be used whereby a stratification according to characteristics such as age group, gender, type of housing etc is first made and then a random sample is drawn from each of the stratified lists. This allows researchers to weight the sample - in other words over-represent a particular characteristic. In both these modifications of probability sampling some care is required to ensure accurate representation (May 1997:87).

Returning to the theoretical level, if it is the researcher’s intent to determine whether an association is present between two variables, complete use of randomisation in sampling is called for. On the other hand, if the intent is to search for group differences, restricted use of randomisation will suffice. With respect to the former (i.e., the symmetrical case), ideally one defines a population of interest and then proceeds to draw a simple random sample from the population. For our working example, assume that both the target and accessible populations consist solely of undergraduate learners enrolled in a large university. If the purpose is to see whether gender and attitudes towards abortion are related, obtaining a random sample by straightforward way means to constitute the most appropriate plan. Not only will simple random sampling satisfy an important underlying condition associated with the statistical analysis of resultant data, but, as will be discussed, it will also yield marginal proportions for both Variables A and B, which are maximum-likelihood estimators of respective proportions in the population (Erickson 1992:206).

The researcher in this thesis will determine the change of variation and the relative typicality or atypicality of instances in the data corpus through data collection that
involves deliberate sampling. In contrast, if the intent is to determine whether differences exist between or among groupings of an explanatory variable (i.e. the asymmetrical case), stratified random sampling is generally preferable. Specifically, if we want to find out whether males and females hold different views on the abortion-amendment issues, then the respective number of males and females in the sample need not reflect the ratio of males to females in the background population (Morse 1994: 65).

3.7 DOING QUALITATIVE RESEARCH

According to Wolcott (1992:760) there are five basic stages for doing qualitative research. These are as follows:

* Choosing research sites and sample populations.
* Obtaining and encoding qualitative data (taking field notes).
* Preparing for and undertaking focused interviews.
* Developing and maintaining field relations.
* Organising and analysing the qualitative data gathered.

The first two of these stages are more concerned with the mechanical and technical aspects of applied research; the second two emphasise human interaction skills; the last stage requires both well-developed analytical and communications skills. Each of these stages will be examined in turn. By the end of the discussion, the researcher should have a general idea of how to approach a qualitative research project. It should be borne in mind, however, that what follows are only suggestions, not ironical rules. There is no single "correct" way to do qualitative research (Pitman and Maxwell 1996:760).

How the researcher should proceed with a qualitative research project depends on many things. What is appropriate in one situation will not be appropriate in another. For example, the researcher could openly take notes at a public meeting of a legislative body; one would find it difficult to follow the same procedure during a riot. Although a tape recorder will be utilised in this study, interviews work well only with individuals who are used to such devices, such as politicians or public figures; many people are put off by recording instruments and will give only the briefest of answers if they know that the
The researcher's own personality is also an important factor in conducting qualitative research. The research techniques that the researcher employs must be compatible with one's own personality. What works for one person will not work so well for another. For example, one may not be a good actor to do disguised research. Or, the researcher may have a low key interviewing style that immediately puts people at ease, so that they open up and provide a wealth of information with little prompting. As the researcher develops his or her qualitative research skills, he or she will soon recognise the natural strengths and weaknesses, because there is only so much the researcher can do to overcome his or her weaknesses and develop research procedures (Lumadi 1995:33).

3.7.1 Choosing research sites and sample populations

Melville and Goddard (1996:29) indicate that a population is any group that is the subject of research interest. Often the population is predetermined because policy makers want to find out about a specific group or organisation, such as youth gangs in a certain city or a particular office within an agency. Thus, both the research site and the sample population are established before any research is designed (Patton 1992:43).

In such instances, the questions of how typical the population is and how generalizable the results are do not matter quite as much. These questions are important, however, whenever there is a choice of research sites and populations. For example, one might be asked to conduct qualitative research to investigate the significance of teaching an OBE approach in Northern Province schools. The schools that one chooses must be typical of other schools in other provinces. Obviously, no single school will be completely typical of all schools in other provinces, but each one selected should share certain important characteristics, such as urban or rural location, the socio-economic status of the residents and their families, and so on. Only through careful choice of the research site and the sample population will one's results be generalisable (Spindler 1992:64).

Once one has chosen a research site, one must decide which elements of the population at that site will be studied in-depth. If the group or organisation that one is investigating is small, one may be able to study each of the members. More often, however, this is not feasible. In this study, a researcher will thus focus on the involvement of grade 1 teachers
in SBCD in the Northern Province. The pool of respondents will be drawn from the various primary schools in the inspection areas of Northern Region.

3.7.2 Cultivating informants

Gilchrist (1992:70) stresses that the informant is viewed by some social science researchers as both pejorative and inadequate to capture the relationship between the researcher and the individual providing information. After one has decided that one’s sample population is representative of the social process one wishes to investigate, one must cultivate informants, or individuals who will agree to be interviewed to describe their views. One’s informants must represent a good cross section of the sample population. If one is studying grade 1 teachers involvement in SBCD in the Northern Province, the informants should include not only the grade 1 teachers, but also typical followers. In addition, the researcher should include deviant cases, or atypical individuals. For example, the researcher might include some former grade 1 teachers who decided to leave the group for various reasons or individuals who have resisted joining such a group. These deviant cases can provide information that will expand the researcher’s understanding of the group structure. The aspect of cultivating informants will not be totally appropriate, because only grade 1 teachers will be interviewed in this research.

Schensul and Schensul (1992:185) show that rather than obtaining large amounts of demographic information, collaborative networks should concentrate on the collection of specific information pertinent to the selected direction. Sometimes the researcher may have to follow a network strategy to locate informants, especially if the group he or she is researching is loosely or informally structured. This procedure is also known as the snowball technique. An interviewee will tell the interviewer the name of another person who can give the researcher more information about certain questions. That person can suggest yet other individuals whom one can tap as informants. Besides helping the researcher to locate informants, the snowball technique will aid in determining the different factions that might exist within the group.

3.7.3 Obtaining and encoding qualitative data

The data the researcher obtains from focused interviews constitutes only one part of the field data the researcher collects when doing qualitative research. Even before the
researcher goes into the field, he or she should have collected a great deal of background information: reports by other researchers, topical books on the subject of the research, newspapers and magazines articles, and so forth. To keep track of what is going on around a researcher and to organise a researcher’s observations into some meaningful form, a researcher must take notes. Depending upon the circumstances, the researcher may be able to take notes as he or she observes. The researcher will not rely on memory until writing down the observations later. Theoretical sampling is the process of data collection for generating theory whereby the analyst jointly collects, codes, analyses his data and decides what data to collect next and where to find them, in order to develop his or her theory as it emerges (Kuzel 1992:39).

3.7.4 Categorising observations

Anything and everything that the researcher observes may be relevant to the research problem one is investigating, so the researcher’s notes should be as comprehensive as possible. In order to give meaning to the observations, the researcher must be able to categorise the events he or she observes so that can be taken. Miller and Crabtree (1992:19) address the following categories:

- **Acts.** Action is a situation that is brief, consuming only a few seconds, minutes, or hours.
- **Activities.** Action is a setting of more major duration - days, weeks, months constituting significant elements of persons’ involvement.
- **Meanings.** The verbal productions of participants that define and direct action.
- **Participation.** Person’s holistic involvement, or adaptation to a situation or setting under study.
- **Relationships.** Interrelationships among several persons considered simultaneously.
- **Settings.** The entire setting under study conceived as the unit of analysis.

The above categories proposed by Miller and Crabtree (1992:19) are suitable in this thesis. Grade 1 teachers’ competency is of paramount importance to curriculum effectiveness in two crucial ways. On the one hand, it directly influences the interpretation of the curriculum in actual teaching-learning situation. On the other hand, it determines the extent to which teachers can confidently and realistically participate in curriculum decision-making and development activities.
3.7.5 Taking field notes

Eisner (1993:35) shows that qualitative studies tend to be field focused. In education, those conducting research go out to schools, visit classrooms and observe teachers. Fieldwork is the central activity of qualitative evaluation methods. Going into the field means having direct and personal contact with people in the programme in their own environments. Qualitative approaches emphasise the importance of getting close to the people and situations being studied in order to understand personally the realities of and initiate daily program life. The evaluator gets close to the people under study through physical proximity for a period of time, as well as through development of closeness in the social sense of shared experience and confidentiality.

Bogdewic (1992:58) indicates that field notes represent an attempt to provide a literal account of what happened in the field setting – the social processes and their contexts. Here are some suggestions that were followed by the researcher in this study for taking field notes. Regardless of the personal philosophy the researcher develops toward doing qualitative research, these suggestions will allow the researcher to gather data more efficiently.

- **Put notes down as quickly as possible.** If the researcher cannot record conversation or events verbatim, an outline of what happens should be jotted down. As soon as the opportunity presents itself, jotting should be transcribed into full and coherent versions of the researcher’s observations. There is often a temptation to wait until later before transcribing the notes. After a late meeting of the group the researcher is observing, for example, he may want to go straight to bed and transcribe notes in the morning (Miller and Crabtree 1992:65).

- **Segregate observation from opinions.** What the researcher observed and the interpretation of the observations may be two different things. What the researcher observed in one place should be put down. The interpretations of the event should be recorded separately. In fact, observations and interpretations should not be lumped together (May 1997:144).
• **Train your memory.** In many settings, it is inappropriate or impossible to take notes. It is off-putting to whip out a researcher’s notebook and begin to take notes over dinner. Usually the researcher will have to wait for a more convenient time to put on paper what one has been told. A researcher’s memory should be trained so that it can be done accurately. There are all sorts of ways to train the researcher’s memory. For example, in a conversation, the researcher should not start thinking about how one will respond to a comment. A researcher should learn to listen to what is being said instead. When the researcher enters a new setting, he should not let himself or herself be overwhelmed by visual stimuli; look at each part of the setting and verbalise what is seen (Silverman 1992:36).

• **Forget your concern about saving trees when recording field notes.** When taking notes, the researcher should not skimp on the paper. The researcher should leave sufficient margins so that materials can be added and particular topics from the annotations located. Only one side of each sheet of paper should be used. Eventually, the researcher will photocopy notes and then cut them up so that topics of interest should be grouped. There is always the possibility that the researcher will lose notes, especially if he is in a dynamic research situation or travelling from place to place in the course of his research. The researcher protects his work by making photocopies as soon as he can (Bogdewic 1992:65).

• **Use mechanical aids to facilitate note taking and transcription when you can.** Pocket tape recorders are marvellous inventions. Often, they permit verbatim recordings of conversation, meetings, and other social interactions. But such devices must be used with caution. Some individuals are not comfortable if they realise that their comments are being recorded. In addition to tape recorders, other mechanical devices can often be of use in qualitative research. Sometimes, for example, it is possible to use a camera to make visual records of a situation or an event. How many people attended the meeting? What was the neighbourhood like the day after the riot? What was the appearance of the informant’s home? Photographs can help answer questions like these (Lumadi 1995:33).
3.7.6 The value and logic of qualitative research

The following are alternative constructs that more accurately reflect the assumptions of the qualitative paradigm. The first is credibility, in which the goal is to demonstrate that the inquiry was conducted in such a manner as to ensure that the subject was accurately identified and described. The inquiry then must be “credible to the constructors of the original multiple realities” (Marshall and Rossman 1990:143).

The second construct is transferability, in which the burden of demonstrating the applicability of one set of findings to another context rests more with the investigator who would make that transfer than with the original investigator. Zyzanski (1992:23) maintains that qualitative research designs are often very labour intensive, intrusive and require a substantial time commitment from those involved. A qualitative research proposal should respond to concerns that the natural subjectivity of the researcher will shape the research. Again, the researcher should assert the strengths of the qualitative study. Some understanding should be gained, even empathy, for the research participants, in order to gain entry into their world. The researcher’s insights increase the likelihood of describing the complex social system being studied. The researcher, however, should build in strategies for balancing bias in interpretation. Such controls would include the following:

- A research partner or a person who plays “devil’s advocate” and critically questions the researcher’s analyses
- A constant search for negative instances
- Checking and rechecking the data and purposeful examination of possible rival hypotheses
- Practising value-free note-taking, then taking sets of notes, one with more objective observation and another that allows the researcher to impose some conceptual scheme or metaphors, and to be creative with the data in ways that might prove useful for more formal analysis.
- Devising tests to check analyses and applying the tests to the data, asking questions of the data (Marshall and Rossman 1990:126).

Dollase (1992:11) states that qualitative research puts flesh and blood on the skeleton and helps us to get the realities of human life. The qualitative researcher should be familiar with the issues in data quality control and analysis, and should display an ability to
develop strategies that are appropriate to the research. Clearly, criteria of soundness for qualitative research differ from the criteria developed for experimental and positivist research. Still, it is helpful to articulate the parallels and differences. Qualitative research does not pretend to be replicable. The researcher's goal of discovering this complexity by altering research strategies within a flexible research design, moreover, cannot be replicated by future researchers, nor should it be attempted. Attention to these standards helps ensure a sound and reasonable research proposal. Marshall and Rossman (1990:125) elaborate on a number of standards for judging qualitative study reports, arguing that proposal writers should design, conduct, and report their studies with various criteria in mind.

The qualitative study is explicated in detail so that the reader can judge whether it is adequate. An articulate rationale of the use of qualitative methods is given so that sceptics will accept the approach. The methods for attaining entry and managing one's role, data collection, recording, analysis, ethics, and exit are discussed. There is an auditibility trail - a running record of procedures (often done in an appendix) - and there is a description of how the site and sample were selected. Data collection and analysis procedures are public, not magical. Assumptions are stated. Biases are expressed, and the researcher does a kind of self-analysis for personal biases and a framework analysis for theoretical biases. The researcher also guards against value judgements in data collection and in analysis (Lumadi 1995:34).

There is abundant evidence from raw data to demonstrate the connection between the presented findings and the real world, and the data are presented in readable, accessible form, perhaps aided by graphics, models, charts, and figures. The research questions are stated, and the study answers those questions and generates further questions. The relationship between this study and others is explicit. Definitions of phenomena are provided, with explicit reference to previously identified phenomena, but it is clear that the research goes beyond previously established frameworks. The study is reported in a manner that is accessible to other researchers, practitioners, and policy makers. It makes adequate translation of findings so that other researcher will be able to use the findings in a timely way (Norr 1994:121).

The report acknowledges the limitations of generalisability while assisting the readers to see the transferability of findings. Observations are made (or sampled) of a full range of activities, over a full cycle of activities. The researcher is careful about the sensitivity of
those being researched - ethical standards are maintained. People in the research setting benefit in some way (ranging from getting a free meal, or an hour of sympathetic listening, to being empowered to throw off their chains). The study is tied into "the big picture". The researcher looks holistically at the setting to understand linkages among systems. The researcher traces the historical context to understand how institutions and roles have evolved (Marshall and Rossman 1990:195).

*Grade 1 teachers* have always been the real *curriculum* designers, irrespective of whether they have realised it or not. They have always engaged in modifying the *curriculum* prepared at the centre to make an operational *curriculum* appropriate to their particular classroom. The knowledge of the researcher in this study, also entails an understanding and description of qualities.

### 3.8 PHASES OF DATA COLLECTION AND ANALYSIS STRATEGIES

The data collection steps involve setting the boundaries of the data collection through observations, interviews, documents and visual materials, and establish the protocol for recording information. The researcher must identify the parameters for the data collection. Beyond this general parameter researchers should consider four parameters, as follows the setting; the actors; the events and the process (Creswell 1994:149).

According to Miller and Crabtree (1992:13) qualitative research has approximately five important phases of data collection and analysis. These phases are not called procedures, but data collection and analysis strategies because they are ways that can be followed in order to collect data. A brief discussion on each of them follows.

#### 3.8.1 Phase 1: Planning

Jennett (1994:100) stresses that researchers analyse the problem statement and the anticipated research question that focuses on the data collection. Good research becomes effective when the researcher analyses the situation, formulates outcomes, improves the programme, maintains and evaluates the *curriculum* in order to develop. Questions should be based upon needs and experience. Researchers also describe the kind of setting
or sites, the type of interviews, the documents that would seem logically to yield information about the problem. Researchers also gain permission to use the site and a network of persons.

3.8.2 Phase 2: Beginning data collection

Zyzanski et al. (1992: 235) show that the researcher is the main instrument for both data collection and analysis. In this phase the researcher establishes rapport, trust and reciprocal relations with individuals and groups to be observed. The researcher obtains data primarily to become oriented to the field and to gain a sense of the totality of the setting, for purposeful sampling. Few people are interviewed in this phase in a network and begins the snowball sampling technique. The researcher polishes the interviewing and recording procedures.

3.8.3 Phase 3: Basic data collection

Here the researcher begins to hear, see, and to read what is going on, rather than just listening, or scanning documents. The researcher continues to make choices of data collection strategies and informants. Initial working conceptualisations and descriptions are transformed and summarised. As initial patterns emerge, the researcher identifies ideas and facts that need corroboration in the closing phase (Norr 1994:116).

3.8.4 Phase 4: Choosing data collection

Data collection draws too close as the researcher leaves the field and when he conducts the last interview (May 1997:144).
3.8.5 Phase 5: Completion

The construction of meaningful ways to present the data can be termed as completion. Data analysis begins with a construction of the facts as found in the researcher-recorded data. The researcher reconstructs initial diagrams and network diagrams, and processes figures, to synthesise a holistic sense of the totality, which is the relationship to the parts of the whole (Herbert 1992:131).

3.8.6 The primacy of data

Holloway (1997:7) observes that the researcher enters the field with an open mind. The researchers usually approach people with the aim of finding out about them; the researchers go to the participants to collect the rich and in-depth data that may become the basis for theorising. The research design cannot be strictly predefined before the start of the research. In qualitative research the data have priority. A research project is not predetermined but based on the incoming data. The approach to social science is, initially at least, inductive. Researchers move from the specific to the general; from the data to the theory. They must be open-minded, though they cannot help having some thoughts about what they may find.

School-Based Curriculum Development may be required for a number of rationales. Special needs of learners may require individualised curriculum materials which are not be found commercially.

3.8.7 The “emic” perspective

Qualitative researchers explore the ideas and perceptions of the participants, the insiders’ views, and search for commonalities. Such researchers attempt to examine the experiences, feelings and perceptions of the people they study, rather than imposing a framework of their own that might distort the ideas of the participants. Qualitative research is based on the premise that individuals are best placed to describe situations and
feelings in their own words. The qualitative approach requires empathetic understanding; that is, the investigators must try to examine the situations, events and actions from the participants - the social actors' point of view, and not impose their own perspective. This does not mean that the researchers never theorise or infer from observed behaviour or participants' words, for they often do (Cresswell 1994:45).

Qualitative researchers are interested in meaning - how people make sense of their lives, experiences, and their structures of the world. Qualitative research can be viewed as the primary instrument for data collection and analysis. Data are mediated through this human instrument, rather than through inventories, questionnaires or machines. Moreover, qualitative research is descriptive in that the researcher is interested in process, meaning and understanding gained through words or pictures. The process of qualitative research is inductive in that the researcher builds abstractions, concepts, hypotheses, and theories from details (Silverman 1992:24).

Grade I teachers' autonomy in making judgements about learners and the teaching learning situation is perceived by most curriculumists as an attributing factor in favour of grade I teachers' involvement in curriculum development. The plight of having grade I teachers deeply involved in analysing their curriculum issues does not condone the abandoning of external curriculum development initiatives, support and expertise. Neither does it underestimate the significance of theory and pedagogy in curriculum development.

3.9 DATA ANALYSIS PROCEDURE

Several components might comprise the plan for analysing the data. The process of data analysis is eclectic; there is no right way. Metaphors and analogies are as appropriate as open-ended questions. Data analysis requires that the researcher be comfortable with developing categories and making companions and contrasts. (Compare chapter 4 item 4.3 paragraphs 4.3.1-4.3.10). It also requires that the researcher be open to possibilities and to seeing contrary or alternative explanations for the findings (Creswell 1994:153).
According to Jennett (1994:103) the data analysis approaches must always be chosen to match the questions being posed, and must be appropriate to the assumptions in place. Several points can guide the development of the analysis of quantitative data. It should be suggested in the plan that the data analysis will be conducted as an activity simultaneously with data collection, data interpretation and narrative reporting writing. In qualitative analysis several simultaneous activities engage the attention of the researcher. Information should be collected into categories, and also be formatted into a story or picture.

Creswell (1994:154) goes on to support the concept of displays of information: a spatial format that presents information systematically to the reader. These displays are tables of tabular information. They show the relationship among categories of information, displaying categories by informants, site, demographic variables, chronology of the information, role ordering and many other possibilities. "A qualitative study allows conclusions to be drawn on the basis of personal observation as well as consideration and evaluation of data without an interpretation of purely empirical data" (De Klerk et al. 1998:30), while Hakim (1992:27) defines qualitative research as concerned with individuals’ own accounts of their attitudes, motivations and behaviours.

In order to achieve an in-depth understanding, the qualitative researchers utilize a variety of methods and data collection strategies (multi-methods). The most important common strategy used is participant observation, which could be supplemented by collection of relevant documents and informal interviewing.

In the preceding explanation, the researcher has pointed out that what matters most is the categories and concepts, not their incidence and frequency. This argument is qualified by Brannen (1992:4) who notes that the researchers must use themselves as the tool, attending to their own cultural assumptions as well as to the data. Essential to responsive SBCD in this case are responsive, sensitive grade 1 teachers. These are the participants who daily face groups of learners and who are responsible for the instructional process.
3.9.1 Content Analysis

Marshall and Rossman (1990:98) show that content analysis involves the systematic examination of the contents of research (qualitative) data to record the relative incidence (frequencies) of themes and the ways in which these themes are portrayed. It is used to examine information or content, or symbolic material such as pictures, words, meanings, ideas, themes, movies, song lyrics, or any message that can be communicated.

Content analysis clearly defines the phenomenon to be analysed, and the research question should inform this process. It also defines the universe of appropriate analysis units and also focuses on the “typical” and/or the “representative” rather than on research biases. A description of how the units of analysis are coded is presented and often requires the coding of latent meaning or intention reflected in the units of analysis. The body of material to be analysed is identified and a system for recording specific aspects of it is created, e.g. counting how often certain words or themes occur, and often a graphic or tabular representation is made.

Furthermore, content analysis trains the coders of qualitative data properly to ascertain inter-rate reliability where the use of qualitative analytical software is absent and it is used for exploratory and explanatory research (most often used in descriptive research). Content analysis procedures, as reflected in figure 3.3, of qualitative strategies in educational research are employed by all kinds of researchers and have a wide application. Paradoxically, content analysis requires qualitative researchers to devise and follow systematic procedures (Wolcott 1992:36). The phenomenon to be analysed is clearly illustrated in the discussion. This is qualified by the merits and demerits of content analysis discussed below.
3.9.1.1 Merits and demerits of content analysis

The strength of content analysis on the one hand involves random sampling, precise measurement, and operational definitions of abstract constructs. Research can compare content across many texts and analyse it with quantitative techniques (e.g. charts and tables). Research can (therefore) reveal aspects of the text that are difficult to see (e.g. the
absence of people of colour in local TV adverts). The research uses non-reactive measures and therefore suits the study of sensitive issues.

The weaknesses of qualitative content analysis on the other hand do not command much respect amongst social scientists (particularly those with positivistic orientations): the analysis is often quite tedious and redundant because it requires expertise which inexperienced researchers may not possess. Thus, if the theoretical frame can be determined, a more systematic basis for the content analysis can be established, one that classifies and controls the ideological premises guiding the device of questions and interpretation of results (LeCompte and Preissle 1992:819).

### 3.9.1.2 The illustrative method and variations

The illustrative method uses empirical evidence to anchor or illustrate an existing theory. Researchers apply a specific theory to a concrete historical situation or social setting. Data is organised on the basis of an existing theory (Pitman and Maxwell 1992:953). Variations show that the theoretical model illuminates or clarifies a specific case or single situation. Parallel demonstration of a model in which a researcher juxtaposes multiple cases shows that theory can be applied in multiple cases. Researchers also use material from multiple cases to illustrate a specific theory (Strauss and Corbin 1990: 255).

Here, too, the researcher’s evidence will support an existing theory by developing ideas from induction. *Grade 1 teachers'* adaptation of the *curriculum* and their attempts to introduce changes in existing texts raise the problem of adherence to curricular guidelines.

### 3.9.1.3 Analytic comparison

Researchers develop ideas about regularities or patterned relations from pre-existing theories or induction. The focus is then shifted to a few regularities, on the basis of which the researcher then makes contrasts with alternative explanations. Regularities that are
not limited to a specific context (time, place, group, etc.) are then sought (Jansen and Peshkin 1992:707). Curriculum analysis may help grade 1 teachers to recognise the special characteristics of curriculum materials. Such insight may aid involvement in their efforts to interpret materials and to plan their lessons on the basis of this interpretation.

3.9.2 Methods of agreement versus difference

The method of agreement focuses on what is common across the research cases and is much stronger than the latter. Besides it first locates research cases that are significantly similar but also differ in other crucial ways. A common outcome is always established by a researcher on the method of agreement, then an attempt is made at locating a common cause.

Furthermore, the method of difference pinpoints features that are related regarding outcome and causal factors and also pinpoints another set of cases that vary in outcomes and causal factors. The method of agreement proceeds by a process of elimination whereas the method of difference reinforces information from both positive and negative cases. It therefore presents a holistic look at the cause and outcome relationship between research variables (Webb and Glesne 1992:772).

3.9.3 Steps for qualitative data analysis

Marshall and Rossman (1990:112) stress that data analysis is the process of bringing order structure and meaning to the mass of collected data. They are of the opinion that six steps for qualitative data analysis may be formalised:

Step 1: reads data notes with serious concentration to details.
Step 2: mentally repackages details into organising ideas.
Step 3: constructs new ideas from notes on subjective meanings or from the researcher's organising ideas.
Step 4: looks for relationships among ideas and put them into sets on the basis of logical
similarity.

**Step 5**: organises them into larger groups by comparing and contrasting the sets of ideas.

**Step 6**: reorganises and links the groups together with broader integrating themes (Marshall and Rossman (1990:113)).

Data analysis for qualitative research is not a linear but an iterative process. The researcher’s analysis in this study starts immediately after the first data are collected and proceeds simultaneously with data collection.

### 3.9.3.1 Pure standards

It is of paramount importance that there should always be pure standards against which the data or “reality” can be compared and also a device used for comparison, because no reality ever fits an ideal type. This will be appropriate in verifying collected data.

### 3.9.3.2 The context contrast approach

The context contrast approach is appropriate in this study because it often utilises cases with dramatic contrasts to accentuate the specific and unique aspects of research phenomena. It seeks to show how specific circumstances, cultural meanings, and the perspectives of specific individuals are central for understanding a social setting or process (Carspecken and Apple 1992:507). The data collected from grade 1 teachers will vary from school to school.

### 3.10 RELIABILITY

In collecting data, the reliability of the data improves if the researcher has no preconceived ideas. In this study the researcher will be non-directive regarding the interviewee’s responses and will not persuade them to take a certain stance. According to Silverman (1992:145) “reliability refers to the degree of consistency with which instances
are assigned to the same category by different observers or by the same observer on
different occasions."

3.10.1 Types of reliability

Researchers improve reliability in their design by attending to aspects such as researcher
role, informant selection, social context, data collection strategies, data analysis strategies
and lastly analytical premises. The following three kinds of reliability are identified by
(Silverman 1992:143):

3.10.1.1 Quixotic reliability

This reliability refers to the circumstances in which a single method of observation
continually yields an unvarying measurement. This kind of reliability can be trivial and
misleading. The fact that the question in an interview elicits a predictable response does
not imply that the response relates to what interviewees say and do in various situations.

Jones (1994:66) stresses that qualitative research lends itself to story telling. Research
can discover the same phenomenon, on which there is agreement about the description of
the phenomenon. Qualitative researchers address reliability issues in designing their
studies and in their data collection strategies. Reliability in qualitative research refers to
the consistency of the researcher's data recording, data analysis and interpretation skills.

3.10.1.2 Diachronic reliability

Diachronic reliability has to do with the stability of an observation through time and the
fact that ways of defining advice sequence work well with data from different durations.
Lumadi (1995:34) avers that the reliability of the data improves if the interviewer has no
misleading questions at his or her disposal. The researcher must simply be non-directive
with regard to the respondent's reactions and may in no way lead the respondents to
adopt certain viewpoints.
Most qualitative researchers devise roles that elicit co-operation, trust, openness and acceptance. It should be borne in mind that qualitative research, compared to quantitative research, has fewer threats to internal validity and different strategies to minimise those threats. It is also important for field researchers to be aware of ethical responsibilities and legal constraints in collecting and reporting data.

### 3.10.1.3 Sychronic reliability

This addresses the similarity of observation within the same period. Triangulation is a standard way through which it is assessed. The triangulation of research methods and data entry points is helpful in qualitative research to confirm the reliability and validity interpretations (Zyzanski et al. 1992:190).

Qualitative research allows everybody to have something to say in the decisions taken by educators in the school setup. By so doing other people will be given a chance to raise their views, opinions, motivations and their perceptions in the decision to be taken. Reliability deals with accuracy and it asks one question above all others: With what accuracy does the technique measure what it is supposed to measure? (Leedy 1993: 42).

To avoid any form of bias on the part of the researcher which will have a negative impact on the result, qualitative data should be reliable. The reliability of data depends primarily on the unprejudiced approach of the researcher towards the themes that are under investigation, e.g. *grade 1 teacher involvement* in *SBCD* in the *Northern Province*. The aspect of validity will be addressed in the following discussion.

### 3.11 VALIDITY

For qualitative data to be more valid, it is quite imperative for a researcher to investigate in depth the problem he or she intends investigating. The problem to be investigated should be addressed in advance. A serious threat to the validity of one’s findings by means of qualitative research is a weakly defined data analysis protocol. According to
Gay (1996:138): “Validity is the degree to which a test measures what it is supposed to measure and consequently permits appropriate interpretation of scores”. There are two types of validity in qualitative design, internal and external validity. The validity and reliability of qualitative data depend to a great extent on the methodological skill, sensitivity, and training of the researcher. Systematic and rigorous observation involves more than just being present and looking around. Skilful interviewing involves much more than just asking questions.

3.11.1 Types of validity in qualitative design

May (1997:68) says that research is valid when the conclusions are true. It is reliable when the findings are repeatable. Both reliability and validity are requirements for the design and the measurement of research. At the level of research design, the researcher examines the conclusions and asks whether they are true and repeatable. The internal validity of qualitative design means that there is a degree to which the interpretations and concepts have mutual meanings for the participants and the researchers. There are various strategies that increase internal validity, namely:

(a) Duration of data collection

This provides opportunities for continual data analysis and comparison, so as to refine ideas. In the context of this study, it will be incumbent upon the researcher to see to it that there is a sufficient period for collecting and analysing data.

(b) Participants’ language

Informant interviews are matched closely to the participants’ language. The informant is viewed by some social science researchers as both pejorative and inadequate to capture the relationship between the researcher and the individual providing information (Gilchrist 1992:70).
(c) **Field research**

Silverman (1992: 28) shows that field research's flexibility allows theory development to be pursued. Participant observation and in-depth interviews are conducted more accurately. Historically, it occurs in natural situations.

(d) **Discipline and subjectivity**

Research self-monitoring, called discipline and subjectivity, submits all phases of the research process to continuous and rigorous questioning and re-evaluation. Qualitative research is criticised frequently as lacking rigour, as being subjective rather than objective, as producing soft results, and as lacking generalisability beyond the individuals and circumstances of study (Zyzanski et al. 1992:244).

(e) **Threat to internal validity**

Threats to internal validity are selection attrition, observer and alternative explanations.

(f) **External validity of qualitative designs**

Schumacher and MacMillan (1993:394) define external validity as the degree to which the research design is adequately described, so that researchers may use the study to extend the findings to other studies.

(g) **Threat to external validity of qualitative designs**

According to May (1997:173) qualitative content analysis starts with the idea of process, or social content, and views the author as a self conscious author addressing an audience under particular circumstances. There are limitations to external validity of qualitative designs such as selection of effects, setting effects, historical effects and theoretical effects. Qualitative research thus presents facts in a narration with words. It is based
more on what is called a naturalistic phenomenological philosophy, which assumes that multiple realities are socially constructed through individual and collective definitions of the situation.

If the researcher looks at the research purpose, it may be found that qualitative research is more concerned with understanding the social phenomenon from the participants perspectives. In this study the researcher should identify constraints in *curriculum development*. The researcher should also state needs, specify outcomes, identify and analyse alternative strategies, and establish selection criterion as reflected in figure 3.4. In this thesis the researcher can give examples of *grade 1 teachers* who are implementing this new approach of *OBE*. To find out which methods of teaching and learning they are using when facilitating the learning process in the classroom situation, this can be done by means of asking questions through interviews and questionnaires (Bogdewic 1992:56).
Figure 3.4. Curriculum development Steps using Systems Approach

Adapted from Saylor (1993:109)
Willms, Johnson, White, Miller and Crabtree (1992:190) show that qualitative studies enable investigators to examine problems and events from the perspective of the actor. A qualitative researcher uses an emergent design and makes decisions about the data collection strategies during the cause of the study. To add to the above understanding of the social phenomenon, the researcher also, needs to participate in the life of those actors in a research role. In other words the design of that particular research will be determined by the information collected and interpretation thereof, that is, it is established after the implementation of data collection strategies.

Qualitative scholars emphasise the importance of data collected by a skilled, prepared person which is marked by disciplined subjectivity, self-examination, criticism of the quality of the data obtained, and contains an indication of the problems encountered. To elaborate on the above, qualitative research needs skills, commitment and self-control so that objectivity and, constructive criticism of the collected information should be maintained. When it comes to the importance of the context in the study, the qualitative researcher believes that human actions are strongly influenced by the setting in which they occur, i.e. the conditions and circumstances of the phenomenon need to be considered (Gilchrist 1992:74).

In terms of Miller and Crabtree (1992:10), qualitative research is a "naturalistic enquiry". It is thus the use of non-entering data collection strategies to discover the natural flow of events and processes, and how participants interpret them. The "naturalistic" concept here refers to phenomenology. That is, the situation should not be disturbed. It should be studied as it is in a non-disturbed environment, and the researcher, too, should interrupt and report the results as they are without modifications. In qualitative research, the active observation and participation of the researcher is emphasised. However, to be objective in interpreting the events and results, the researcher needs to abandon his or her state of mind, beliefs and predetermined conceptions.

To study and analyse the object of study in a "particular context" means that the research should be specific. Therefore generalisation is usually not the immediate purpose of the
qualitative researcher. Objectivity and neutrality are encouraged, rather than traditional beliefs. For example, to observe “one woman driving recklessly” and then quickly conclude that “all women are bad drivers” can taint the research through men’s traditional views. Although the field of study is specific and limited, to reach a point of generalisation needs disciplined subjectivity. The issue here should be a developed context-bound generalisation by probing deeper into the context, until a large, representative population from a small field is covered (Gay 1996: 219).

Willms, Johnson, White, Miller and Crabtree (1992: 189) stress that qualitative approaches often are viewed as a vehicle to generate hypotheses and to identify problems for later positivistic research. The primary sources constitute firsthand information and knowledge such as eyewitness reports and original documents. The eyewitnesses might be local people residing in the particular setting where research is conducted.

In the preceding discussion, it was evident that qualitative research is a naturalistic inquiry which states that multiple realities are socially constructed through individual and collective definitions of the situation. Because qualitative study involves active involvement of researchers, grade 1 teachers are the best people to collect intensive data on many variables. In this cases the variables refer to the school, grade 1 teachers, learners and the curriculum over an extended period. The researcher will elaborate on qualitative research as a remedy for SBCD problems in the subsequent discussion.

3.12 QUALITATIVE RESEARCH AS A PANACEA IN SBCD PROBLEMS

SBCD implies teacher participation. This statement can be problematic, because it might indicate that other stakeholders such as parents, the principal and the community are not important participants. This problem can however, be solved by applying qualitative research methods, because the relationship between the researcher and the researched subject would be close and based on a position of their equality as human beings. Therefore qualitative research designs will create an atmosphere of equality (compare chapter 1, item 1.6.5, chapter 2, paragraph 2.1.2.6, chapter 4, item 4.3.3 and chapter 5.
item 5.1). between grade I teachers, principals, learners and the community at large
because they are characterised as unique and also flexible (Zyzanski et al. 1992:232).

Kuzel (1992:31) in support of Zyzanski et al. (1992:232) avers that qualitative research
generally begins with theory that is to be modified in the context of the study. Qualitative
research methods have been commonly used in research documenting the experience of
SBCD, and in the research into the functioning of organisations, though it has been of
being used less frequently in the assessment of outcomes of treatment. This is because
the testing of causal hypotheses takes place in a context that subscribes to the traditional,
positivist view of science, which requires adherence to the scientific method and uses
experimental research designs and standardised methods. While qualitative methods are
not designed to test causal hypotheses, it is appropriate for the investigator to exercise
curiosity and to devise qualified hypotheses about cause and effect relationships in
relation to the phenomenon observed. The qualitative investigator has the advantage of
getting close to the research material, and can obtain a great deal of in-depth information
that can be tested in subsequent quantitative studies if necessary and appropriate.

Print (1993:21) maintains that SBCD does not of necessity need to be a whole-school
exercise. The exercise in SBCD could apply to a few classes. This might pose problems
because others will necessarily be spectators and this could create ineffective teaching in
the school. Qualitative research can solve this problem because the qualitative research
emphasis on process has been particularly beneficial in educational research, in clarifying
the self-fulfilling prophecy. This is the idea that learners’ cognitive performance in
school is affected by teachers’ expectations. Qualitative strategies have suggested just
how the expectations are translated into daily activities, procedures and interactions
(Biklen 1992:29).

SBCD has its own problems that can easily be solved if qualitative research is
incorporated during the solving process. Concerning the definition of SBCD, different
authors come up with closely related definitions which differ in their connotations.
Skilbeck (1990:2) defines *curriculum* in SBCD as internal and organic to the institution,
thus not an intrinsic imposition. Print (1993:30) regards SBCD as the development of a curriculum or an aspect of it, by one or more teachers in a school population, that is, an on-site resolution, in curriculum terms, of problems experienced with the existing curricula.

Skilbeck (1992:3) says that the development is done internally, and is thus also organic to the school. It means that grade 1 teachers and the principal are responsible for the development of the curriculum of their school or institution without input from the community and the administrators who are knowledgeable regarding curriculum issues. It is the duty of the qualitative researcher to visit the situation and make a thorough analysis, taking into consideration the different (stakeholders) the researcher will obtain information from. This researcher will use purposeful sampling where the grade 1 teachers are going to be interviewed concerning the development of the curriculum in their institution.

The principal and the grade 1 staff may, for instance, decide to incorporate Technical Education, to be taught right from Grade 1 onwards as we are living in a technological world which is in dire need of technical skills. The researcher must then see to it that the proposed development is in line with the needs of the learners in the particular school. The society must also benefit from the development done and it must have a purpose. Grade 1 teachers are also expected to be good researchers in order to evaluate the curriculum at their institutions. The development of curriculum must be done, but the community at large must be involved before implementation takes place. Parents must have a say in the education of their learners, so that they should be involved in the decision-making and development of the curriculum (Schein 1992:83).

3.12.1 Process evaluation in SBCD

Process evaluations are aimed at elucidating and understanding the internal dynamics of programme operations. They focus on the following kinds of questions: What are the factors that come together to make this programme what it is? What are the strengths and
weaknesses of the program? How are clients brought into the programme and how do they move through the programme once they are participants? What is the nature of staff-client interactions? In this case, such questions refer to the role played by grade 1 teachers in SBCD in the Northern Province.

Process evaluations most typically require a detailed description of programme operations. Such descriptions may be based on observations and/or interviews with staff, clients, and program administrators. It should however be noted that tension exists between subjectivity and objectivity in the interviewing process (May 1997:114).

Bookbinder (1992:192) stresses that the process focus in an evaluation implies an emphasis on looking at how a product or outcome is produced, rather than looking at the product itself, that is, it is an analysis of the processes whereby a program produces the results it does. This is illustrated in figure 3.6. The process evaluations are developmental, descriptive, continuous, flexible and inductive. The researcher first needs to find a process, to improve that which is based on the needs of the grade 1 teacher. Once boundaries are established the researcher needs to be organised in order to become more knowledgeable. The knowledge the researcher accumulates in a qualitative form will enable him to improve the process by formulating guidelines. It is also incumbent upon researchers to obtain information about the person's operation. It is through this knowledge that the researcher will clarify what is known about the process. The researcher can realize this by gaining an understanding of how the process differs over time and of the causes of process variation. The process of improvement can be based on sources of variations in process (Dunn et al. 1994:93).
Figure 3.5 The Focus Strategy

Adapted from Bookbinder (1994:193)
Furthermore, the process evaluations require sensitivity to both qualitative and quantitative change in programmes throughout their development, which means becoming intimately acquainted with the details of the programme. They consider not only formal activities and anticipated outcomes, but they also investigate informal patterns and unanticipated consequences in the full context of programme implementation and development. Finally, they usually include the perceptions of people close to the programme about how things are going. A variety of perspectives may be sought from stakeholders with dissimilar relationships to the programme – inside and outside sources may provide information on how to improve their present situations. The future is the anchor: all planning starts from insights into learners’ future life-roles. Future behaviours become the outcomes towards which all teaching and learning are geared (Naicker 1999:87).

Process evaluations are particularly useful for revealing areas in which programmes can be improved as well as highlighting those strengths of the programme which should be preserved. They are also useful in permitting people not intimately involved in the programme – for example, external funders, public officials and external agencies – to understand how a programme operates.

3.12.2 External Evaluation in SBCD

The opinion of self-critical community in SBCD entails a genuine acceptance of School-Based Curriculum development as an autonomous task team. This in turn, yields a crisis of responsibility, which is a bone of contention in SBCD.

Pitman and Maxwell (1996:762) point out that participant observation in evaluation research may be more observational. With regard to school-based curriculum, developing team as autonomous implies that responsibility is a two-way process. Those who control the distribution of resources are responsible for performance. Evaluation in SBCD must include both these elements. It must inquire into the quality of the work done, and into the conditions and available opportunities which contain what can be done.
The process involved in SBCD and the evaluative aspects of SBCD should be seen as negotiations between the various parties involved in the school. The word negotiations is stressed because the community of participants in SBCD must see itself as having been engaged collectively at all stages of the process. For instance, the researcher cannot argue that the subjective judgements of grade 1 teachers have validity and then argue that the similar processes employed by parents have none. The crux of the matter is that the range of skills seen as currently available in schools can be effectively widened (Shiundu and Omulando 1992:18).

Print (1993:18) says that evaluative approaches which require the services of an external agency are prevalent. If it appears necessary that there be an external validation of SBCD, then external evaluation may be required. If a particular SBCD is controversial, then an independent evaluation by a disinternal group may be of necessity. Furthermore, it should be noted that external evaluations of SBCD should be meta-evaluations of the school’s own internal evaluation processes. Otherwise, outside evaluation may be varied as a challenge to the integrity of the school in general; the purposes of SBCD are best served by supporting and enhancing the capacity for self-criticism in the school, not by calling the group to account for the quality of the outcome itself.

3.12.3 Participation in SBCD

Brady (1990:14) avers that the role of one or more teachers in the development of curriculum is vital. It means that one or more grade 1 teachers may have authority in the development of the curriculum. It appears that not all teachers of an institution are to take part in the development process. It is thus wise to involve all grade 1 teachers, as well as the immediate society and a representative of the school governing body, stakeholders, and business people in the development of the curriculum. The needs of the community and learners should be taken into account during the process of curriculum development. Qualitative research indeed plays an important role in education today, because nowadays grade 1 teachers are to be engaged in research process and can compare the education they offer with that of other countries by means of thorough research. Problems
experienced with the existing curricula must be solved by means of making the curriculum innovative and able to meet the needs of the learners, as well as those of the community at large. Curriculum development is activated by qualitative research because the researchers are involved in addressing educational needs, taking proper cognisance of the learners’ needs and the community (Sergiovanni 1992:66).

In this section the researcher will focus on the problems identified by Print (1993: 21) and try to come up with a mechanism of solving them. To start with, assumptions about the world in connection with qualitative research should be noted. Qualitative research is based more on what is called a naturalistic phenomenological philosophy, which means that it is to observe the phenomenon as a reality. In SBCD people are involved and encounter problems. Since problems are obstacles that hinder progress they need strategies are needed to solve them. In the process of SBCD one of the problems is that of assuming that teachers will be involved in the whole process, without asking them how and what they think about the proposed project.

Deyhle et al. (1992:636) stress that qualitative data are always held up to the charge that they only constitute the single opinion of a subjective observer. In order to avoid waste of resources and time, a person who might be interested in this kind of project should take the initiative to first discuss SBCD with all the stakeholders, particularly the grade 1 teachers. The researcher should find out whether there is enough time to carry out the whole process, i.e. planning, and after planning then reflect and assess to see whether the curricula are being developed.

The question to be addressed is how could one start such a project? A meeting with agenda-driven outcomes can be held so that the people who are going to participate can have a chance to state their position. Another method that can be utilised would be interviewing the prospective stakeholders to find out whether they have expertise as far as SBCD is concerned. If not, a workshop could be organised for training all the stakeholders, based on the results and recommendations of qualitative research (Slater and Tedlie 1992:47).
Bogdewic (1992:46) maintains that the fundamental reason to select participant observation, over other research techniques, relates to the significance of the cultural context in answering the research question. It is through qualitative research that the teachers and management of a particular institution will voice their opinion concerning the whole issue. The purpose of qualitative research is to understand the social phenomenon from the participants’ perspectives, i.e. the reasons for a problem, e.g. a threatening school climate in which numerous resisters are refusing to co-operate or even to engage in the SBCD. The manager of that institution may be failing to see the importance of SBCD. The researcher should thus also participate in the life of those who are experiencing the problems, and also be personally involved in the whole situation. The researcher will then have to discuss this with the manager as well as the grade 1 teachers.

Norr (1994:116) shows that qualitative research is labour intensive. Through qualitative research, a researcher will be able to understand the reluctance of grade 1 teachers when it comes to planning or policy-making. Implementation can also be looked at if there are not enough funds for professional development and relief for grade 1 teachers’ assistance. Here fundraising strategies could be embarked on before the project commences. The participants will then be able to state their needs beforehand and all the problems pertaining to funds can be resolved timeously.

Qualitative research will enable the researcher to talk to each and every individual grade 1 teacher and in the process he or she will discover those who are interested and those who are not. After these discussions the researcher will be in a position to address all the problems, to motivate those who need to be motivated and to give them the assurance that he or she will be helping them. Powerful lobbies, can be easily identified through qualitative research, especially through interviews or questionnaires. Qualitative researchers write up analyses, which should be at some level of interpretation and abstraction beyond the interview texts (Morse 1994:60).
After finding the problems, e.g. grade 1 teachers moving from one school to the other or other disturbances, a researcher may recommend that somebody should be exempted from particular duties. From the above discussion it is clear that qualitative research has many advantages because it can explain every situation for others to understand. In fact, qualitative research, including qualitative evaluation, is and must be guided by a continual process of researcher decisions and choices (Pitman and Maxwell 1996:753). These are just a few examples to indicate how qualitative research can be useful in SBCD. It will be required to describe problems, strategies, content, methods and many other aspects adequately. This will enable the participants and all interested parties to understand precisely what SBCD entails.

Herbert (1992:129) argues that participants have a right to raw data, but the conclusion drawn are the opinions, and therefore the responsibility, of the researcher alone. Qualitative research can operate in conjunction with SBCD because the participants in SBCD will need a supervisor. In this case the supervisor will be a researcher who will be expected to explain some of the findings to the participants. In concluding this section, it is important to note that basic research recommendations followed by qualitative action research findings could form a strong foundation on which SBCD can be built. All the identified problems should be clear and tentative answers could also be given for the development of a new curriculum. The SBCD should be preceded by qualitative research because it is readable and reliable, since it takes the real situation into account.

3.12.3.1 The design implementation gap

Burton (1992:17) pointed out that SBCD is a new name for an old idea. The idea is that the best place for designing the curriculum is where the learner and the teacher meet. Qualitative research is based on the fundamental beliefs that events must be studied in natural settings, that is, be field-based, and that events cannot be understood unless one understands how they are perceived and interpreted by the people who participated in them. In other words the involvement of grade 1 teachers, learners and parents in school curriculum development helps to narrow the design-implementation gap because all
stake-holders are involved. By using such qualitative research methods, the process of *curriculum* dissemination and innovation becomes viable due to the fact that people are participating in the designing and implementation of the *curriculum*.

A *curriculum* is usually designed from the centre (government) and then disseminated to the people on the periphery. The *curriculum* content, and the learning resource, thus are all designed from the top, and the teacher and learner are expected to implement and use them. Critics of this style of *curriculum development* regard it as undemocratic, and an infringement of the professional rights of *grade 1 teachers*. Unless *grade 1 teachers* and learners have a sense of ownership of the *curriculum*, there is always likely to be a problem focused on the design-implementation gap. Shifts in the physical arrangement of participants in space often accompany shifts in the social arrangement of participation (Erickson 1992:218).

It should also be noted that there are a lot of problems concerning *SBCD*. For instance, the *grade 1 teacher* in a school is seen as an agent of change. He or she understands the process, of *curriculum development*, but the biggest problem is his level of expertise, motivation and inadequate resources. This means that if all people are involved in *SBCD* they will share ideas which will make it easier for them to accept the proposed *curriculum* because *SBCD* does not centre all *curriculum* decisions on the school, it also uses other resourceful agencies (Lee and Zeldin 1996:28).

Brady (1990:21) shows that teachers should approach an understanding of the situation and the possibility of changing that situation in a piecemeal way. *SBCD* in fact requires various support structures and a developed teacher capacity to use the structures that are available to teachers. It cannot be introduced in isolation and it cannot be introduced as an effective reform, unless other structural changes take place, such as the provision of *grade 1 teachers’* resources centres. An objection against *SBCD* is that it confers excessive powers on the teacher and takes insufficient note of the participatory principle which requires a much greater diffusion of power, to learners, parents, the community
The researcher believes that the absence of SBCD brings disunity in policy, lack of uniform provision, varying standards and opportunities.

SBCD problems can be addressed by using qualitative research because it allows the parents, grade 1 teachers, learners and even the authorities to consult as widely as possible. Experts in curriculum studies could be drawn in, so that they could help the curriculum developers. It is a well known fact that grade 1 teachers are by virtue of their training not curriculum experts, and as such they should be involved in curriculum development only after they have been workshopped, in other words those involved need to be taught skills on how to design and develop a curriculum. Grade 1 teachers, if suitably trained, can act effectively as curriculum developers, but part of the necessary support system for SBCD is an extensive in-service education programme. At times, grade 1 teachers have to accept learners' values as well as integrate the natural characteristics of learners during the act of teaching (Shiundu and Omulando 1992:217).

Qualitative research could be used to address problems that are found in SBCD because so many people are involved with the result that they come up with innovative ideas, which are then deliberated until people reach consensus. Qualitative research is able to lead people to work in teams, and they co-operate with the ultimate aim of formulating a curriculum which is free from personal prejudice or bias. In other words, the use of qualitative research in SBCD eliminates personal influence as ideas, decisions, skills and experiences are shared by all the stakeholders concerned. In educational research, it has been commonly found that many researchers are themselves teachers in their profession. Therefore it is not surprising that much educational research is carried out in the school where the teaching and learning occur. The data collected at school can be used to generate interpretations (Stewart in Miller and Crabtree 1992:551).

According to Gay (1996:210) the unit of ethnographic study in educational research is typically the school, and specifically the classroom, which is the primary field site where grade 1 teachers and learners engage. Because ethnographic study involves the active participation of researchers, grade 1 teachers are the most suitable people to collect
intensive data on many variables. In this case the variables refer to the school, *grade 1 teachers*, learners and *curriculum* over an extended period of time.

3.12.3.2 Shortcomings of *SBCD*

It is imperative to note that it is not solely the positive aspects of readiness for *SBCD* that require consideration. It has been found that in some schools *grade 1 teachers* and other administrators oppose the institution-based *curriculum* when it is introduced to their individual schools. Thus it is possible that free interchange of opinions is hindered by actual misunderstanding and resentments, especially in the minds of the old and the young. The negative aspects which are problematic for the *SBCD* are stated below. The first category of problems highlighted by Print (1993:22), include:

- a lack of support structures for teachers and school principals
- lack of teachers experienced in *SBCD*
- The conformity syndrome of administrators and teachers reduces creativity

The question at stake is how qualitative research can be strategically used to address *SBCD* problems. As it is known that qualitative research is characterised by active observation and situation analysis at an overt level, this implies that to understand the problem of study, the educational researcher must be in the real situation. This is where the problem is, so that the research problem of interest, that is *SBCD*, can be refined. Changes in the school *curriculum* are not necessarily the expression of the school's *curriculum development* policy, but more the usual growth of *curriculum* by accretion can be refined (Brady 1990:12).

In reference to the three typical problems above, the solutions can be derived from teamwork participation of *grade 1 teachers*. No single or few individuals must be given the first privilege to go to the field site (school) and only after a certain period begin to formulate a framework for the site analysis. These individuals should work together with
the grade 1 teachers in the practical situation, by staffing them with support structures until grade 1 teachers become experienced in their own SBCD. Grade 1 teachers should be motivated to increase their self-esteem, e.g. in analysing learning outcomes, learners’ outcomes, in constructing tests and working in planning groups. The educational authorities should constantly provide advisory and specialist consultancy services.

On the other hand, referring to the problems of SBCD, Skilbeck, in Lee and Zeldin (1996:34), examines a second category of problems. The following are typical examples:

- a rapid staff turnover;
- a complexity of issues and managerial problems;
- a tendency of schools to revert to earlier forms of traditional control and organisations if the pressure for change is not continuous.

The problems above suggest that field research is necessary for solving SBCD problems. Through qualitative research, the idea of a few external individuals from central government going into schools should change from problem preformulations to specifications of precise activities that are to be observed. This is perceived as the analytical framework within which the study is to be conducted (Gay 1996:11).

In order to avoid the individual school abandoning the SBCD, there continuous optimising studies should be carried out. The individual grade 1 teachers in their respective schools should constantly keep on researching diverse ways of successful teaching and learning programmes with a range of possible strategies of change in mind. Grade 1 teachers should remain adequately versed in all theoretical models to avoid the tendency of rejecting what they cannot easily apply in classroom situations.
3.13 WAYS OF PRESENTING QUALITATIVE WORK

3.13.1 Synopsis of the resulting theory

There are two major ways of presenting qualitative work. The first is to present a synopsis of the resulting theory - to serve as a guide for the reader – and then follow this with the supporting data. The second style is to present the result as the theory was developed, so that the reader shares the insights and the conclusions, bit by bit, step by step. In both cases, by the time the readers have reached the end of the section on results, they will share the researcher’s insights and conclusions. In other words, qualitative research should be an inductive approach to data analysis (Leedy 1993:140).

The conclusions should be clear, with alternative explanations and hypotheses systematically excluded, and with in-depth descriptions that vividly portray each point. Examples should be added judiciously as informants’ quotes, exemplars, and case histories provide richness. Sub-headings should be used to keep the reader on track and to highlight each point. In this thesis, a heading on chapter delineation or division in chapter 1 is appropriate because it presents a synopsis of the resulting theory which serves as a guide for the reader. By the time a reader arrives at the resolution everything with regard to grade 1 teachers and their experience in SBCD should be clear.

3.13.2 The use of participants’ quotes

May (1997:140) avers that the effective use of participants’ quotes is important, but that they should only be used if a participant has made a point in a manner more explicitly than could be expressed by the researcher. Except in the case of presenting unwelcome results, each point should be clearly described before the quote is used, so that the quote simply serves as an illustration. The full range of diversity, or the characteristics and the synthesis of all the material pertaining to that section, should be included in the text. The quote thus supplements the text and provides human insight and dimension to the analysis. As discussed, quotes may be edited and extraneous material removed.
Kazel (1992:33) shows that qualitative inquiry generally begins with the theory or understanding that is to be modified and confirmed in the context of the study. One of the most common mistakes made by new researchers is that they consider almost all their data to be significant and all their quotes vital. A suggestion that any of the quotes are redundant or insufficiently important and should be removed is met with a storm of protest because it could create unnecessary problems.

3.13.3 Guidelines for qualitative research

In view of the preceding discussion the researcher proposes the following “rules” of qualitative research:

3.13.3.1 Do not mistake a critique for a reasoned alternative

One of the negative things which happens to some students who take courses in social theory is that they end up being convinced that a whole series of theorists are little more than congenital idiots. The researcher in this study will see to it that what he gets from grade 1 teachers in one school cannot be accepted as it is. There should be a comparison with other schools in the province. Grade 1 teachers have always been involved in some form of curriculum and evaluation. Individually and collectively their approaches are constantly influenced through such evaluative experiences as classroom observations, trial and error, and discussion with various co-workers, parents and students (Brannen 1992:39).

3.13.3.2 Avoid treating the actor’s point of view as an explanation

What the researcher ought to do is not merely to go out into the field to report people’s exciting, gruesome or intimate experiences. Yet, judging by the prevalence of what the researcher will call “native” interview studies in qualitative research, this indeed seems to be the case. Native interviewers believe that the supposed limits of structural sociology are overcome by an open-ended interview schedule and a desire to catch “authentic”
3.13.3.3 Recognise that the phenomenon always escapes

If for example, the school is present wherever it is invoked, then the worry of some qualitative researchers about observing “real” school life seems to be misplaced. Their assumption that the school has an essential reality looks more like a common-sense way of approaching the phenomenon with little analytic basis. Finding the school is no problem at all for lay people. In our everyday life, we can always locate and understand the “real” school by using the documentary method of interpretation to research beneath appearances, to locate the true reality. Grade 1 teachers are usually in the forefront in curriculum implementation and they can effectively implement only what they know, understand and are capable of doing. Logically, it is necessary to be aware of the teaching values, attitudes, skills, knowledge, experience, special strength and weaknesses.

The schools are the consumers of the curriculum and implementation is supposed to occur in them. The schools must therefore be ready and willing to receive the new curriculum. This readiness can only come about if the school system’s infrastructure, as well as resources at its disposal, are known (Shiundu and Omulando 1992:163).

3.13.3.4 Never appeal to a single element as an explanation

A further parallel between qualitative and quantitative work is that multi-factorial explanation is likely to be more satisfactory than explanations which appeal to what one has called a “single element.” Just because one is doing a case-study, limited to a particular set of interactions, does not mean that one cannot examine how particular kinds of saying and doing are embedded in particular patterns of social organisation (Wolcott 1992: 43). Most models portray SBCD as a continuous process, with no single fixed starting point.
But for the purpose of this study, there has to be a point of departure and a particular pattern of social organisation. *Grade 1 teachers* from various schools in *Northern Province* will thus share their own experiences with the researcher.

### 3.14 SYNTHESIS

In view of the preceding discussion, it became evident that qualitative research is descriptive and inductive. In this study, the researcher chose qualitative research because it starts with data collection and empirical observation and builds theoretical categories from relationships discovered among data. The researcher is interested in how *grade 1 teachers* interpret their day to day experiences in *curriculum development*. Seeing that qualitative research involves fieldwork, the researcher will physically go to the *grade 1 teachers* at their respective schools to observe or record behaviour in its natural setting. This refers to their *involvement* in *SBCD*. This study thus lends itself to truly doing qualitative research because it concerns itself with the experience of *grade 1 teachers* in *SBCD* in the *Northern Province*.

*Chapter 3 on the one hand outlined qualitative research as a strategy to address problems in SBCD while chapter 4 on the other hand will focus on research instruments and data analysis.*
CHAPTER FOUR

RESEARCH INSTRUMENTS, FINDINGS AND DATA ANALYSIS

Aim of chapter 4: Chapter 3 focused in part on qualitative research as a strategy to address problems in SBCD. The researcher chose qualitative research because of its being inductive, as it commences with data collection, empirical observation and builds theoretical categories from relationships discovered among data. Chapter 4 aims at addressing the implementation of research instruments, data analysis and the findings of the research process. It is on the basis of the research instruments that the researcher will be able to arrive at the findings of the study.

4.1 RESEARCH INSTRUMENTS

Spindler and Spindler (1992:69) affirm that research instruments are rarely used in the first stages of work. There are many research instruments and techniques for studying problems that have educational value. These research instruments and techniques can be used to collect and analyse data. A few of the more common ones, as highlighted in items 4.1.1 - 4.1.7 are the interview, questionnaire, observation schedule, cassette recorder, diaries, trialling and independent decoder. (Compare chapter 1 paragraph 1.2.2.1 item (c) and paragraph 1.3.2.1 item (c) and chapter 3 item 3.1). A brief examination of each of these techniques should give any research neophyte a clearer understanding of the research field as an entity. Although the researcher has already elaborated on some of the instruments and techniques in passing in chapter three, attention will be paid to each one of them in the following discussions.

This study is developed and validated by making use of the following research instruments namely: grade 1 teachers' interview (refer to Appendix A), school profile questionnaire (refer to Appendix B), grade 1 teachers' profile questionnaire (refer to Appendix C) and classroom observation schedule (refer to Appendix D). The
development of the instruments involved extensive research work. All the draft instruments were examined carefully to establish reliability and content validity.

Since the research instruments, i.e. interviews and questionnaires, were rather comprehensive tools that were implemented, some of the questions did not have immediate relevance to the investigated research problem in the study, as they served only to contextualise the investigation. As a result, only relevant aspects to the problem under study will be included for purposes of verification.

(A) **GRADE 1 TEACHERS' INTERVIEW**

This questionnaire induced factual information in order to determine whether grade 1 teachers understood what they needed to, as reflected in appendix A.

- **Learning Area taught**: Numeracy, Literacy or Life skills?
- **Teaching methods**: How were they used? Were they effective?
- **Didactic flexibility**: Was the teacher flexible or stereotyped?
- **Material used in the lesson**: How were materials used? Were they relevant?
- **Usage of other materials**: Which other learning materials did the teacher utilise? Was there any improvement?
- **Outcome of the lesson**: Did the grade 1 teacher achieve it? How?
- **Learning outcome**: Did the grade 1 learners achieve it? How did they demonstrate it?

(B) **A CHECKLIST AND QUESTIONNAIRE FOR SCHOOL PROFILE RESOURCES**

This questionnaire sought factual information regarding the position of the resources available for the implementation of OBE in grade 1 classes. The questionnaire comprised various items, as reflected in appendix B.
• **Identification of school:** e.g. name and address of school; title of respondent; gender; location of respondent authority and highest grade.

• **Characteristics of school:** e.g. region, type of school, location, total enrolment, total number of teaching staff, learner-teacher ratio, number of classes, number of *grade 1 teachers* and number of *grade 1* learners.

• **Facilities of school:** laboratories, libraries, ablution blocks, sports and recreation centres etc.

• **Educational facilities:** media equipment such as computers, overhead projectors, chalkboard and many others.

• **Administrative facilities:** bulletin boards etc.

• **Teaching method in grade 1 classes:** story-telling, group-work, discussion and many others.

• **Resources available for effective teaching:** checklist of *OBE* materials for *grade 1* classes and their availability and existing conditions.

• **Expenditure of school on *OBE* materials:** e.g. annual budget, money spent on *OBE* materials per grade.

(C) **GRADE 1 TEACHERS' PROFILE QUESTIONNAIRE**

The questionnaire was comprised of various items for *grade 1 teachers*. The items mainly sought information on classroom practice regarding the availability of learning materials and frequency of use, teaching methods, assessment procedures and, above all, *SBCD*. In addition, the questionnaire documented teaching qualifications of the *grade 1 teachers* as well as their teaching experience, as reflected in appendix C.

• **Biographical data:** e.g. gender, age etc.

• **Identification of school:** e.g. name of school and address, date of completion, title of respondent, Learning Areas taught in *grade 1*.

• **Teaching experience:** years of teaching *grade 1*.

• **Qualifications:** e.g. year obtained and institution.
• **Educational facilities:** media equipment such as computers, overhead projectors and many others.

• **Teaching methods:** discussion, problem-solving, narration, group-work and many others.

• **OBE training:** e.g. seminars and workshops attended, title of the topic, who conducted the training, where and when and for how long?

• **OBE training:** how effective was the training?

• **Assessment procedure:** was it continuous or summative?

• **OBE materials and resources:** e.g. materials supplied by the department and materials developed by the grade 1 teacher.

**D) CLASSROOM OBSERVATION SCHEDULE**

This questionnaire sought factual information about the classroom environment, interaction between grade 1 teachers and learners, teaching from an OBE approach, the activities offered by grade 1 teachers to the learners as reflected in D.

• **Classroom atmosphere:** conducive to learning, unconducive to learning and relaxed atmosphere.

• **Learning environment:** cupboard, usable chalkboard, table for the teacher, seating space, activities and lighting.

• **Classroom organisation:** teaching strategy.

• **Lesson preparation:** lesson planned, development of the lesson, homework planned and continuity considered.

• **Teaching methods:** understanding and explanation of learning content, general teaching style, methods used, circulation of teacher among learners, questioning to reinforce work covered, and use of teaching aids.

• **Communication:** grade 1 teacher responsive, teacher uses learners’ name, teacher facilitates effective interactive environment, teacher asks range of questions, teacher’s response to incorrect and correct answers, use of language appropriate to the level of the class and non-verbal actions.
• **Learner focus:** learners on task and learners' participation.

• **Reinforcement of learning:** type of written work set, examples, checking of written work, difficulties revealed, teaching aids and motivation.

Schensul and Schensul (1992:190) indicate that through research instruments, researchers convey expert knowledge of the field through their own experience and the ease with which they can collect additional qualitative data. Acknowledging this continuity of usage helped the researcher to understand something of the immense versatility and variety which the research instruments form. What was important was to grasp something of the breadth of their application, so that they could be adopted appropriately and sensitively in different contexts. The structure of any research instruments was determined not only by the manner in which the questions were pre-specified, but by the identity of the researcher e.g. interviewer and interviewee, the relationship between them, and the nature of the situation in which the researcher was being conducted.

In preparation for using research instruments (as opposed to simply deciding on the content, sequence and wording of the questions), it was therefore useful to consider carefully the particular research group i.e. the grade 1 teachers involved and their relationship with the researcher. This is not to say that the element of power could be eradicated from the relationship between the researcher and his studies. The research was framed within an institutional context which, was highly ordered and often finely stratified.

**4.1.1 The interview**

An interview in this investigation involved the gathering of data by face-to-face contact between the researcher and one or more respondents. (Compare chapter 3 item 3.2.1.3). Some advantages of this technique were that it allowed the investigator to obtain more confidential and intimate information, it did not require all questions to be rigidly structured beforehand, it enabled the researcher to form value judgements of the respondents, and it allowed the interviewees the chance to interact with the investigator.
A disadvantage was that the sample size had to be reduced because of the time required to set up appointments and interviews with each individual or group of respondents. Interviewing thus yielded complementary rather than comparable data (Wolcott 1992:20). Miller and Crabtree (1992:17) show that conversations are best recorded and obtained through interviews. Four forms of interviews served to illustrate the point of the present discussion: analytic, depth, individual and group interviews.

1. **Analytic** interview refers to a fact-finding conference between two persons, or a person and a group, for the purpose of determining certain information. This type of interview was not primarily concerned with time or depth but rather with certain specifics which were in question.

2. **Depth** interviews differ from analytic interviews in that they seek to get to the underlying thoughts of the individual. These thoughts involved deep-rooted psychological problems that the individual was thought to possess. A depth interview was associated with a long time span since it required systematic planning and structuring in advance and was not completed until after several meetings of the participants.

3. **Individual** interview refers to consultation between an investigator and one person.

4. **Group** interview refers to consultation in which the investigator meets and interacts with several persons simultaneously, all of whom are allowed to participate.

Some questions arose, and rightly so, over the use of these four terms. This was because an analytic interview was also taken in depth and because some researchers defined "interview" as concerning only one interviewer and one respondent.

In this study, the researcher utilised all forms of interviews, although the group interview received the most attention. It enabled the interviewees to thematise the phenomenon under investigation and made thinking explicit. During the interview, the interviewer avoided directing and leading questions which could have prompted the interviewees to
try to see their experiences through the eyes of the interviewer rather than through their own (Francis 1996:38).

4.1.1.1 Interviewing skills in the study

Sandberg (1996:137) points out that in order to be as faithful as possible to the individuals' conceptions of a particular phenomenon, the researcher must demonstrate how he or she has controlled and checked his interpretations throughout the research process. Basically, an interview is a conversation between two people, a conversation that is serious and purposeful. The following interviewing skills utilised by the researcher in this study are particularly practical and relevant in this investigation. They can also be modified, extended or ignored to suit individual styles.

(a) **Starting:** A specific formula was not used. Seeing that the interview was interviewer initiated, it was a good idea to explain the purpose of the interview and the interviewer's role. Long monologues were avoided, the interviewer had to talk, and open and honest communication was used for a fruitful dialogue.

(b) **Attentive behaviour:** An appropriate amount of eye contact was given, an appropriate body posture was adopted, and following the natural flow of conversation the interviewer indicated interest in the other individual and in what was being said.

(c) **Reflection of feeling:** As the interviewer focused on the content of what the interviewees said, paying attention to the affective part of the message was usually overlooked. By listening to and responding to feelings it was often possible to help the interviewees clarify, become more aware, and say what they really meant.

(d) **Paraphrasing:** the interviewer repeated in his own words what the interviewees said, to show that he was trying to understand the other's comments. This made
what had been said more concise and served as a check on the interviewer’s perception. It was useful to try paraphrasing feelings as well as thoughts.

(e) *Seeking clarification*: As a way of indicating that the interviewer was listening and trying to understand, he asked clarification by mirroring those words or ideas that were not clear in meaning.

(f) *Summarisation of feeling and content*: After a reasonably long period of time the interviewer recapitulated and condensed the interviewees’ deliberations. These overviews integrated the range of feelings and ideas. They also acted as a stimulus of the interviewer’s perceptions.

(g) *Silence*: Silence had meaning and was used by the interviewer as a deliberate response. It was neutral and empathic. The interviewer decided to do nothing because he did not know how else to respond. It was often necessary just to give the interviewees a chance to finish. Unless the interviewer was sure of his ground it was probably better to avoid lengthy or frequent silences.

(h) *Questioning*: The interviewer generally used questioning to obtain specifically needed information and to direct the other person’s talk from irrelevant to relevant channels. Open-ended questions were good stimulants for involving grade 1 teachers.

(i) *Interpretation*: Most of the skills referred to already focused on the interviewee. When interpreting, the interviewer attempted to deduce meaning from what had been said by adopting the other’s point of view. More than likely, however, interpretation of the interviewer’s concept of reality occurred and a new frame of reference was generated. This increased the interviewee’s understanding and helped in the conversation.
Of all the research instruments and techniques, the personal interview was certainly one of the most important. By this instrument the researcher in his studies established a confidential relationship and was able, as by no other method, to obtain information from grade 1 teachers. The interview enabled the researcher to improve his knowledge of the grade 1 teachers. Certain kinds of data were obtained only through the personal interview, for example, the personal appearance of the grade 1 teacher, or certain significant reactions on the part of the learner, such as a smile of assent.

In summary, in order to maintain interpretative awareness, the researcher withheld all previous experience of the phenomenon under investigation. This is how the researcher established the trustworthiness of outcomes within a phenomenographic reduction framework. Accordingly, this thesis mirrored such a stance in the pursuit of trustworthiness. It adopted a pervasive process where the emphasis of the approach was moved from inspection at the end of knowledge production (Kvale 1995:7).

The researcher posed the following direct questions to the grade 1 teachers:
APPENDIX A:  GRADE 1 TEACHER’S INTERVIEW QUESTIONS

1. What kind of teaching and learning problems do you experience in terms of School-Based Curriculum development? 

2. Which strategies should be used to address these problems in your School-Based Curriculum Development? 

3. How should you be involved in School-Based Curriculum Development in the Northern Province?
4.1.2 The questionnaire

Thompson (1996:736) says that questionnaires are viewed as a formulated series of questions. In a questionnaire, the completion of the form is done without any outside influence. Questionnaires were used by the researcher to convert information directly given by respondents into data. By providing access to what was inside somebody’s mind, this approach made it possible to measure what the respondents knew, liked and disliked and what they thought their problems were in the context of SBCD.

4.1.2.1 Types of questionnaires

There are two types of both interviews and questionnaires: the closed or structured questionnaire or interview and the open or unstructured questionnaire or interview. (See chapter 4 item 3.2).

(a) Open questionnaires

Reaves (1992:109) indicates that unstructured interviews and open questionnaires typically specify only a general area of interest and allow the respondent to explore that area in any effective way. Open questionnaires in this study did not suggest answers. They called for the respondents’ free response in their own words. No clues were provided and provision was made for a greater depth of response. The respondents revealed their frame of reference and the reasons for their responses. This kind of questionnaire was difficult to interpret, tabulate and summarize. In responding to open questionnaires, subjects omitted certain points or emphasized things that were of no interest to the researcher and of no importance to the research. For this reason, the researcher found it easier to use the closed questionnaire. However, themes which repeatedly came up in the open questionnaires, were identified and documented.
(b) Closed questionnaires

Closed questionnaires call for short, checked responses. They provide for a “yes” or “no,” a short response or for checking an item from a list of suggested responses. In this type of questionnaire, provision was made for responses which could not be anticipated. Providing an “other” category permitted the respondent to indicate what his most important reason was, one that the compiler of the questionnaire or interview did not anticipate. The closed-form questionnaire or interview was easy to complete, it kept the respondent on the subject, was relatively objective and was easy to tabulate and analyse. It also minimized the risk of misinterpretation. Considerable knowledge on the part of the researcher was, however, required to direct the course of the questionnaire into useful and informative channels (Dooley 1990:288).

A factor affecting the validity of a questionnaire was whether or not a signature was required. Validity is the degree to which a set of data represents what it purports to represent. Greater truthfulness was obtained when respondents remained anonymous. However, anonymity depended on the nature of the questions included, that is, whether or not sensitive information was sought. If identification of the subject is not important in the analysis of the results, it is thus advisable to allow respondents to remain anonymous (Suen and Ary 1990:157).

In summary, questionnaires were widely used to obtain information about current conditions and practices and to make inquiries concerning attitudes and opinions. It was on this score that the researcher decided to use a questionnaire.

Checking to see that instructions were sufficient and clearly worded, deciding what to do about non-respondents, and saying where they stood in relation to anonymity and confidentiality were a few other issues which needed clarification. For the questionnaires that were mailed to individuals it was useful to include a postage-paid return envelope; this was no guarantee of a return, but it helped. A telephone call to clarify the outcomes of the evaluation and answer any queries, as well as to remind individuals about
completing the questionnaires, was also useful. For the questionnaires that were given to groups of individuals, standard instructions helped minimise administrator bias. An interview schedule comprised a set of questions which were asked and recorded by an interviewer in a face-to-face situation with the person being interviewed. Both of these instruments used items that were either structured or unstructured. (See table 4.1 for the relative merits of interviews versus questionnaires).

**Table 4.1 The relative merits of the interview technique versus the questionnaire technique in educational research.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONSIDERATION</th>
<th>INTERVIEW</th>
<th>QUESTIONNAIRE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Personnel needed to collect data</td>
<td>Requires interviewers</td>
<td>Requires a clerk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Major expenses</td>
<td>Payment to interviewers</td>
<td>Postage and printing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Opportunities for response (personalisation)</td>
<td>Extensive</td>
<td>Limited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Opportunities for asking</td>
<td>Extensive</td>
<td>Limited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Opportunities for probing</td>
<td>Possible</td>
<td>Difficult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Relative magnitude of data reduction</td>
<td>Great (because of coding)</td>
<td>Mainly limited to rostering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Typically, the number of respondents who can be reached</td>
<td>Limited</td>
<td>Extensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Rate of return</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>Poor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Sources of error</td>
<td>Interviewer, instrument, coding, sample</td>
<td>Limited to instrument and sample</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Overall reliability</td>
<td>Quite limited</td>
<td>Fair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Emphasis on writing skill</td>
<td>Limited</td>
<td>Extensive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Howe (1992:66)

The structured items allowed only a few alternative ways of answering the questions, whereas the unstructured or "open-ended" items permitted a wide variety of responses. In the hands of a skilled interviewer, unstructured questions probed more deeply into a topic, and detected ambiguity better than structured items. Of the two instruments, an
interview schedule produced more truthful responses than a questionnaire because the interviewer had the advantage of personal observation, whereas the respondent who answered the questionnaire felt less compelled to tell the truth. In other words, a face-to-face relationship probed more deeply than an impersonal questionnaire. For more information regarding questionnaires, refer to appendices B and C.

**APPENDIX B**

**SCHOOL PROFILE QUESTIONNAIRE**

This questionnaire is to be completed by the *grade 1 teacher* for each selected school and is treated with strict confidentiality. Please tick □ appropriate responses where applicable.

**SECTION A: IDENTIFICATION OF A SCHOOL**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Name of school</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Address</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Title of respondent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Age</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) 19-25 □</td>
<td>(b) 26-40 □</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) 31-35 □</td>
<td>(d) 40 years and over □</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Gender</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Male □</td>
<td>(b) Female □</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Marital status</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) married □</td>
<td>(b) unmarried □</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) widow □</td>
<td>(d) divorced □</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) separated □</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Location of respondent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Circuit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8. Qualification
   (a) highest professional grade
   (b) highest academic level

SECTION B: SCHOOL CHARACTERISTICS

9. Province in which your school is situated
10. Region in which your school is situated
11. Area in which your school is situated

12. Type of school (tick one box)
    (a) Public
    (b) Private

13. In which area is your school situated? (tick one box)
    (a) Rural/ farm
    (b) Urban
    (c) Peri-urban
    (d) Township
    (e) Central Business District

14. Total school enrolment this year?
    (a) Number of boys
    (b) Number of girls

15. Total number of teaching staff
    (a) Male
    (b) Female

16. Learner - teacher ratio for the school
17. Please complete the following:
(a) Total number of grade 1 classrooms
(b) Total number of grade 1 teachers
(c) Total number of grade 1 learners

(please tick)
(a) 30 or less □
(b) 31-60 □
(c) 61-100 □
(d) 100-150 □
(e) 150 and above □

18. At what grade level are OBE materials first provided to learners?
(a) Grade 0 □
(b) Grade 1 □
(c) Grade 2 □
(d) Grade 3 □
(e) Grade 4 □
(f) Grade 5 □
(g) Grade 6 □
(h) Grade 7 □

SECTION C: SCHOOL FACILITIES

19. For the following items please indicate which resources are typically available and their current conditions for use in the classroom? Please rate them as follows:

(Tick where appropriate)
□ Poor = Facility is totally inadequate and unable to be utilised.
□ Fair = Resource fairly in use and meets minimum requirements.
Good = Resource adequately serves its purpose and frequently in use.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLASSROOM FACILITIES</th>
<th>AVAILABILITY</th>
<th>CONDITION OF FACILITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Classroom</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Chairs per classroom</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Room to sit and move around</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Writing board</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Teacher's table</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Teacher's chair</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Cupboards</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Storage space</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Textbooks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Resource materials</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Adequate lighting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Adequate ventilation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Air conditioner</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### SECTION D: ADMINISTRATIVE FACILITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADMINISTRATIVE FACILITIES</th>
<th>AVAILABILITY</th>
<th>CONDITION OF FACILITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Handbook of different learning areas</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Television</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Computer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photocopy machine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telephone</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fax machine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overhead projector</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Newspaper</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magazines</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toys</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video tapes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference books</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SECTION E: RECREATIONAL FACILITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RECREATIONAL FACILITIES</th>
<th>AVAILABILITY</th>
<th>CONDITION OF FACILITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sports field(s)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hall</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sports equipment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infrastructure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toilets</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access by road</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electricity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water availability</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
20. Do you think your school is supplied with sufficient materials for teaching and learning? If [Yes], support your argument

21. If No, support your argument
22. Think of what *grade I* teachers in your school typically do in their teaching. Estimate the amount of time typically spent on each of the following activities (tick one box for each activity).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>No time</th>
<th>A little time</th>
<th>A fair amount of time</th>
<th>A great deal of time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Integration of 3 different learning programmes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of learner-centredness method</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simulating critical and creative thinking of learners</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers' flexibility</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application of Outcomes-Based assessment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Learners doing things on their own</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessing learners through projects, portfolios and practical work</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Improvisation of learning materials</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Learners collecting learning materials such as newspaper and magazines</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using audio-visual equipment for teaching</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23. How often does each of the following activities typically occur? 
Tick one box per activity.

(a) Never  (b) Rarely  (c) Often
☐  ☐  ☐

(a) Invitation of guest speakers (e.g. from institution of higher learning or department)  ☐  ☐  ☐
(b) Talk about the implementation of OBE in Foundation Phase  ☐  ☐  ☐
(c) Did you attend OBE meetings with cluster schools?  Yes ☐  No ☐

24. How seriously do the following constraints affect the teaching of OBE in general? 
(Tick one box per constraint)

(a) Not serious  (b) Seriously  (c) Very seriously
☐  ☐  ☐

(a) Lack of qualified teacher  ☐  ☐  ☐
(b) Large class  ☐  ☐  ☐
(c) Lack of teachers to attend workshop about OBE  ☐  ☐  ☐
(d) Lack of teaching and learning materials  ☐  ☐  ☐
(e) Lack of commitment to teachers  ☐  ☐  ☐
(f) Lack of commitment to learners  ☐  ☐  ☐
APPENDIX C

QUESTIONNAIRE FOR GRADE 1 TEACHER'S PROFILE

The questionnaire is to be completed by grade 1 teachers for each selected classroom and is treated with strict confidentiality. Please tick appropriate responses where applicable.

SECTION D: SCHOOL – BASED ACTIVITIES

1. How are you involved in School – Based activities?

2. What is your attitude towards School – Based Curriculum development (SBCD)?
   - Positive □
   - Negative □
   - Other □

   2.1 Give a reason to the answer you chose above

3. What is your learners' attitude towards SBCD?
   - Positive □
   - Negative □
   - Others □

   3.1 Give a reason to the answer you chose above
4. What is the management’s attitude towards $SBCD$?
   Positive ☐
   Negative ☐
   Other ☐

4.1 Give a reason to the answer you chose above-----------------------------------------

5. What is the department’s role in $SBCD$?
   Organizing seminars ☐
   Organizing workshops ☐
   Organizing conferences ☐
   Other ☐

5.1 Explain why-----------------------------------------------------------------------

6. Did you attend any OBE training workshops as a grade 1 teacher?
   (Tick one box) Yes ☐ No ☐

6.1 If yes, please complete the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When last did you attend?</th>
<th>Title of the topic</th>
<th>Who conducted the training?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6.2 If no, please complete the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How do you cope when teaching</th>
<th>Where did you get knowledge</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. What was the duration of your training in OBE?
   - 1 to 3 months [ ]
   - 4 to 6 months [ ]
   - 7 months and above [ ]

8. Did the training suffice?
   - Yes [ ]
   - No [ ]

9. How useful did you find the training you received for OBE?
   - (a) Useless [ ]
   - (b) Useful [ ]
   - (c) Uncertain [ ]
   - (d) Most time useful [ ]

10. Do you agree that more time for training on OBE is required?
    - (a) Agree [ ]
    - (b) Disagree [ ]
    - (c) Strongly agree [ ]
    - (d) Strongly disagree [ ]

11. If you agree or strongly agree, do you think that OBE requires more training?


265
12. If you disagree or strongly disagree, what are your comments?

13. Which teaching methods do you most frequently use in grade 1?
   (a) Learner-centred method  
   (b) Group work method  
   (c) Independent study  
   (d) Small group discussion  

14. Why do you think the above method is more appropriate in a grade 1 classroom?

15. How often do you give written exercises to your learners?
   Daily  
   Weekly  
   Monthly  
   Other  

15.1 Elaborate on the answer you chose above-

16. How do you allow learners to complete tasks in class?
   (a) As individuals  
   (b) In groups  
   (c) Alone and in groups
17. Which method of assessment do you prefer when teaching?
(a) □ Performance Assessment
(b) □ Continuous Assessment
(c) □ Observation-based Assessment
(d) □ Portfolio Assessment
(e) □ Summative Assessment

18. How often do you provide activity-based learning to learners?
(a) Not at all □ (b) Sometimes □
(c) Most of the time □ (d) All of the time □
(e) Once or twice a week □

19. In your teaching, how often do you integrate themes from different learning areas?
(a) Not at all □ (b) Sometimes □
(c) Most of the time □ (d) All the time □

20. Which methods do you make use of when teaching grade 1 learners?
Question and answer □
Group-work □
Discussion □
Other □

20. Elaborate on the answer you chose above-----------------------------
-------------------------------------------------------------------
-------------------------------------------------------------------
-------------------------------------------------------------------

21. Which problems do you encounter in the classroom situation?
Academic □
Managerial □

22. How often do you use team teaching at your school?
23. How do you motivate your learners to participate in the classroom situation?
   - Intrinsic motivation [ ]
   - Extrinsic motivation [ ]
   - Other [ ]

23.1 Substantiate on the answer you chose above

24. How do you control written work (e.g., spelling) in overcrowded classrooms?
   - Effectively [ ]
   - Haphazardly [ ]
   - Other [ ]

24.1 Substantiate on the answer you chose above

25. How do you maintain discipline in overcrowded classrooms?
   - Difficult [ ]
   - Very Difficult [ ]
   - Easy [ ]
   - Very Easy [ ]
25.1 Substantiate on the answer you chose above---------------------------------------------

26. How often do you apply a principle of individualisation in such classes?
   Sometimes □
   Regularly □
   Never □

26.1 Support the answer you chose above-----------------------------------------------------

SECTION E: OBE MATERIALS AND RESOURCES

27. How did you acquire study and teaching materials?
   (a) Improvisation and self development Yes □ No □
   (b) From group work Yes □ No □
   (c) From workshops and seminars Yes □ No □
   (d) From teacher's unions Yes □ No □
   (e) From the department Yes □ No □

28. For the following items please indicate which resources are typically available and in what conditions they are for use in classroom? Rate them as follows:
   (Tick where appropriate)
   □ Poor = Facility is totally inadequate and unable to be utilised.
   □ Fair = Resources fairly in use and meet minimum requirements.
   □ Good = Resource adequately serves its purpose and frequently in use.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EDUCATIONAL FACILITIES</th>
<th>Availability</th>
<th>Condition of facility</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Foundation phase policy document</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Literacy Programmes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Numeracy Programmes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Life Skills Programmes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Teacher’s guide for the literacy programme</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Teacher’s guide for the numeracy programmes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Stationery packages for all the learners</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Newspapers and magazines</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Map</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Toys</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Dictionaries/ Atlases</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Language series</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

29. What are your main constraints with regard to OBE implementation in grade 1 classrooms?

--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

30. What would you require to be able to implement OBE effectively in your classroom?

--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
31. With your classroom experience, which suggestions would you give to the Department of Education regarding a lack of resources?

4.1.3 Classroom observation

A didactic situation, also termed a teaching-learning situation, occurs in the classroom where there are three major components namely the teacher, the learner and the learning content. (Refer to chapter 3 item 3.2.1.1). The observer should personally go into the classroom and observe all the activities taking place. Diagrammatically it might be represented as follows:

![Diagram of Teacher, Learner, and Learning Content]

Figure 4.1 Three major components in a classroom situation

Silverman (1992:9) shows that observation is held to be appropriate at a preliminary or exploratory stage of research. When new “inquiry-based” science courses were introduced in the United States, several research studies compared the achievement of students in “inquiry” and “traditional” courses. Some of the results seemed to be inconsistent and hard to interpret until it occurred to the researchers to check on how inquiry was implemented in classrooms using “inquiry” and “traditional” courses. Sure enough, some teachers were using an inquiry approach with a traditional course. If what happens in classrooms has an effect on the students’ learning, it seems to make sense to find out what is happening in the classroom. (Compare chapter 3 item 3.2.1 paragraph 3.2.1.1).
There are three main viewpoints from which the researcher observed in the classroom, namely, that of the grade 1 teacher, that of an external observer and that of the learners.

(a) *The grade 1 teacher:* The researcher asked the teachers what activities and techniques they used and how often. The reply was more likely to be accurate when the questions were specific, for example when grade 1 teachers were asked what they do when teaching a particular unit.

(b) *The external observer:* Spindler and Spindler (1992:72) show that observations are contextualised in the immediate situation in which behaviour is observed. An observer might be physically present in the classroom, or he might work from records such as video tape or audiotape. So much happens in a classroom, that observations are selective. In this study the observer selected some fairly simple aspects of the classroom to observe (e.g. how many learners does the grade 1 teacher interact with during a lesson? What proportion of the grade 1 teacher's questions require simple recall?)

(d) *The learner:* Every classroom contained a large number of acute observers, who are the learners. Although learners were not interviewed in this study, they could have been asked the same sorts of question as grade 1 teachers were asked by asking them to keep records of what they do during specific lessons. For detailed information regarding the observation schedule used in thus study, refer to appendix D.
APPENDIX D

CLASSROOM OBSERVATION SCHEDULE

A. LESSON REPORT OF A GRADE 1 TEACHER

1. Name of school: --------------------------------------------------------------

2. Address: ---------------------------------------------------------------

3. Grade: -------------------------------------------------------------------

4. Topic of lesson: --------------------------------------------------------

5. Learning Programme: ------------------------------------------------------

6. Time of lesson: -------------------------------------------------------

7. Date: -------------------------------------------------------------------

8. Number of learners in class: ----------------------------------------

9. Would you agree that the teacher started the lesson with a suitable introduction?
   (a) Agree ☐ (b) Disagree ☐
   (c) Strongly agree ☐ (d) Strongly disagree ☐

10. Would you agree that content was on the level (grade) of the class?
    (a) Agree ☐ (b) Disagree ☐
    (c) Strongly agree ☐ (d) Strongly disagree ☐

11. Did the teacher use a suitable method? Yes ☐ No ☐

12. Was the application suitable for the lesson? Yes ☐ No ☐

13. Did the teacher use teaching and learning media? Yes ☐
                                    No ☐
14.1 If your answer is yes to the above question, name them:

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

14.2 If your answer is no, elaborate.

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

15. Remarks:

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Researcher’s signature

Date

B. THE LEARNING ENVIRONMENT

The schedule is to be completed by the researcher during and after observing the lesson. Please tick relevant blocks in each row and comment where necessary.

1. In the classroom

(a) Cupboard or storage space Yes ☐ No ☐
(b) Usable chalkboards Yes ☐ No ☐
(c) A table for the grade 1 teacher Yes ☐ No ☐
(d) Enough furniture e.g. desks Yes ☐ No ☐
(e) Grade 1 teacher organises different activities Yes ☐ No ☐
(f) Adequate lighting Yes ☐ No ☐
C. **GRADE 1 TEACHER'S LESSON EVALUATION**

School: ________________________________

Subject: ________________________________

Topic: ________________________________

Language medium: ______________________

Date: ________________________________

Number of learners: ____________________

Grade: ________________________________

**CRITERIA**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EVALUATION</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Lesson preparation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1 Lesson design (notes, lay-out and quality)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 Teaching outcomes (full choice and suitability of subject matter)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL /20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EVALUATION</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. Presentation of lesson</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1 Introduction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Atmosphere (creating relationship)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Interest and attention</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Actualisation of pre-knowledge</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL /15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remarks: ____________________________________________

_________________________________________________________________

_________________________________________________________________

_________________________________________________________________

275
### 2.2 Exposition (mastery of learning)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a)</td>
<td>Teaching/learning media (quality usage)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)</td>
<td>Voice/language usage/questions (clear, well aimed, timing)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c)</td>
<td>Methods/techniques</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d)</td>
<td>Chalkboard work</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Flemarks:**

---

### 2.3 Conclusion and application (actualizing of learning content)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a)</td>
<td>Functionalisation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)</td>
<td>Attainment outcomes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c)</td>
<td>Time allocation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d)</td>
<td>Client control (disregard discipline)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e)</td>
<td>Didactical flexibility</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Flemarks:**

---

Remarks: 

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

276
### 2.4 Personality and appearance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>TOTAL /15</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Appearance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Behaviour, manner</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Teaching approach/style/attitude</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Observer: --------------------------  Date: -------------------------

### D. CLASSROOM ORGANISATION

2. In the course of the lesson, does the teacher make use of
   (tick one box in each row)
   (a) Whole class teaching?  Yes ☐  No ☐
   (b) Learners working in groups?  Yes ☐  No ☐
   (c) Learners working in pairs?  Yes ☐  No ☐
   (d) Learners working as individuals?  Yes ☐  No ☐
   (e) Other? Specify -----------------------------------------------

3. Lesson planned (written, evidence of resources and activities) ----------------------

4. Lesson planned with clear achievable outcomes -----------------------------------

5. Evidence of previous work in planning -------------------------------------------
E. OBSERVED LESSON

1. GENERAL INFORMATION

School: ___________________________ Date: ___________________________
Language: ________________________ Subject: _________________________
Grade: ____________________________ Topic: _________________________

Time allocation: ___________________

2. OUTCOMES

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 3. PRESENTATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Outcomes</th>
<th>Teacher Activities</th>
<th>Learner Activities</th>
<th>Media</th>
<th>Methods</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1 Introduction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 Exposition</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Conclusion and Application</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Lessen Observed by: ------------------------------

3. General Remarks: ----------------------------------

Example of worksheets (if applicable)

---

**F. REINFORCEMENT OF LEARNING**

9. Type of written work set -------------------------------

10. Examples given------------------------------------------
11. Written work checked (regularly, constructively)

12. Difficulties revealed in written work addressed

13. Teaching media

14. Indication that the teacher uses merit system for motivation (e.g. stars, prizes)

G. TEACHING METHODS

15. Explanation of learning content

16. General teaching style (teaching interesting, confident, motivating etc)
17. Example of questions asked in the class

18. Teacher's response to incorrect answers

19. Teacher's response to correct answers

20. Use of language appropriate to the level of the class

H. LEARNER FOCUS

21. Learners on task

22. Learners' involvement in lesson
23. Learners' interest and behaviour

---

24. Learners ask questions

---

I. COMMUNICATION

25. Teacher's positive reinforcement

---

26. The teacher uses learners' names

---

27. The teacher facilitates effective interaction between learners (in pair groups)

---

28. Describe how interaction takes place?

---

29. Teacher creates interactive environment (encouraging learner participation, relaxed and activity based)

---
30. Method appropriate to activities and outcomes

31. Clear, effective use of chalkboard

32. Teacher circulates among learners

33. Method of checking understanding

34. Questioning to reinforce work covered

35. Individual attention given where necessary

36. Use of resources
4.1.3.1 Report on classroom observation

(a) Use of materials during the lesson

In half of the lessons observed in this study both learners and grade 1 teachers used their books each day during the lessons. Worksheets, on the other hand, were used in less than a quarter of the lessons. The grade 1 teachers wrote the activities and the work they prepared on the board, with no support material or resources and apparatus used. Learners would copy the teachers' notes on the chalkboard as they wrote, which would at times take up to ten minutes per lesson. The manner in which grade 1 teachers also used the chalkboard seemed to lack coherence. They typically wrote anywhere on the chalkboard where there was space.

(b) Structure of the lesson

The duration of lessons differed on a daily basis, with the average time per period being about 30 minutes per day. Generally, the periods started with the grade 1 teachers checking homework previously given, either by just looking at the books whilst moving from desk to desk. While the teachers were marking these learners' work, other learners checked their own work in terms of the correctness or incorrectness of those whose work was being assessed by the grade 1 teacher. The grade 1 teachers chose some of the examples with common errors made by learners and demonstrated the correct methods to the whole class on the board. This process would take about 10 minutes. On some occasions the entire periods were only 15 to 20 minutes long, in which case the grade 1 teachers would only mark homework and give some new homework for the next day.

(c) Organisation of the tasks during the lesson

The grade 1 teachers organised tasks and activities so that learners would work individually with assistance from them. These tasks and activities consisted mainly of problems related to the work that was discussed. Learners also worked together as a class
with the teacher assisting them. In some schools there was never an attempt at groupwork
or learners discussing work with their peers. The grade 1 teachers would explain the
relevant work and then give learners some exercise which they completed in the
classroom. Classwork exercises were given every day and learners were expected to
work on these individually, without assistance from the grade 1 teachers. During lessons
learners just watched and listened passively and attentively to the grade 1 teachers'
explanations and demonstrations. A few of them asked questions, as per the grade 1
teachers' encouragement, upon which the grade 1 teachers would provide explanations
to the whole class. The majority of the learners hardly ever spoke in class and were
consequently neglected by the grade 1 teachers.

(d) Medium of instruction in the classroom situation

In the Afrikaans medium schools the grade 1 teachers presented their lessons in
Afrikaans, with the interactions between the learners and them and amongst their peers
also in Afrikaans. All the written activities were done in both Afrikaans and by using
mathematical concepts. Learners also completed their written activities in Afrikaans. In
the English medium schools communication was exclusively in English and mathematics
terminology was used. The same also applied here and there for the Tshivenda, Sesotho
sa Lebowa and Xitsonga languages.

The English medium schools also tended to have learners from other language groups.
Such learners, predominantly from the township schools, seemed not to be at ease with
English. They also tended not to participate in the lessons and no deliberate efforts were
made by the grade 1 teachers to accommodate them. Grade 1 teachers would pose
questions to the entire class, and only those learners who knew the answers responded by
shouting out the answers or by putting up their hands. Some of the grade 1 teachers
tended to supplement mathematics communication with metaphors intent on giving “real
life” meaning to the concepts dealt with.
(e) **Grade 1 learners’ involvement**

In most instances less than a quarter of the learners participated actively during the lessons. The dominant pattern in most of the lessons observed would entail learners listening to the grade 1 teachers for the most part. There were no demonstrations, with a few learners copying down some of the notes written on the chalkboard. Learners responded to the grade 1 teachers’ questions for a large proportion of the time during the lessons, and only asked questions about the work presented when something was unclear to them.

No learner-learner interaction took place in most of the lessons. In some instances learners did not even whisper to each other, whilst in cases where they interacted it was usually not linked to the lessons. Equally, the few learners who interacted with the grade 1 teachers were those asking questions. When learners asked questions, grade 1 teachers tended to respond by talking to the whole class. Individual learner responses to teacher questions were also interpreted by grade 1 teachers as indicative of the entire class’ understanding.

(f) **Form of assessment**

The main form of assessment followed by the grade 1 teachers entailed asking questions during the course of the lessons. Grade 1 teachers relied on learners’ oral responses to determine whether they understood the work or not, and provided them with both individual and class feedback. Learners were always given exercises, which were always checked the same day.

Although the grade 1 teacher encouraged learners to ask questions, they did not allow them enough time to reflect on what they might want to ask. The grade 1 teachers asked learners frequently during the lessons whether they understood the concepts and processes demonstrated or explained. They also checked previously learnt concepts and processes that they considered important for learners to know. Learners’ inputs were
however not taken into account in the whole process. They had to listen, and seemed to accept everything the teachers told them. Learners got feedback about their errors or misconceptions. This was done in a whole class setting and the incorrect solutions and strategies were used to demonstrate correct ones. Common errors and misconceptions were explained and demonstrated and the grade 1 teachers did further consolidation exercises. They constantly reminded learners of what they needed to know in colouring pictures.

(g) Grade 1 teachers’ instructional practices

The grade 1 teachers who were observed made the concepts to be learnt clear and explicit. They would, for example, thoroughly explain to the learners how to count from 1 to 10. Most of the learners were able to apply the rules supplied to them by the grade 1 teachers in a successful way. Learners were expected to study rules and processes so that they knew them by heart, and many of them were able to apply these concepts to other concepts in the lessons. Before the grade 1 teachers started with the next lessons they revised previous concepts and processes that they thought learners should know in order to proceed to new understanding. They would constantly remind learners that they were working from a synthetic approach and that they should remember all the previously learnt concepts and processes.

(h) Learning opportunities

Grade 1 teachers thus provided learners with opportunities to express their current understanding by asking questions and splitting learners into groupwork, prescribing classwork and homework. However, this was a process confined to interaction between the grade 1 teachers and learners. Learner to learner discussions were non-existent. Furthermore, understanding in the lessons observed mainly took the form of displaying knowledge. Thus grade 1 teachers provided learners with opportunities to demonstrate whether they knew how to carry out the procedures, rather than to express their conceptual understandings. Learners were provided with opportunities to practice using
concepts and processes only through oral answering of grade 1 teachers’ questions during the lessons. The grade 1 teachers presented the lessons at levels that they regarded as being fit for all grade 1’s, without taking into account learner differentiation. Though the content levels tended to be generally appropriate, little attention was given to learners who might have problems with the levels. All learners were engaged in examples varying from easy to more complex. Those who were competent and mastered the concepts were not allowed to demonstrate such competence in opportunities with additional and more challenging situations.

In cases where learners were introduced to new, appropriate and correct terminology, this was usually in an unplanned manner. In such cases, grade 1 teachers also failed to check learners’ understanding and misconceptions. Slower learners were mostly lost and had to struggle on their own to grasp the grade 1 teachers’ methods. Individual learners were not given opportunities for meta-cognition, learning about thinking, learning about learning and learning about the process involved. The grade 1 teachers did most of the communication and imposed formal language onto the learners without giving them a chance to relate their informal language to the formal mathematical terminology.

(i) Demonstrations

The grade 1 teachers tended to demonstrate how the mathematical concepts and processes work, though these were directed towards procedural rather than conceptual understanding. They generally relied on a few examples from the textbooks. On a few occasions the grade 1 teachers used abstractions and representations to demonstrate how new concepts and process function. They consistently attempted to build relationships among the concepts and representations. Such relationships were, however, not generalised and applied to problem solving and real life experiences.
Extrinsic and Intrinsic motivation

Lumadi (1997:77) shows that the most important fact about motivation is that it results from the learners' own interests and from the activities of play. Two types of motivation, namely: extrinsic and intrinsic have been identified. Extrinsic motivation results from such external factors as favourable circumstances, competition, prizes, certificates and many others. Intrinsic motivation on the other hand is closely related to the learning situation and is determined by such factors as the meaningfulness of education, the inner striving of the learner towards self-realisation, values, norms and standards.

In this study, the researcher found that learners were not involved in discussions, nor encouraged to discuss concepts and processes or to compare their interpretations of these with their peers. They were not encouraged to assist one another with tasks so that they could learn from each other, to explain, negotiate, and justify, or to assess each other's understandings. In one case the grade 1 teacher motivated her learners when she said:

"The learner who is the best in counting 1 up to 15 will get a prize of money."

(Which displays a serious lack of intrinsic motivation.)

4.1.4 Trialling

Thompson (1996:975) shows that trialling has to do with trying out or testing a thing. The main purpose of trialling in this investigation was to provide information during the development phase of a project that would suggest ways of improving the project. Materials of some kind were usually the focus. However, the trials provided the first opportunity to collect general evidence about the curriculum - educational potential, practicability, usage patterns and the like - as part of a wider curriculum evaluation. Another purpose of trialling was simply to find out whether the project was perceived to be of value and was, therefore, likely to be used.
The researcher's trial conditions were as close to the typical conditions of implementation as possible. Nevertheless, it was important to select situations where the materials or procedures had a reasonable chance of success. The researcher was aware of situations that guaranteed success at any price. A range of trial situations was included, varying from those where there was positive support to those where there was no reason to expect particularly positive trial conditions. Comparisons were possible across a range of commitments. More than one trial phase was allowed if possible, so that major restructuring could be contemplated after an initial trial. Later trials also allowed monitoring of the effects of modification.

Development testing was used within the development process (i.e. mini-trialling of fragments of the materials as they were produced). These helped the researcher to iron out some problems before a major trial phase. Development testing provided quick and informal feedback, and helped to prepare the ground for the major trial. The researcher's trials not only identified where modifications were needed, but also why they were needed. The insights of an observer, who witnessed the trials first-hand, provided an interpretative framework for others who wanted to understand the nature and worth of the materials at work.

Reports of trials were explicit about the trialling process: the role of the researcher, the selection of trial situations, reactive effects of the research study, and the like. Such information helped potential users and research study audiences to understand the way in which the trial conditions affected the use and potential of the materials.

4.1.5 Diaries

Thompson (1996:238) explains that a diary is a book for the daily recording of events or thoughts. A great deal of data can be recorded through the use of the simple diary. It is true that data collected in this way will often be subjective or impressionistic. A diary in this study provided an excellent way of starting in the business of systematic data-gathering. Entries in the diary were as detailed as time and recollection allowed. The
diary also gave the researcher in this study an opportunity to explore ideas about a problem and relevant evidence. As entries accumulated, it became possible to review them and discover what patterns emerged. Some patterns had to do with the redefinition of problems, and some patterns emerged from the observations themselves.

Biklen (1992:133) affirms that diaries can surface in the course of interviewing or participant observation. Because a diary is usually written under the immediate influence of an experience, it can be particularly effective in capturing people’s moods and most intimate thoughts. In keeping a diary, the researcher set aside more or less fifteen minutes at a regular time. The entries were made soon after the researcher arrived home. Experience shows that it is best to write up a diary while the events of the day are still clear in the researcher’s mind. To avoid accurate perceptions which could fade quickly, if too much time was left between the events of the day and “writing-up time,” the required entries were made at a particular point in time.

The researcher’s diary notes were schematic. They were intended to be “mind-stickers” or “memory-joggers” for the researcher, therefore were not intended for posterity. A diary was good for recording rather than for gaining global impressions of striking events. The diarist captured particularly vivid impressions gleaned from “critical incidents,” which were more telling about school life in general patterns than they were for recalling the minutiae of specific events.

4.1.6 Cassette recorder

Casley and Kumar (1999:89) suggest that tape recording eases the burden on the researcher, and moreover enables such a researcher to concentrate on conducting discussions. This research instrument was utilised by the researcher as a standard practice in more formal meetings. The instrument furthermore guaranteed greater reliability in this research project.
According to Lumadi (1995:34) the researcher is compelled to make use of a tape recorder when conducting interviews. Failure to make use of this instrument might yield pitfalls of forgetting valuable information from the interviewees. It was always advisable for the researcher to distribute pamphlets of typed transcriptions back to the interviewees. This received attention timeously, after the interviews had been properly conducted. Typed transcriptions that were corroborated by respondents were said to be reliable and valid. Where transcriptions were falsified by respondents, because of no correlation, they would be regarded as invalid and unreliable.

4.1.7 An independent decoder

Lumadi (1995:34) indicates that apart from the decoder, there should be an independent decoder. Transcriptions were given to a second decoder to analyse the collected data according to the protocol. The role to be played by the second researcher was to make his or her own contribution and interpretation. There was some agreement in as far as the conclusions reached by the two researchers were concerned. In a case where there was no correlation at all pertaining to the conclusion reached by the two various decoders, finality was sought.

Strauss and Corbin (1990:52) suggest that questions can be posed by an independent decoder during the analysis process. Should there be a discrepancy between the researcher's data and the findings reported by another researcher, that distinction should compel the former researcher to go back to the field to double check the origin of that discrepancy. This will enable the two researchers to iron out the discrepancies amicably and effectively. It is in this respect that the researcher sought an independent decoder to analyse the collected data. In the following discussion, the researcher will give an illustration of the outcome of the research investigation.
4.2. OUTCOMES OF THE INVESTIGATION

The researcher undertook a survey of the extent to which grade 1 teachers are involved as decision-makers in SBCD in the Northern Province. It was assumed that an analysis of the responses of grade 1 teachers, as well as information about the grade 1 teacher themselves, would elucidate the situation regarding the teaching of Literacy, Numeracy and Life Skills at the Foundation Phase level.

4.2.1. Piloting the study

It was desirable to run a pilot test on a questionnaire and to revise it according to the results of the test. This was a pilot test in which a group of grade 1 teachers were involved (to form part of the intended test population), but it was not part of the sample attempts to determine whether questionnaire items possessed the desired qualities of measurement and discriminability. The pilot study uncovered failings as well as areas of extreme sensitivity; that is, it enabled the researcher to debug his questionnaire.

4.2.2. Correspondence

A covering letter addressed to the respondent accompanied the questionnaire. This letter explained the purpose and value of the study and the reason why the respondents were included in the sample. The cover letter promoted the study to such an extent that the respondents were eager to reply to the questions. Respondents were made to feel that they could make a contribution to the study. The status of the person who signed the letter was of paramount importance as it was a persuasive factor in the return of the questionnaire. It was helpful for a covering letter to be accompanied by permission from the top structure of the government, for example government officials such as a regional director or area managers of schools. Refer to appendices A¹ to A³ for covering documentation used in this study.
It was possible for the respondents to remain anonymous. At any rate, respondents were assured that their responses would remain confidential. An offer was also made to share the findings of the study with the respondents. A stamped, self-addressed envelope was enclosed. For the respondents to remain anonymous, it was wise to include a postcard to be mailed separately by the investigator, indicating that the questionnaire had also been mailed. In this way, a record of each questionnaire was kept. In the subsequent discussion a report of the research ethics will be outlined.

4.2.3. Research ethics

4.2.3.1 Protecting the subjects

In this study appropriate steps were followed to avoid compelling respondents to take part in the study. The researcher explained that the study would be for educational purposes only. Embarrassing, harmful and sensitive subjects were avoided at all costs.

4.2.3.2 The right to non-participation

No subject was forced to participate in the study without consent.

4.2.3.3 The right to confidentiality

Subjects’ confidentiality was not at any time compromised, as their names were not used in the collection data. No private or secret information was to be divulged, as the right to confidentiality of the subjects had to be respected (Huysamen 1994:134).

4.2.3.4 Researcher’s responsibility

The researcher was to be responsible at all times, vigilant, mindful and sensitive to human dignity. All these criteria were adhered to in this investigative study. The subjects
were assured that nothing required, in either the questionnaire or the interview questions, would compromise them.

4.2.3.5 Personal integrity

The researcher had to possess personal integrity. The reader of a research report was thus able to believe that what the researcher said, really happened. The research findings of the study and data analysis are be examined in the forthcoming discussion.

4.3 RESEARCH FINDINGS OF THE STUDY AND DATA ANALYSIS

According to Bowden (1994:14) it is important to note that the outcomes of research are not just a list of categories of description obtained from a group of people. A particular category of description is always developed in terms of its relation with other categories of description. After data had been collected, the interviews were transcribed and the transcripts were subjected to rigorous analysis. This involved reading all the transcripts and drafting a set of categories of description drawn from these transcripts. Such categories and outcome spaces serve as tools to capture and communicate the features of conceptions (Bruce 1996:5).

Findings are based on the research instruments and literature review. Based on the analysis of data, the following themes which will be elaborated on in paragraphs 4.3.1-4.3.10 occurred repeatedly:

- The state of buildings in primary schools.
- Lack of resources.
- Unequal access to ownership in SBCD.
- Timing for curriculum implementation and knowledge explosion.
- Grade 1 teachers attitudes towards SBCD.
- Culture of teaching and learning.
- Professional growth and experience in SBCD.
• Inadequate discipline and *curriculum* management.
• Politics and teachers' unions.
• Multi - cultural education and *SBCD*.

4.3.1 The state of buildings in primary schools

In this study as opposed to general research, it became evident during the survey that the condition of buildings in primary schools in the *Northern Province* is grossly inadequate. (Compare chapter 2 paragraph 2.1.2.1 regarding school mission and chapter 6 item 6.2.1.1 paragraph (a) and chapter 5 paragraph 5.1.1.9). The total number of public primary schools in Northern Region is 686. Refer to table 4.2 for public primary schools per area.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AREA</th>
<th>PRIMARY</th>
<th>COMBINE PUBLIC</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Malamulele</td>
<td>119</td>
<td></td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mutale</td>
<td>108</td>
<td></td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sekgosese</td>
<td>83</td>
<td></td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soutpansberg</td>
<td>162</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thohoyandou</td>
<td>106</td>
<td></td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vuwani</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>686</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

46,35% which is the figure deduced denotes that almost half the primary schools in the Northern region were considered to be unconducive to effective teaching and learning. In numbers this percentage represented an alarming 316 (46,1%) primary schools in the Northern region. A figure of 185 (26,9%) primary schools' buildings needed to be renovated in various inspection areas. Nevertheless, at least 27% of the schools' buildings were in a favourable condition, that is 105 (15,4%) primary schools and 80 (11,6%)
primary school buildings were in an immaculate and an excellent condition. This is represented in figure 4.2:

![Graph showing the state of buildings in schools]

**Figure 4.2 State of buildings in schools**

Teaching and learning cannot occur in an environment which is lackadaisical, unpredictable and not directed towards optimising quality classroom time. Conditions in the schools in which the research was conducted were far from conducive to learning for substantial periods of time. Classrooms had broken windows, cracked walls, no doors for a long period, buildings were collapsing whilst those that were incomplete yet available were without roofs, which warrants classes being called off during bad weather. For instance it was a disaster during the heavy rainfalls in February and March 2000 when Mozambique and the *Northern Province* were flooded. Classes were often in flood, classrooms needed paint, some classrooms became kraals, sties and kennels for domestic animals. In the morning unnecessary time thus gets wasted in cleaning the premises of the schools.

Brodie (1999:12) too, conducted a case study in a rural secondary school in the *Northern Province*. The school had 11 classrooms for 705 learners and 18 staff members. 7 out of the 11 classrooms were not complete yet and there was a shortage of furniture, e.g. chairs, desks and those that were there were hardly functional. The classrooms had small portable chalkboards which were hardly visible from all points of the classroom.
Most of the classrooms investigated in this study were overcrowded and the teacher-learner ratio was 1:80. (Compare chapter 2 item 2.5.3.1). As a result learners had to share the school day shifts. There were morning and afternoon sessions in order to accommodate all grade 1 learners. In one inspection area it was pathetic to see grade 1 learners sharing 1 chair amongst three. In this inspection area most of the grade 1 learners were taught under baobab trees. Brady (1990:28) views the problem of overcrowded classrooms as being due to an excess of enrolment against available accommodation. Lumadi (1995:56), in support of Brady (1990:28), propounds that effective teaching rarely takes place in classes where large numbers of learners are gathered together without an orderly arrangement.

The grade 1 teacher's concern in one primary school was verbalised as follows:

"I was appointed at this primary school in 1991. Since I got employed, my grade 1 class has always been under this baobab tree. When it rains, kids are released, when it is windy, we do the same story. When the weather is favourable they attend but the only problem is that learners cannot concentrate wholeheartedly because there are so many disturbances that distract learners' attention".

4.3.2 Lack of resources

As a result of this investigation, it was realised that the lack of resources is a major problem experienced by grade 1 teachers in the Northern Province. Some of them try to improvise where they can, but it is not clear for how long they will have to continue improvising. OBE requires teachers to make use of various resources when teaching. In some primary schools, especially in rural areas, electricity is not available and as a result it becomes a mammoth task for grade 1 teachers to teach effectively. Laboratories were only found in three primary schools in the entire Northern region. How can grade 1 teachers develop a curriculum in the absence of required resources? This has a serious impact on the quality of education the learners receive as indicated in chapter 2 item 2.5.3.5 and chapter 5 items 5.1.1- 5.1.8 and chapter 6 item 6.2.1.1(b).
Vinjevold and Taylor (1999:172), as well, examined the amount and nature of learning resources available in grade 1 in the Western Cape Province. In grade 1, the focus was on materials for Language and Literacy and Mathematics. In the grade 1 classes they found that over half the classrooms sampled lacked ten or more basic learning materials. Urban under resourced schools were significantly short of reading materials and had very little in terms of blocks, plastic cubes, crayons, puzzles and games. Rural classrooms had no learning materials in sufficient quantity.

From the foregoing discussion, it is evident that most areas in South Africa are plagued by lack of resources and that the state has a major role to play. The researcher also identified some of the following constraints regarding lack of resources:

### 4.3.2.1 Libraries

Van Schalkwyk (1990:136) avers that the function of the education media service is to make a effectively housed and well ordered collection of books, magazines and educational aids readily available for the use of teachers for lessons.

Based on research findings, it was discovered that only 19% of the primary schools in the Northern Region have libraries. It is surprising to realise that only 9% of these primary schools have good libraries which contain relevant references to Curriculum 2005. Where there is a shortage of libraries grade 1 teachers are not exposed to the materials which would be necessary or useful in OBE. Greater access to a library enables grade 1 teachers to be updated with relevant information.

A grade 1 teacher explained: “One locker in grade 7 class is used as a library for the school. 99% of the books in the library are from the defunct Department of Education and Training (DET) and they have got nothing to do with Curriculum 2005. The class is only used as a library during a 20 minutes break. After school the principal locks. When he is absent we do not have access into that locker because he is the only one who keeps the keys.”
4.3.2.2 Resource materials

In general, the researcher found that textbooks and other resource materials were available at some inspection areas although not always in a sufficient quantity for both grade 1 learners and teachers. In one circuit with more than 30 primary schools, it was established that only 3 teachers’ guides were utilised by the entire circuit. A teacher’s guide offers advice to teachers about teaching a specific subject and it also includes resource details (Marsh 1992:51). What happened in practice is that the teacher’s guide had to rotate among more than 40 grade 1 teachers. By the end of the year the teacher’s guide had been damaged. Learners do not have files as expected. Grade 1 teachers improvise by using files which were meant for the phased-out Primary Education Upgrading Programme (PEUP). Grade 1 teachers do not possess brushes, posters, cards, paints and many other items. In some schools, where grade 1 teachers’ guides were however supplied, they reached the schools only in May or June instead of the first week of re-opening. A shortage of stationery was also noted in some areas (Fowler and Allen 1990:735).

The following concern is from a grade 1 teacher from one inspection area: “I asked the principal in May to photocopy me a teacher’s guide. He said the school had budgetery constraints. I should wait until such a time that the Department of Education (DOE) will deliver enough teacher’s guides. In the meantime I should stick to the old curriculum as there are no required resource materials”.

4.3.2.3 Teaching and Learning media

Charles (1990:60) points out that media have become a collective term for the means of mass communication that have developed with technological advances. From the data analysis, it was found that in most primary schools in the Northern Province the predominant medium is the chalkboard, whereas overhead projectors, computers and many other media are difficult to find. Although in OBE teachers are encouraged to develop their own materials, most learners, when requested to come to school with
magazines, newspaper cuttings, empty boxes of powder soap or cereals, and or a pair of scissors, are co-operative. In one rural area, the grade 1 teachers were concerned about the use of the chalkboard. There are only four old chalkboards in the whole school which has 10 classrooms for grades 1 to 7. Grades 1 and 2 share the chalkboard, grades 3 and 4, grades 5 and 6, while grade 7 does not share a chalkboard. “If you want to use it, you have to queue for it. Sometimes you do not get it at all. The last resort for me is to ask learners to write on the floor”. How can one teach effectively when there is such a stumbling block to overcome? In view of these problems it becomes difficult for grade 1 teachers to develop their school curricula. It is argued that media do not provide substitutes for teaching-learning events, but rather facilitate and supplement teaching. The success of learning, achieved with the aid of media, reflects a relationship with the way the teacher applies media in the lesson (Krüger and Müller 1990:102).

In figure 4.3 it is illustrated that the only resources available at the time of the survey were the library, textbooks, media and facilities for extramural activities such as sports or playground. 44% of schools reported an adequate provision, 52% an inadequate provision, and 3% grossly inadequate. Of the primary schools that reported grossly inadequate provision of these resources, 161 had no textbooks and 279 had no laboratories. The other resources investigated were in extremely poor supply with 91.4% of the primary schools in the Northern Province lacking libraries, 88% lacking media and equipment. Of the primary schools that reported possessing these resources, only 4% had adequate media equipment, 3% had adequate libraries and 4% had adequate unspecified equipment.
4.3.3. Unequal access to ownership in SBCD

In the final analysis, the researcher found that the bone of contention in the debate over centralisation or decentralisation of the planning of the curriculum is, who should define and develop the educational curriculum? (Compare chapter 2 paragraph 2.3.4 and chapter 5 items 5.1.1-5.1.8 and chapter 6 item 6.2.1.1(c).) The question of whether the perspective of learning content specialists, school administrators, grade 1 teachers or learners should determine educational programme design and use has surfaced repeatedly in educational discussions (Brady 1990:8).

Most of the grade 1 teachers contended that the fact that their education system is decentralised is a fallacy. The setting up of machinery to undertake curriculum planning and development is solely in the hands of a centralised education system. The GNU’s decision is still final and the grade 1 teachers’ correspondence in SBCD is not entered into. It seems odd in retrospect to perceive the GNU designing a curriculum which should be implemented by the grade 1 teachers without their active prior involvement. The fact that grade 1 teachers do not enjoy equal access to ownership and control of the school curriculum governance is undemocratic. The GNU and grade 1 teachers are thus not on an equal footing. The GNU takes the upper hand in all curriculum issues.
As has already been noted, the sequence of socio-political events in South Africa in general, and the *Northern Province* in particular, has been neither logical nor ideal. *Grade 1 teachers* in some primary schools said that there are too many outside pressures. Subject-based *curriculum* programmes were thrust upon them without consultation. For as long as they are not fully involved in *curriculum* design and development the process of *SBCD* will remain a dream.

"I cannot say I was involved in *curriculum* decision-making. All that I remember is that I was given an official *curriculum* and all that was required from me was to implement the irrelevant stuff to my learners. I know the needs and interests of my learners because I am more knowledgeable and experienced as I have been teaching grade 1 for more than 20 years."

### 4.3.4 Timing for *curriculum* implementation and knowledge explosion

The outcomes of this investigation show that as a part of the capacity building exercise and the piloting of standards through a form of training, the Department of Education (DOE), initiated a teacher training model (the cascade model) intended to spread knowledge and skills to approximately 5,206 *grade 1 teachers* in the *Northern Province*. Although the intention was noble and theoretically viable and feasible, the programme was simply not workable in an environment which was so unreceptive. The DOE procured the services of Non-Governmental Organizations (NGO’s) to deliver the national level training and to monitor and evaluate the cascading of training in the entire provinces. The DOE has yet to prove that its dream of cascades has worked and whether it functions effectively.

Prior to the implementation of *Curriculum 2005*, only 20 educators were chosen in the *Northern Province* to attend the Train-the-Trainer workshop organised by the National DOE in Pretoria during 1997. The rationale behind the training was that those trained educators would again train the teachers in their entire regions and inspection areas. 30
primary schools were chosen in Northern Province in order to pilot Curriculum 2005. 5 schools were chosen per region. The grade 1 teachers responsible for their grades in those demographically representative primary schools underwent training.

Out of 30 areas, only 19 areas were seconded and 12 areas had no facilitators. One could use simple logic in concluding that some of the facilitators were theoretically taking care of 2 areas. Towards the end of 1997, the Northern Province further trained 5000 grade 1 teachers in preparation for the implementation of curriculum 2005 in January 1998. In fact, these are the current grade 1 teachers who are grappling with OBE in the Foundation Phase. In early 1998, Northern Province officials took a step further by inviting all facilitators from all regions and trained them for a week, for the sake of preparing them for a common understanding in conducting workshops in their areas. The duration of the workshop was a maximum of 2 days. The only snag was that there were no curriculum resource centres available and as a result workshops were only held where grade 1 teachers had access to transportation.

Van der Horst and McDonald (1997:245) show that right from the beginning, all teachers must understand that implementing OBE requires lots of time, energy and work. The duration of only 2 days for workshops and no follow-up at some inspection areas due to shortage of manpower and transportation, were indicators which suggested that the organisation left much to be desired. (See chapter 2 item 2.5.3.5 and chapter 5 item 5.1.1-5.1.8.d). It is evident that external control, management and implementation of the curriculum is reduced by the wider range of choices in curriculum materials available to grade 1 teachers. It is virtually impossible for a single curriculum developer, acting independently, to choose the most suitable curriculum package on behalf of grade 1 teachers. Grade 1 teachers also pointed out that they ought to have been given sufficient time for training in Curriculum 2005. The little knowledge which they acquired during training does not equip them properly. Kader Asmal, in support of this, stated that Bhengu’s OBE implementation was ill-timed (Sunday Times February 2000).
A grade I teacher remarked, “Where on earth have you ever seen a person being trained for 2 days and be expected to be competent in a work which needs a thorough training for 2 years? We are not yet clear about curriculum 2005. We are just chasing a black cat in a dark room”.

Potenza (2000:19) shows that teachers complain about the duration of training which they received. Teachers spend three to four years at teacher training colleges and universities, yet they are expected to implement OBE effectively within four days of training, which is not enough.

4.3.5 Grade 1 teachers’ attitude towards SBCD

A traumatic experience encountered by grade I teachers and those with contractual appointments, is the fact that it is expected of them to teach learning programmes in which they have no training. For most grade I teachers it is a tremendous issue to motivate learners effectively and to motivate them in a learning programme for which they have little interest.

The researcher’s close examination revealed that most grade I teachers in the Northern Province have already received departmental documents regarding redeployment. Quirck (1991:871) points out that redeployment involves giving new positions or tasks to teachers. Redeployment in the academic sense can also be viewed as the transfer of educators from one institution to another, with the aim of placing those educators in the place where their skills can be maximally utilised.

The Teacher Supply Utilization Development (TSDU) disputed that teachers should be rationalized even if they are unqualified. The Northern Province has been instrumental in the process of educator redeployment in line with the broader attempts to right-size education (Campbell and Kgobe 1997:07). DEACS has stated that there are about 6 885 primary and secondary school educators in excess of current requirements, and only 630
have applied for a voluntary severance package, whilst Northern Province has only approved 170. In view of the fact that most grade 1 teachers received departmental documents regarding redeployment, they did not teach effectively because they knew that they are no longer permanent. (See table 4.3 regarding Northern Province’s latest redeployment in primary schools).

One of the accepted criteria for redeployment is termed “LIFO”. The acronym “LIFO” stands for last in first out. The last teacher to be appointed in an institution will be the first victim to be redeployed. Those who were appointed last in schools spent sleepless nights (Lumadi 1999:11).

Table 4.3 Northern Province’s redeployment in primary schools

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Teachers in excess</th>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Available posts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td>733</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td>685</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td>742</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>309</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td>267</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td>228</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td>442</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td>571</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>3 668</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>1 995</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is also alarming to note that redeployment does not guarantee automatic placement at another institution. Teachers have to vie for absorption into a particular school through interviews. The competition is said to be stiff because interviewees have to compete for a post. It is also indicated that teachers will be given a scheduled time to obtain a post. Should they fail to get a job in that time, they will be retrenched. The number of available posts does not correlate with the number of excess teachers, which triples the available number of posts. 2 673 teachers should be redeployed and grade 1 teachers are thus demotivated because of these circumstances.
"I am demotivated by the letter which I received from the DOE. I know that my job is no longer secured. I will just teach to get my salary even though I lost interest on teaching".

The teachers’ unions, such as the South African Democratic Teachers Union (SADTU) and Professional Educators’ Union (PEU), propound that redeployment cannot be carried out because of the following reasons:

- The province does not have a demarcating policy on the appointment, promotion and redeployment of educators. This is due to the current “right-sizing” of school staff.
- The roles of the various levels of management in the appointment, promotion, redeployment and retrenchment of educators are not clearly spelt out.
- The province does not have an educator appraisal and development system in operation at present.

An affected teacher cannot teach effectively, instead he will only teach in a haphazard way. (See chapter 5 items 5.1.1-5.1.8 and chapter 6 item 6.2.1.1.e). Those who did not receive documentation concerning redeployment, were informed that redeployment would take place annually. Those whose close relatives are employed at tertiary institutions are also facing the same problems, as institutions of higher learning are also being rationalized. Prior to 1994, there was a proliferation of Teacher Training Colleges in the Northern Province. The Northern Province had until 1994, 21 colleges of education which oversaturated the market with teachers who specialised in social sciences. The number of colleges was reduced from 21 to 10 as reflected in table 4.4. It was found at a later stage that the decision to reduce colleges from 21 to 10 was still unviable because the Northern Province have teacher education providers beyond the colleges which are run by the Provincial Department of Education (PDE). For instance the University of the North (UNIN) and University of Venda for Science and Technology (UNIVEN) are also producing teachers. Moreover, there are also institutions of higher learning such as the University of South Africa (UNISA), Randse Afrikaanse University
(RAU) and Vista University which are training teachers in the Post Graduate Diploma in Education (PGDE), Bachelor of Arts in Education (BAEd), Master of Education (MEd) as well. Other teachers are produced by the so-called English speaking universities such as the University of Witwatersrand (WITS) and the University of Cape Town (UCT). As such, there is a move to incorporate the colleges of education into the University of the North and University of Venda for Science and Technology. The discussions on the modalities are now finalised. At the moment one can safely say that South African educators do not have guarantee regarding the safety of their jobs. The future is bleak for everyone. Others are forced to take early retirement packages. Grade 1 teachers' morale is lowered still further.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME OF COLLEGE</th>
<th>JPTD 1st year</th>
<th>2nd year</th>
<th>3rd year</th>
<th>SPTD 1st year</th>
<th>2nd year</th>
<th>3rd year</th>
<th>STD 1st year</th>
<th>2nd year</th>
<th>3rd year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mapulaneng College of Education</td>
<td>168</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>279</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>219</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bochum College of Education</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>114</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kwena Moloto College of Education</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>165</td>
<td>159</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>208</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setotolwane College of Education</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>268</td>
<td>322</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sekhukhune College of Education</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>159</td>
<td>153</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>142</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>202</td>
<td>207</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thaba Moopo College of Education</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>74</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>106</td>
<td>139</td>
<td>172</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mokopane College of Education</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>176</td>
<td>154</td>
<td>252</td>
<td>242</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tirumbeni College of Education</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>304</td>
<td>319</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naphuno College of Education</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>151</td>
<td>241</td>
<td>225</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>251</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hoxani College of Education</td>
<td>231</td>
<td>230</td>
<td>226</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>103</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modjadji College of Education</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>160</td>
<td>132</td>
<td>204</td>
<td>256</td>
<td>351</td>
<td>347</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Venda College of Education</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>258</td>
<td>231</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Giyani College of Education</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>176</td>
<td>203</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lemana College of Education</td>
<td>185</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>165</td>
<td>233</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>146</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mamokgalake Chuene College</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>107</td>
<td>193</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>133</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Makhado College of Education</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>86</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>221</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dr. C.N. Phatudi College</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>190</td>
<td>154</td>
<td>214</td>
<td>154</td>
<td>139</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ramaano Mbulaheni College</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>85</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>63</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sekgosese College of Education</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>266</td>
<td>286</td>
<td>299</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shingwedzi College of Education</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>245</td>
<td>245</td>
<td>245</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tshisimani College of Education</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>104</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL NUMBER OF STUDENTS</td>
<td>1 146</td>
<td>991</td>
<td>1 002</td>
<td>2314</td>
<td>2252</td>
<td>2641</td>
<td>3005</td>
<td>3 174</td>
<td>2 471</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
After lengthy deliberation, SADTU, plus pro-government politicians, agreed to close some schools that were no longer serving the general interests of the country. Thus parties agreed to transfer all serving educators in excess in terms of operational requirements "spelled out in Resolution 5 of 1998 based on, but not limited to the following:

- *Curriculum* changes within a specific education institution
- Change in learners' enrolment
- Change to the grading of the specific institution

See table 4.4 for rationalised teacher training colleges in *Northern Province*. Only 3 institutions survived after rationalization.

### 4.3.6 Culture of Teaching and Learning (COLTS)

According to Brubaker (1994:76) the creative *curriculum* teacher is expected to give attention to both personal and organisational vision. A good vision is always linked with the use of time. (Compare chapter 5 item 5.1 sub headings 5.1.1-5.1.8 and chapter 6 item 6.2.1.1.f).

#### 4.3.6.1 Aspect of time

The effective utilisation of time is of paramount importance for successful teaching and learning. In this study, the researcher recognised that most primary schools in the *Northern Province* do not have effective and workable mechanisms of stamping out late arrivals. The South African constitution does not allow teachers to punish the learners by sending them back home when they come late to school. In one school the *grade 1 teacher* did not allow the learner to enter the class because of latecoming. That *grade 1 teacher* ended up appearing before the school governing body and disciplinary measures were taken against him. In some school that were visited, where there is a fence, principals lock gates when the school starts. In one school where there are 4 *grade 1*
teachers, it was alleged that one of the grade 1 teachers did not honour all his periods of teaching. Apart from that he always comes late and leaves early. When he is supposed to go to class, he wastes time chatting in the staff-room or keeping himself busy writing assignments for his own private studies or reading the newspaper. It is further alleged that grade 1 teachers go to class without thorough preparation. The community concerned once complained about this behaviour and grade 1 teachers were severely reprimanded. Although the teacher promised to reform, this has not occurred. Most of the grade 1 teachers in other schools observed full official working hours as prescribed and their work was always up to date.

A grade 1 teacher said:

“When the learners come in late, I do not have a say. I just pretend as if I do not see them even though it causes disturbances when I am busy teaching. As long as I get my salary at the end of the month”.

“Why should I come early and prepare my lessons thoroughly. It is just a waste of time because the DOE does not require my services anymore. I have applied for a job at a private company because I am retrenched.”

4.3.6.2 Quality and control of work

The researcher’s findings also showed that one of the valid reasons why learners fail dismally is that the grade 1 teachers concerned do not give enough written work to learners, and further there is only sporadic assessment of learners’ work. See table 4.5 regarding the failure rate.
Table 4.5  Grade 1 failure rate in Northern Province

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area</th>
<th>Percentage wrote</th>
<th>Percentage passed</th>
<th>Percentage failed</th>
<th>Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Sekhusese</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>46,4</td>
<td>53,6</td>
<td>1994</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Soutpansberg</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>51,2</td>
<td>48,8</td>
<td>1995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Vuwani</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>59,5</td>
<td>40,5</td>
<td>1996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Thohoyandou</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>89,1</td>
<td>10,9</td>
<td>1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Malamulele</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>98,8</td>
<td>1,2</td>
<td>1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Mutale</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>98,9</td>
<td>1,1</td>
<td>1999</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Although classwork and projects are supposed to be given as part of continuous assessment, in most schools insufficient work is given to learners. Where there was a teacher’s guide and a syllabus to be covered some of the aspects were not covered timeously and there was no assessment. In two schools, grade 1 teachers were not clear about their teaching. In cases of giving learners classwork and dividing them for group work, grade 1 teachers failed to supervise their learners. Absenteeism is also perceived to be one of the greatest maladies of primary schools on the part of both teachers and learners. Teachers who always abscond obviously cannot monitor absenteeism.

Madida’s (1992:49) findings in the Kwazulu Natal Province, show that classes in black communities, unlike in white communities, are always overcrowded because of the shortage of qualified teachers. This researcher’s findings differ from Madida’s findings, though, because overcrowding has no bearing on the shortage of grade 1 teachers. A grade 1 teacher remarked:

*I did not assess my learners on most of the activities because my class is overcrowded. Besides it is not easy for one to notice the number of learners who are absent. Control of work becomes a dicy issue. Learners come in and bunk classes when they please. Supervision is always poor because of overcrowding.*
4.3.6.3 Academic support programmes

It was deduced from two inspection areas that an academic support programme supplements the hours of teaching and learning. One of the reasons why grade 1 learners fail in primary schools, is that they simply do not study enough to cope with the demands of the curriculum. In secondary schools the DOE introduced compulsory morning and afternoon studies. In some primary schools, an academic support programme was more appropriate than studies. Learners with educational problems were always helped by grade 1 teachers. (See table 4.6 which reflects on the academic support programme in various inspection areas). Learners with various problems were identified and it was recommended that they be sent to special schools.

In the Sekgosese and Vuwani inspection areas, disabled learners were found in some classes. Grade 1 teachers also indicated that they had serious problems in teaching such learners, because they were physically disabled. The DOE policy stipulates explicitly that disabled learners should be accommodated in mainstream education and that no special help is given to them. This issue is also exacerbated by the fact that in Curriculum 2005 learners should be allowed to learn at their own pace. This retarded progress of other learners and as a result it became problematic for the grade 1 teacher to cope with such learners. Although parents were advised by the school principal to send their children to private schools, this did not receive the parents' proper attention because they indicated that they could not afford to send their children to such schools because of financial constraints. One parent remarked negatively to a grade 1 teacher:

"I do not have money to send my child to expensive schools. If you think you have a lot of money you can take my child to such schools but you should also bear the financial costs".
Table 4.6  Academic support programmes for learners

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Area</th>
<th>Days in the week</th>
<th>No of grade 1 learners</th>
<th>Duration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Malamulele</td>
<td>Monday</td>
<td>03</td>
<td>1 hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Sekhusese</td>
<td>Tuesday</td>
<td>06</td>
<td>1 hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Soutpansberg</td>
<td>Wednesday</td>
<td>04</td>
<td>45 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Thohoyandou</td>
<td>Thursday</td>
<td>03</td>
<td>40 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Vuwani</td>
<td>Friday</td>
<td>02</td>
<td>30 minutes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.3.7 Professional growth and experience in SBCD

Here, too, an application of the research instruments enabled the researcher to note that grade 1 teachers' lack of experience poses serious problems for the teaching of the primary school curriculum. The transition from initial teacher training or university teacher education to grade 1 teaching is an important shift in the life of a grade 1 beginning teacher. (Compare chapter 5 item 5.1.1-5.1.8 and chapter 6 item 6.2.1.1.g). The primary school must help the grade 1 beginner teacher learn how to become competent in the chosen profession. However, the acquisition of the varied and complex skills that characterise effective teaching involves much more than practising teaching in the classroom situation. A lot should be done to support the experiences of grade 1 beginner teachers in the Foundation Phase. Some grade 1 teachers indicated:

"We are overloaded. Apart from the load of teaching we are also responsible for extra-mural activities. We are also responsible for late-comings, drawing school time-tables and many others. When we asked the principal to reconsider our workload, he did not show interest except to say that he wanted us to be more knowledgeable and experienced. In view of this burden which does not give us a breathing space we teach in a haphazard manner".
In fact, 85.3% of the grade 1 beginner teachers surveyed maintained that they felt isolated in their primary schools. In this study, a lot of primary schools run short of structures to assist the grade 1 beginner teachers in their period of transition from learner teacher to grade 1 beginner teacher. A newly appointed teacher in a farm school expressed his concern for being thrown into the deep end where one is required to swim.

"It is a tough experience which is confusing and frustrating. You are just told to go to primary school Z and when you get there it appears old teachers are not welcoming you. When you encounter problems, nobody is interested on helping you. It is like being thrown into the deeper part of the ocean and told to swim. You have to find your way of swimming or you get drowned immediately".

A number of grade 1 beginner teachers had similar experiences. Some were even wondering about the prospects of remaining in the noble profession of teaching for a long time. A grade 1 teacher said he wanted to become a teacher because he had a vision of working with primary school learners. Unfortunately he was in for a shock when he got into his school. The learners were not interested in learning. When he asked for help from some experienced senior teachers and the Head of Department (HOD) he got a negative response.

"Why did you apply for a job because you lack experience? Were you not given the strategies of handling such learners at your teacher training college? It is better to resign when it is still early instead of waiting for a redeployment letter to come from the DOE".

This grade 1 teacher's story reflects a number of difficulties which grade 1 beginner teachers experience. The HOD spoke about experience as if it is something which is innate or may be sold in a particular shop. The grade 1 teacher was rather disappointed to
realize that his learners were not intrinsically motivated. Furthermore, in the interview session this grade 1 teacher highlighted that he attempted to enthuse the learners, but in vain. The context in which he taught also contributed to this state of affairs. He taught in a peri-urban primary school where the learners needed more attention because of their environmental background.

4.3.8 Inadequate discipline and curriculum management

Buckley (1993:416) observes that discipline is a system for the maintenance of order. Discipline connotes a systematic training of the physical, moral and mental capacities of the learner through intention and exercise. (Consult chapter 5 items 5.1.1-5.1.8 and chapter 6 item 6.2.1.1.h). This involves every methods for the smooth running of the school. Discipline is a form of control. In education, it is accepted that the learner is controlled by an outside force, a superior of some sort who has been placed in authority (Charles 1990:70).

The researcher reported that in most of the primary schools in the Northern Province, grade 1 teachers complain about poor discipline. Learners are said to be noisy, fond of bullying each other, cheating and lying, caught up in petty theft of other learners’ stationery, bunking classes and late-coming. Some of the grade 1 teachers said these problems were cropping up because corporal punishment had been abolished.

An old grade 1 teacher stressed that the abolition of corporal punishment tarnished the Culture of Teaching and Learning Service (COLTS) in South African schools, especially those that are predominantly for blacks.

"Bring a shambok in the classroom if you want to restore colts. Reprimanding and warning of learners is a waste of time and energy because learners are spoiled from their respective homes".
Based on the expressions of these grade I teachers, it is clear that undesirable behaviour in the teaching-learning situation is inevitable. Learners may have learnt some undesirable behaviour as a result of their previous experiences in or out of school. They may not yet have learned the behaviour which is appropriate to their new class situation, and some may test out their grade I teacher in order to establish what the new limits are. A great deal of unwanted behaviours cannot simply be overlooked while the grade I teacher waits for learners to show appropriate behaviour. The grade I teacher's focus should be the provision of consequences which weaken and decrease undesirable behaviour whilst retaining a constructive and conducive atmosphere in class.

In inspection areas where the primary schools are adjacent to secondary schools, the primary school learners behave as if they are already at secondary schools. During break both primary and secondary school learners mix together and share ideas. It is alarming that the principals do not have a say in this matter. When a bell rings to signify the end of break, learners drag their feet to class. Some walk out of their classes in order to go and bask in the sun, especially in winter. By merely observing and understanding this type of situation, it is clear that it is not an easy task for a grade I teacher to develop a school curriculum. This is where Mwamwenda (1995:311) shows that discipline is important, since without it the purpose of schooling fails.

Moreover, the context for dealing with unwanted behaviour must always be one in which learners' acceptable behaviour, and stages towards it, are being frequently noticed and rewarded. It should always be borne in mind that the main objective is to minimize the sick behaviours occurring, to teach learners appropriate behaviours and elicit these instead. Discipline thus implies control, without which there would be anarchy and chaos, and as a result effective learning cannot in any way take place (Lumadi 1999:2).
4.3.9 Politics and teachers' unions

The analysis brought to light that involvement in politics and teachers' unions is detrimental to the smooth running of the school curriculum. (See chapter 2 paragraph 2.3.4 and chapter 5 items 5.1.1-5.1.8 and chapter 6 item 6.2.1.1.1). Grade 1 teachers, like other teachers, organise themselves into professional unions and associations for a number of reasons, namely: to improve the status of the teaching profession, to raise and maintain professional standards and to look after their interests as employees. As employees, teachers are concerned with their personal and economic welfare. The teachers' associations negotiate with the education authorities on matters such as the improvement of salaries, housing subsidies, conditions of appointment and discharge, working conditions and other matters. The associations also constitute an official channel for grievances to be stated to the DOE. The DOE recognises teachers' associations as the official voice of teachers, even though not all teachers belong to the same association, because membership is voluntary and also because of political reasons (Walters: 1992:89).

The different political organisations in South Africa are viewed by some grade 1 teachers as problematic for effective implementation of the school curriculum. Teachers who belong to the same political organization always club together and support each other on various matters. Should it appear coincidentally that one does not belong to a political organisation which is supported by other members, one will always be criticised. When there is team work, the teacher who does not belong to the party where the majority of teachers are members, does not get assistance at all. When staff meetings are to be held, members belonging to the same organisations always meet and caucus beforehand on matters to be addressed. The ones who belong to a minority party are often outspoken because of their number. When there is distribution of work however, those who are in a minority are always overloaded because there is no one to help them out. Those whose political party is well supported get a reasonable workload at the expense of others. In the research a number of grade 1 teachers remarked as follows:
"I do not want team-teaching with people who do not belong to my political organisation or teachers' union.... With extra-mural activities I would prefer to be paired with a comrade from my political organisation for supervision."

The majority of the South African population has for many years been restricted with regard to political expression. The politicisation of the labour environment as a result of similar restrictions contributed to making trade unionism a potent vehicle for expressing political aspirations and opposition to the prevailing order. The politics of discontent and liberation, manifested among the labour movements and other opponents of the government, was met with ruthless suppression. Meanwhile the policy of institutionalised racial segregation and discrimination provided an impetus to popular struggle. The last two decades of South African education have been characterised by rising discontent among school teachers. Linked to the 1976 upheavals and subsequent counter-measures, the spirit of disaffection in time gave rise to a strike sub-culture which in turn generated rifts between African teachers and White administrators. In early 1990, there was widespread strike action by teachers at the African schools in the so-called white designated areas and black self-governing territories.

The South African Institute of Race Relations (SAIRR) shows that the concerns of teachers went beyond the labour aspects of teaching to include a political solution as sought by the liberation organisations and the labour movements (SAIRR, 1989-90). In terms of section 4(1) of the Labour Relations Act (Act 66 of 1995) each employee has the right to participate in forming a trade union or federation of trade unions, and to join a trade union, subject to its constitution, and to participate in its lawful activities. The same right, including the right to strike, is conferred on the employee by Section 23 of the National Constitution (Act 108 of 1996).

With the establishment of a new political system, far-reaching changes have been initiated regarding the conditions which provided a fertile ground for alienation and the strike ideology to which it gave effect. At the same time the right to strike has been
legalized and safeguarded by the Constitution (Act 108 of 1996) and the labour relations legislation (Act 66 of 1995). The White Paper on Education and Training acknowledges that educators in their professional capacity have indispensable roles to play in such fields as curriculum renewal and school governance, as well as the broader area of policy advice.

In a certain inspection area, a school which was investigated had two staff-rooms. One was for Whites and the other one for African (black) teachers. These teachers did not exchange ideas regarding the school curricula. One of the primary schools, in this inspection area has two grade 1 classes, taught by a white and an African respectively. When either of these grade 1 teachers has a serious academic problem, they do not sit down and assist each other. Instead, they will rather seek outside advice because of the political situation. In view of all these hurdles, it becomes questionable as to whether grade 1 teachers will be able to teach effectively in this complex country.

4.3.10 Multi-cultural education and SBCD

Based on the researcher's findings, it was evident that multi-cultural classrooms pose enormous challenges to grade 1 teachers. Bennett (1998:201) defines multicultural education as an approach to teaching and learning that is based upon democratic values and beliefs, and affirms cultural pluralism within a cultural diverse society and an interdependent world. Multicultural education is comprised of the movement towards equity, curriculum reform, the process of becoming multicultural and the commitment to combat prejudice and discrimination, more especially racism. (Compare chapters 5 item 5.1.1-5.1.8 and chapter 6 item 6.2.1.1(j).)

Squelch (1996:31) contends with Bennett (1999:201) by pointing out that multicultural education, as one of the critical issues facing educationists in culturally diverse societies, is an alternative approach to education which can improve the level of equality in education. Israel, for example, represents a multicultural society of Jews of different
ethnic and racial origin, including secular and religious Jews, Arabs, Drueze, Circassians, Armenians (Walzer 1995:184).

Coutts (1992:97) indicates that multi-cultural schools provide for learners from quite different cultural heritages to be educated together in the same classroom. The different cultures are utilized as an enrichment of the learning experiences of all learners. The dominant trends are as follows:

* to work towards social solidarity by fostering intercultural understanding;
* to recognize that each learner needs firm support and respect for his or her cultural background. The cultural heritage of each learner is thus a firm base from which he or she can venture into an association with other learners.

Furthermore, the researcher also found that in multi-cultural classrooms, the range of ideas, values, behaviours and beliefs was far wider than in homogeneous classrooms. The researcher further identified the following culture-based problems to be taken into account when teaching a multi-cultural class:

**4.3.10.1 Cultural diversity**

Culture refers to the body of ideas, beliefs, values, activities and traditions that are common to a group of people. Culture is dynamic, usually transmitted in modified form from generation to generation. In South Africa, our need for security has led some of us to see other cultures as much more rigid and distinct than others, in terms of this concept (Coutts 1992:97).

Van Loggerenberg (1990:31) is of the opinion that “waar kultuur aanvanklik 'n aantaal uitenge van die hoëre geestelike lewe van die mens behels het, soos religie, kuns, wetenskap en staatkunde, is die siening vandag dat kultuur 'n uiting is van die totale menslike manier van lewe: nie meer net in 'n suwer natuurlike milieu nie, maar ingrypend op die natuurlike omgewing.”
Although the research was conducted with grade 1 teachers, it was alarming to find out that grade 1 learners, irrespective of their age, view their own cultures as superior to those of their classmates. In fact no one succumbs to another’s culture because of an inferiority complex. A grade 1 teacher was caught by surprise when he praised two learners for responding well to the question that was posed in class. A Muvenda grade 1 learner who had not been pointed at, to respond to the posed question, remarked in his mother tongue:

"Nne matshangana na mabeli na makhuwa ho ngo thanya u mphira. Nahone na mme anga vha a zwi divha zwavhudi vhudi hezwo." When translated this means “The Tsonga, Northern Sotho speaking people and Whites are not brighter than me. In fact, even my mummy knows that very well”.

Diverse societies with diverse cultures are always bound to have a culture which is more dominant than other cultures, and which is bound to use, convince, influence, suppress or even look down upon other cultures as primitive or less civilized, knowingly or unknowingly. The conflict Marxists argue that dominant cultures will manipulate the education system in such a way that a docile obedient workforce from inferior cultures is obtained. To substantiate this Marxist’s view, Bowles and Gints in Haralambos and Holbron (1990:242) contend that the first major way in which education functions is to provide capitalists with a workforce which has the personality, attitudes and values which are most useful to them, a hardworking, docile, obedient and highly motivated workforce, which is too fragmented to challenge the society.

Marton (1996:179) shows that although there may be commonalities in the ways in which people who belong to the same culture account for phenomena, there are also bound to be differences. People cannot be aware of everything at the same time, and in the same way, given that people’s ways of experiencing things are determined by specific interests, preferences and previous experience.
An inevitable development in diverse multi-cultural societies is perhaps the issue of racism, an issue which is addressed by radical structuralists when they stress the anti-racist component of multi-cultural education. Inequality in society is regarded as indefensible. Equal educational opportunities cannot be realized in an unequal society without the provision of sufficient and compensatory educational opportunities for disadvantaged groups (Bondezio and Berkhout in Squelch 1996:37).

Some learners' constrained participation in the teacher-learner communication which is essential to effective teaching and learning in the classroom situation can be a thorn in the flesh. One of the problems cited by grade 1 teachers is eye contact especially with girls. Some of them bite their nails or scratch themselves as a sign of respect. Direct eye contact with elders is taboo. Some learners are traditionally expected to be demure and submissive and as such they are expected to keep their vision lowered when dealing with a senior. A white grade 1 teacher at a school in an urban area was angry with some of his or her learners who always avoided eye contact with him or her. She took the lack of direct eye contact as a sign of disrespect, while it meant the opposite.

4.3.10.2 Multi-lingualism

According to Heugh (1995:344) children who speak an African language or English at home would receive bilingual education, through another South African language alongside the mother tongue. There is a belief that multi-lingualism cognitively advantages children, that purposeful multi-lingual programmes would assist the process of displacing lingualism, and would facilitate the growth of a multi-cultural nation, and that the additive models would provide a better guarantee for the improvement of all South Africans.

Grade 1 teachers reported on the problems of multi-lingualism in the school curriculum. The cognitive aspect of multi-lingualism or bilingualism has been advanced and developed by the National Educational Policy Investigation (NEPI) which has put forward several proposals on mediums of instruction. The eleven official languages
spoken in our democratic country are Tshivenda, Xitsonga, Northern Sotho or Sesotho sa Lebowa, Setswana, Sesotho, Isizulu, Isixhosa, Seswati, Isindebele, Afrikaans and English. (See table 4.7). Teaching using the mother tongue (LI) as a medium of instruction through formal schooling has the following advantages:

- Basic concepts and initial literacy are more easily learnt in the home language.
- Additional languages are learnt better if thinking skills have already been developed in the home language.
- Transition from home to school is easier if the home language is the language of instruction.
- There is less danger of a challenge to, or loss of, children's sense of identity (NEPI 1992:7).

The advantages appear to be desirable on the score of equality of educational opportunity and attainment in South Africa's diverse societies. However, the same advantages could have some negative implications in SBCD, if the mother tongue as a medium of instruction is not a Language of Wider Communication (LWC). LWC simply denotes that such a language can be utilised beyond the learner's cultural surroundings, e.g. in the world of work and international communication.
## Table 4.7 Percentage of languages spoken in each province

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Province</th>
<th>Afrikaans</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>A/E</th>
<th>Ndebele</th>
<th>Northern Sotho</th>
<th>Southern Sotho</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Eastern Cape</td>
<td>8,93%</td>
<td>3,86%</td>
<td>9,0%</td>
<td>0,0%</td>
<td>0,01%</td>
<td>0,14%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Free State</td>
<td>15,09%</td>
<td>1,52%</td>
<td>0,10%</td>
<td>0,20%</td>
<td>0,02%</td>
<td>59,27%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gauteng</td>
<td>19,72%</td>
<td>17,19%</td>
<td>0,39%</td>
<td>0,85%</td>
<td>8,43%</td>
<td>11,52%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KwaZulu-Natal</td>
<td>1,93%</td>
<td>16,84%</td>
<td>0,07%</td>
<td>0,00%</td>
<td>0,04%</td>
<td>0,35%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mpumalanga</td>
<td>8,57%</td>
<td>1,83%</td>
<td>0,08%</td>
<td>6,43%</td>
<td>15,98%</td>
<td>2,79%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North West</td>
<td>9,00%</td>
<td>1,04%</td>
<td>0,08%</td>
<td>0,03%</td>
<td>0,73%</td>
<td>3,23%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Cape</td>
<td>68,42%</td>
<td>2,74%</td>
<td>0,11%</td>
<td>0,00%</td>
<td>0,13%</td>
<td>0,74%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Province</td>
<td>3,64%</td>
<td>0,65%</td>
<td>0,02%</td>
<td>1,37%</td>
<td>62,48%</td>
<td>0,91%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Cape</td>
<td>61,81%</td>
<td>20,71%</td>
<td>0,71%</td>
<td>0,00%</td>
<td>0,05%</td>
<td>0,27%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Proportion of Total</strong></td>
<td>41,97%</td>
<td>9,52%</td>
<td>0,19%</td>
<td>0,83%</td>
<td>9,92%</td>
<td>6,83%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Province</th>
<th>Swazi</th>
<th>Tsonga</th>
<th>Tswana</th>
<th>Venda</th>
<th>Xhosa</th>
<th>Zulu</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Eastern Cape</td>
<td>0,00%</td>
<td>0,00%</td>
<td>0,10%</td>
<td>0,00%</td>
<td>86,69%</td>
<td>0,06%</td>
<td>0,17%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Free State</td>
<td>0,20%</td>
<td>0,64%</td>
<td>4,81%</td>
<td>0,04%</td>
<td>9,25%</td>
<td>5,99%</td>
<td>1,98%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gauteng</td>
<td>1,22%</td>
<td>3,89%</td>
<td>7,38%</td>
<td>1,16%</td>
<td>6,08%</td>
<td>19,36%</td>
<td>2,82%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KwaZulu-Natal</td>
<td>0,03%</td>
<td>0,03%</td>
<td>0,01%</td>
<td>0,00%</td>
<td>1,20%</td>
<td>78,67%</td>
<td>0,82%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mpumalanga</td>
<td>25,15%</td>
<td>11,52%</td>
<td>1,89%</td>
<td>0,11%</td>
<td>1,45%</td>
<td>22,15%</td>
<td>2,04%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North West</td>
<td>0,27%</td>
<td>0,81%</td>
<td>78,91%</td>
<td>0,12%</td>
<td>4,18%</td>
<td>0,56%</td>
<td>1,02%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Cape</td>
<td>0,01%</td>
<td>0,14%</td>
<td>19,56%</td>
<td>0,01%</td>
<td>6,37%</td>
<td>0,27%</td>
<td>1,50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Province</td>
<td>0,32%</td>
<td>26,47%</td>
<td>1,91%</td>
<td>0,01%</td>
<td>0,22%</td>
<td>0,41%</td>
<td>0,59%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Cape</td>
<td>2,25%</td>
<td>0,02%</td>
<td>0,05%</td>
<td>0,00%</td>
<td>15,46%</td>
<td>0,08%</td>
<td>0,82%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Proportion of Total</strong></td>
<td>2,25%</td>
<td>4,69%</td>
<td>9,07%</td>
<td>0,35%</td>
<td>18,13%</td>
<td>22,00%</td>
<td>1,26%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(The South African Survey 1996:7)

325
It has a wider spectrum, because it goes beyond the South African area right into the global village. NEPI advises that if the mother-tongue is not a LWC, then learners' ability to participate in society might be impeded. The LWC in South Africa is English, which is known to be the language of international commerce and higher education. English as a lingua franca is preferred by all multi-cultural schools in South Africa as the language of instruction.

Another proposal from NEPI concerns teaching learners using the Second Language (L2) throughout formal education. However, this could have the further effect of alienating learners from their culture (NEPI 1992:9). In South Africa, because of the socio-political stigma attached to language in education, most parents have opted for this option.

It should be noted that the use of different languages in a multi-cultural classroom can be proven to be detrimental to the education system of multi-cultural societies, like South Africa. McCown, Driscoll and Roop (1996:105) view bilingualism as the ability to speak fluently in two different languages. In some cases bilingual people can read, write, speak and think as well in one language as in the other. In a multi-cultural class, there is always a lack of language comprehension. There is also a danger of incorrect pronunciation: instructions are also comprehended in a very different way to what the teacher intended (Charter 1990:81)

A serious problem encountered by grade 1 teachers is that learners fail to understand English commands. When a teacher tries to explain in a mother tongue, it becomes a waste of time because he or she should translate what he or she taught in English into the African languages of all the learners in his multi-cultural classroom. Is it possible for a grade 1 teacher to translate English into the other ten African languages? If not, do learners understand English when they fail to understand simple instructions? If a grade 1 teacher sticks to English, what would be the outcome? Is there no likelihood of failing? A grade 1 teacher remarked in this regard:
“When I teach my learners in English, they start yawning, slumbering and they end up falling asleep. One day when I said how are you to one of the grade 1 learners, instead of saying I am fine he said I am five...” Some of the kids would just start crying when they want to go and drink water because they are unable to express themselves in English... A worse case is of a grade 1 learner who failed to ask for permission to go to the toilet... Instead he released himself in class. That day the class was called off because the situation was no longer conducive to learning”.

Experience has proven that both culture and learning styles are intertwined. Learners from traditional, rural societies that are non-western might reveal the following aspects:

- A lack of language comprehension
- Incorrect pronunciation, grammar and vocabulary
- The use of language that is not appropriate to its context
- Passivity, with no work ethic
- The comprehension of instructions in a very different way to what the teacher intended
- A reluctance to risk failure, or show initiative
- Global and holistic learning rather than analytical learning
- A confusion about apparent conflict between and ambiguity of facts
- A dependence on visual reinforcement
- Dependence on instruction, rote learning and the memorisation of facts (Coutts 1992:85).

These aspects represent instructional challenges to the grade 1 teacher which should be addressed from a curriculum perspective.
4.3.10.3 Gender inequalities

Gender inequalities, especially in our indigenous South African cultures, present a further set of problems. In traditional societies the roles and social status of females are generally subordinate to those of the male. Gaps between the home and school might present problems, especially where females are given less status in their homes than they might be given at school, in which an ethos of learner equality prevails (Coutts 1992:36).

In this investigation, grade 1 teachers provided some examples of the problems experienced in the school curriculum. Girls refuse to sit with boys while boys prefer to sit with girls. Boys always claim to be better than girls while girls also claim to be far much better than boys. This view is not limited to grade 1 learners. Some female grade 1 teachers shared their demotivating experiences. When there is a staff meeting at a particular school, nobody takes note of their opinions. In that school females are abused, for whatever they say is always ignored. A female grade 1 teacher quoted the words of some of her colleagues:

"As we were discussing in a meeting, I decided to contribute by giving my opinion. I nearly collapsed when my fellow staff members said that they cannot take my opinion because I am a woman".

National government policy, as expressed in documents and circulars from the DOE, broadly favours equality of opportunity. This tends to be seen within a framework of general recommendations rather than specific requirements laid upon local education authorities or institutions of higher learning. Despite this rather lukewarm encouragement, a growing number of local authorities have introduced guidelines on gender equality.

Sexual harassment in school is not an easy subject to tackle, for two reasons: the perceptions of men and women about what constitutes sexual harassment vary. The more
grade 1 teachers view physical sexual varieties as vital, the more their attitude is likely to be transferred to learners. In the context of controlling disruptive learners, it is not infrequently assumed that males will do the task better, with the underlying implications that physical force may need to be brought into play. When grade 1 teachers contended that males can enforce better discipline because of their lower gruffer voices, the subconscious idea was that males qua males have greater authority and commanding personalities. This is to underestimate the power of moral authority on which teachers of both sexes can call (Whyte in Wellington 1992:67).

“I sent a learner to go and fetch a duster for me in the staff-room. Unfortunately the child slipt because the floor was slippery and she broke her arm. Because I am a male teacher the principal accused me of child abuse and sexual harassment and a result I got a charge for misconduct.”

A number of feminist grade 1 teachers have analysed primary school materials, in particular reading books, for gender bias. These grade 1 teachers find that central characters are overwhelmingly masculine, and that both women and girls, when they do appear, are weak, soppy creatures bearing little resemblance to real life females.

One of the serious problems identified by grade 1 teachers is that boys prefer to be taught by a male grade 1 teacher, while girls on the other hand prefer a female teacher. During the research that was conducted, it was found that boys do not enjoy being taught by a female teacher, while a relaxed atmosphere is created when girls are taught by a female grade 1 teacher. Girls participate actively in the classrooms, while boys typically show a scowl on their faces and sometimes become drowsy. The same also applies to girls when taught by a male grade 1 teacher. In single sex schools, it may be that girls benefit in confidence and self-esteem from being educated separately from boys. Set against this is the admitted artificiality of single sex environments, and the rather neglected question of what happens to boys and men if they are educated apart from the female sex.
The tendency of most grade 1 teachers in multi-cultural classes is to give more time and attention to boys. Boys receive more teacher-initiated contacts, are asked more questions and contribute more to classroom discussion. They also receive more criticism from grade 1 teachers. Reversing the whole trend towards co-education seems even more daunting than trying to change multicultural schools so that they reflect to a much greater degree the needs and interests of girls. Pragmatically, this whole debate on gender inequalities has led to opinions advocating single sex groups within mixed schools.

4.3.10.4 Multi-religion

Wellington (1992:108) contends that religion might be defined in terms of, say, six major world faiths namely: Buddhism, Christianity, Hinduism, Islam, Judaism, Sikhism - based on tradition, rather than on decree.

Religion can be viewed as die sentrale lewensdryfkrug van die mens wat setel in sy hart as die beginsel van sy bestaan (Van Loggerenberg 1983:60).

In this research study, grade 1 teachers admitted that teaching in a multi-religious classroom is a daunting task which warrants responsibility and faithfulness. A dilemma is always experienced when they have to start each day with a morning prayer in their classroom. Although the South African constitution accommodates all world religions, it is difficult for a grade 1 teacher to please all learners in a multi-religious classroom. It is in this respect that the DOE recommend that South African schools should in future be required to implement a pledge of allegiance, not prayer. In most of the areas that were visited grade 1 teachers showed that the majority of learners in their classroom belong to the Christian religion.

Those who belong to other religions always feel marginalised and as a result they step outside when prayers are held. In one inspection area a grade 1 teacher ended up in court, having asked a Muslim learner from an Indian community to attend the morning devotion even though his religion was not accommodated. The grade 1 teacher was charged with
propagating and violating doctrines which are church dogmas or denominational clauses (Kitshof 1990:4). Sometimes a learner would refuse to take the grade I teacher's instruction because of his religious background. The grade I teacher explained what a learner from a different religious background pointed out:

"My daddy does not read a bible at home, he reads koran"
(Bible for Muslim)

“One day we had a disaster at our school. The principal invited a preacher from a Buddhism community to come and conduct morning devotion. To our surprise 98% of our primary school learners and teachers left the morning assembly without being released by the principals whilst the preacher was still busy with the sermon”.

A synthesis of the foregoing discussion will be outlined in the next paragraph.

4.4 SYNTHESIS

Evidence derived from research instruments and techniques for data collection and analysis provided vital information, not only about what was happening in schools and classrooms, but also on what various stakeholders such as learners, parents, grade I teachers and others think is happening in school. Indeed, the research instruments and techniques acknowledged that those thoughts and feelings are themselves part of what is happening. In order to grasp the curriculum as a coherent whole it was important to understand what sense, if any, learners were making of their own learning. The problems posed by primary schools in Northern Province for the grade I teachers who work in them, and for the local communities of which they are a part, were also highlighted. Methodologically, therefore, the research instruments and techniques were indispensable bridges between the particular approach to evaluation advocated within this study and the particular notion of curriculum coherent that underpinned it.
In this chapter, the researcher elaborated on research instruments that were categorised in terms of the extent to which the form and sequence of the questions asked were pre-specified. How and to what extent the research instruments were pre-planned depended on the purpose of the exercise and the constraints that were operating. Evidence derived from implementation of the research instruments was used to arrive at conclusions regarding the current and recurrent needs of grade 1 teachers in terms of SBCD.

*In the forthcoming chapter, the researcher will focus on guidelines for grade 1 teachers’ involvement in SBCD. These are the strategies of curriculum development that will empower grade 1 teachers to fulfill and carry out roles of SBCD effectively and competently. These guidelines will derive in part from the needs identified in chapter 4.*
CHAPTER 5

GUIDELINES FOR GRADE 1 TEACHER’S INVOLVEMENT IN SBCD

Aim of chapter 5: In chapter 4 the researcher attempted to provide an illustration of research instruments, findings and data analysis, whereas this chapter focuses on guidelines for grade 1 teachers’ involvement in SBCD. It is on the basis of these guidelines, which evolved from needs identified in chapter 4, that the researcher will propose the stages of grade 1 teachers’ involvement in curriculum decision-making. (See item 5.1 and sub-headings 5.1.1-5.1.8). To avoid a discussion which is tantamount to duplication, the researcher will only tabulate the themes identified in the previous chapter on each stage of grade 1 teachers’ involvement in SBCD, and the recommendations thereof will be furnished in chapter 6. (Refer to item 6.2.1.1(a-j).)

5.1 STAGES OF GRADE 1 TEACHERS’ INVOLVEMENT IN CURRICULUM DECISION-MAKING

The rationale behind the guidelines is to conceptualize and describe practices, at the different stages, which are aimed at SBCD. The stages are prescriptive and partly descriptive. In other words they purport to tell what committees for grade 1 teachers’ representation should do or how they should assess what they do. These stages will provide concepts and categories for prescribing the realities of SBCD.

Brubaker (1994:116) shows that it is professional courtesy to involve teachers at the beginning of the process. The committees that operate on behalf of grade 1 teachers in all stages of participation in curriculum decision-making should allow for the sharing of responsibilities and powers in SBCD. (Compare chapter 2 item 2.1.1(a) and chapter 4 item 4.3.3). In the researcher’s guidelines, eight intertwined stages are proposed so as to establish a bottom-up approach on curriculum decision-making and development, with grade 1 teachers democratically represented at each stage. Furthermore, the proposed stages of grade 1 teachers’ committee participation in SBCD change from being an
autocratic top-down approach to a two-way traffic of democracy with more open communication channels. Through these stages grade 1 teachers are channelled potentially to influence their curriculum from a local set-up to a national set-up.

An introduction of grade 1 teachers and other participants at various stages implies a redistribution of autonomy and powers to individuals and facilitating task team committees. It is imperative for such committees to be of high calibre, more especially with respect to the authority with which they are invested, the professional competence of their members and the scope of their representation. Participatory curriculum decision-makers at all stages have to address themselves to the proposed nature of the school curriculum in relation to the current situation. (See figure 5.1 for the proposed stages of curriculum decision-making which directly influence decisions in schools).

Stage 1: grade 1 teachers' involvement in the classroom situation stage
Stage 2: grade 1 teachers' involvement in the school stage
Stage 3: grade 1 teachers' involvement in the learning programme stage
Stage 4: grade 1 teachers' involvement at circuit stage
Stage 5: grade 1 teachers' involvement at area stage
Stage 6: grade 1 teachers' involvement at regional stage
Stage 7: grade 1 teachers' involvement at provincial stage
Stage 8: grade 1 teachers' involvement at national stage
Figure 5.1 Stages of grade 1 teachers' involvement in curriculum decision-making and development
5.1.1 Stage 1: Grade 1 teachers' involvement in the classroom situation

The discussion document (1996:9) states that the aim of teacher utilization policies is to ensure that teachers, as the most expensive resource in education, are efficiently and equitably utilized. It is thus imperative for each grade I teacher to become a curriculum decision-maker together with learners in the classroom situation. Grade I teachers from schools in a province should form committees which represent them on issues about the classroom situation. These grade I teachers should be chosen from various regions to become representatives of all grade I teachers. The committee to be established should be called a Classroom Stage Curriculum development Facilitating Committee (CSCDFC).

5.1.1.1 The classroom as a centre of learning

The quality of the learning content to be presented to learners is determined by the availability of resources, as highlighted in chapter 4 paragraph 4.3.2. Resource materials, as well as teaching and learning media, contribute to the motivation of learners by stimulating a willingness to grasp the learning content. The concreteness of the experience stimulates the learners' senses and arouses their interest. Learning willingness can be stifled if the learning content is presented as mere facts, stripped of all wonder and interest (Krüger and Müller 1990:191).

Learning is not confined to a classroom but exists everywhere in the peripheral area of the school. The classroom should be the centre where thinking is tested for possible consequences, but most of the observable uses are distributed in the total surrounding environment. The classroom must have the conditions which develop the competences for obtaining knowledge from the environment.

5.1.1.2 Curriculum improvement involved with teaching tasks

Marsh (1993:33) indicates that a classroom teacher spends inordinate amounts of time creating a particular classroom climate. Curriculum improvement should be carried on
with almost every act of teaching. In fact, it should happen whenever a grade 1 teacher is concerned about a learner’s progress. Curriculum improvement takes place whenever a grade 1 teacher discusses with other teachers, or with the principal, the appropriate uses of certain types of materials. The curriculum is improved when there is a consideration of better ways of communicating with parents about the progress of learners in school. Curriculum change occurs when grade 1 teachers request more shelving for the placing of books and other materials to use with learning experiences. The improvement of lighting conditions in a classroom is an important step in curriculum development. Any set of conditions which is provided by grade 1 teachers, learners, principal, and citizens to improve learning experiences for learners can be classified as curriculum development.

5.1.1.3 Committee arrangements

A mistake often made by administrators and other staff members of a school system is the launching of a system-wide curriculum improvement program which is out of context with the level of classroom practice. The sudden impact and overwhelming nature of this procedure has a devastating effect on the perspective which grade 1 teachers entertain about instruction. This effect is further accentuated by the oft indulged in practice of setting up committee machinery to facilitate action on curriculum improvement. This may tend to create a frantic response which culminates in the decision to “get something ready for them.” Under this condition, thinking is not on a high level relationship to real learning, because the emphasis is on getting something done. This may eventuate into a “ground-out” document so as to have something to show as evidence of industrious application by the participants (Mohrman and Wohlsteter 1994:80).

Before grade 1 teachers function effectively in any form of organization there must be a body of substance to function about. The substance, further, must be of the type with which the grade 1 teachers feel some unity. They need to feel sufficiently familiar with it so that they can take hold of it in a feeling of confidence and with a sense of realization. Before people are ready to be productive in committees, there needs to be a period of “warming up” with respect to ideas about teaching and learning. This has to be done in
the locale of the classroom setting where grade 1 teachers and learners are daily planning the learning experiences as they see them in terms of their goals and objectives. The mechanical arrangement frequently represented by the committee system of curriculum development tends to effect a separation, between ideas as they appear in classroom practice and the isolated level of committee deliberation (Yukl 1994:19).

A hierarchical committee system promotes unrealistic meetings. Another deleterious effect which may be occasioned by the committee system of curriculum improvement is the tendency to arrange ideas in a rather subtle hierarchy relative to decision and action. This condition rests on the assumption that committee deliberation will be productive of better ideas than the deliberation of an individual with his neighbours in practice. This assumption is, of course, debatable. It is highly questionable whether the deliberation of members in the committees will result in greater productiveness, with respect to curriculum improvement, than that of the individual who has attained the attitude of asking questions about his or her practices and has made provisions in his or her classroom to test ideas in terms of those questions. Furthermore, it can be logically assumed that members participating at the classroom committee stage will come out with more workable ideas of high quality than individuals examining ideas together informally but intensively at the classroom level and in the classroom context. The hierarchical tendency of a mechanical committee system is further accentuated if there exists a coordinating committee with strict definitions of responsibility. Rather than becoming a body which related its efforts to the realization of considered outcomes teaching, the coordinating committee may assume a restrictive role in curriculum improvement. In other words, if a steering committee takes its label literally, the results may be a promulgation of unrealistic meanings.

5.1.1.4 Making the classroom a centre for handling ideas

Since the classroom is a laboratory for the handling of ideas, the curriculum workers, staff, learners, parents and other citizens should function together in this centre. Several classrooms together then become the centres for curriculum improvement. Although
there is no intention to advocate departmentalism, it is, nevertheless, reasonable to assume that individual grade 1 teachers are often more effective in working with one learning programme than another. It is proposed that every classroom should become some kind of centre or laboratory for ideas. It is extremely important also, that there be unity in ideas between one learning programme and others. It is perfectly logical and conducive to resourcefulness, however, to encourage individual staff members to expand the laboratory of ideas in terms of their special strengths and capabilities.

The schools in which the groups meet should be developed into a "charged" environment of ideas. Bulletin boards should carry high level questions, descriptive facts, a portrayal of frontier thinking, and other items of inquiry. The groups should work on ideas to take learning into the peripheral areas of knowledge envisaged by new discoveries and ventures in life skills, new frontiers of human relations, the dynamics of change, and other fields of inquiry. Many of the clues for charging the conditions for the study and analysis of ideas by the groups should come from the learning relationship between learners and the grade 1 teacher. For example, the Life Skills grade 1 teachers, meeting in one of the life skills rooms, should build on many of the ideas already developed with learners. Much of the thinking of the learners should be prominently portrayed at the circuit stage in the form of questions, graphs, pictographs, cartoons, pictures, and other forms of representation. It is, of course, always advisable to have representative learners working with the curriculum improvement groups.

5.1.1.5 Providing flexible room arrangements in school.

Although some learners in Northern Province are still taught under trees, it is strongly suggested that the classroom for grade 1 learners should be in one unit and large with ample space for group and individual play and work. There should be sufficient space in the centre of the room for rhythmic and group games. Besides this, there should be various nooks within the room which will lend themselves to planning in terms of the ideas which learners develop. They may wish to plan a book centre, a home centre, a life skills centre, and other areas of learning experiences.
The room should be arranged in such a way as to make it possible to work out ideas which go beyond the regular routine. For example, there should be an opportunity for learners to portray, in painting and drawing, what they think about things. This would give the grade 1 teacher some degree of insight about the concepts of learners and their efforts in solving problems. This is one way of enabling the grade 1 teacher to discover some of the values which learners hold. Many of the feelings and attitudes of learners will be revealed when they are released to think about the issues which appear in their painting, drawing, and clay modeling.

The rooms for grade 1 learners should also be spacious. There need to be special arrangements in their classrooms because it is important that they become more independent in improving the facilities for learning. For example, instead of the grade 1 teacher taking the major initiative in arrangements, the learners must become more responsible in developing their centres of interest in terms of the questions which are raised. In fact one of the principles of the South African OBE system is that learners are responsible for their learning progress (Cockburn 1997:6).

The grade 1 teacher should, of course, play a major part in structuring the environment for learning so that ideas can arise. The learners, however, acting on the many questions and ideas which have emerged in the classroom, will proceed with the development of arrangements which will make it possible to facilitate an understanding about them. At times these questions will have to be studied individually. In that case, the conditions should be such that learners will not be disturbed by each other. This calls for a more or less formal arrangement of seating. At other times, it is essential that learners study the questions and ideas together by working in groups. For that purpose, it would be helpful if the classroom could be blocked off into compartments where the different groups could work without disturbing each other. To facilitate opportunities for group study, it would be helpful either to have rooms other than the classroom available or to have lightweight sliding doors so that the room could be arranged into several sections.
5.1.1.6 Providing equipment appropriate to expansion of ideas

Although South Africa is experiencing financial constraints, it is assumed that if learning is to develop to its utmost potential, the classroom should be equipped accordingly. Among other common items needed to promote learning, there should be sufficient large size paper so that learners will have an opportunity to visualize their ideas in picture and graphic form. Each learning centre for Life Skills, Literacy, and Numeracy should have an ample supply of slides, film strips, and pictures which portray the meanings to be derived from the centre. Equipment such as a camera, film, and other materials should be available so that learners might learn to visualize an idea, from its inception to its completion. Maps of all types should be made available so that when learners proceed to senior grades they should identify the places in the nation and world where different types of thinking are developing. It is extremely important to have many maps which are not filled in so that learners might portray in various places on maps the international trouble spots, underdeveloped countries, conflict within countries, means of livelihood in different countries, and other items of international interest.

Classrooms should be equipped with plenty of bulletin board space, several easels, three or four chart holders, and exhibit tables so that the process and results of study and thinking may be visually represented. There are, of course, many other resources which should be included to promote effectiveness in learning. Enough, however, have been indicated to illustrate the importance of ample equipment in the classroom.
5.1.2 Stage 2: grade 1 teachers’ involvement in the school set up

Various themes which emanated from chapter 4 need thorough investigation at this particular stage. To mention a few: politics and teachers’ unions, the state of buildings in schools, COLTS, inadequate discipline and curriculum management and multi-cultural education. (See recommendations in chapter 6.2.1.1).

The school conforms to the cultural world within which it functions. It is never neutral but is shaped by the nature and needs of the community. It was observed in chapter 4 (items 4.3.10.1 to 4.3.10.4) that South Africa has a heterogeneous population as regards philosophy of life. Naturally, it is not always possible to provide a separate school in which education can be given to each group on the basis of that group's underlying ground motive and philosophy of life. The ideal situation in this regard is that learners should be taught to be sensitive to cultural diversity and that a sense of commonality should be developed, a realisation that all cultures interact with others and have implicit common elements.

Van der Stoep and Louw (1992:157) maintain that the school must provide for the educational demands and needs of society. Grade 1 teachers should be skilled and experienced in curriculum decision-making and development, to enhance their problem solving capacity. It is within the school set-up that grade 1 learners should be moulded and their talents developed (see chapter 2 paragraph 2.1.2.1). A committee at this stage should be termed a School Stage Curriculum development Facilitating Committee (SSCDFC) and it should be able to carry out the following tasks:

- To provide a means through which curriculum decisions and development activities based in the school are effectively co-ordinated.
- To liaise with curriculum developers at all stages of grade 1 teachers’ involvement in SBCD in order to promote staff development and follow-up developments in curriculum decision-making and development.
This committee, representing grade 1 teachers in all academic issues, should be drawn from various schools within a region.

According to the researcher, the committee should be composed of the following members:

- *Grade 1 teachers* with more than 5 years teaching experience.
- HODs representing different learning programmes, e.g. numerous literacy and life skills.
- School representatives from various teachers' associations such as SADTU, PEU etc.
- Delegates from schools representing different cultural backgrounds in *Northern Province* e.g. Tshivenda, Sesotho sa lebowa, Xitsonga, Afrikaans and English.
- Delegates from CSCDFC. (Refer to table 5.1).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stages of SBCD</th>
<th>Committees representing grade 1 teachers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage 1</td>
<td>Classroom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Grade 1 teachers' representatives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Heads of Department (HODs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Circuit and area managers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage 2</td>
<td>School</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Grade 1 teachers with more than 5 years experience</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- HODs representing different learning areas and programmes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- School representatives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- School delegates from different background</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Delegates from CSCDC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage 3</td>
<td>language programme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Learning programme task team</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- HODs deputy principals and principals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- School delegates for different languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage 4</td>
<td>Circuit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Area manager and circuit managers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Grade 1 teacher with 5 years experience and above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Deputy principal and principal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Delegation from various task teams in primary schools</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage 5</td>
<td>Area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Grade 1 teachers who have taught for more than 5 years and more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Area managers and circuit managers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Delegation of principals from different primary schools</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Delegation of grade 1 teacher representatives from classroom school, learning programme and circuit stage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Delegation from different cultural backgrounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage 6</td>
<td>Regional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- RDs, DGs and DDgs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- AM and CM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Delegation from various CDFTT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Delegation of grade 1 teachers with more than 5 years experience and university qualifications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Delegation of grade 1 teachers from different teachers' associations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Superintendents of education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage 7</td>
<td>Provincial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* MEC's for education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Delegates of grade 1 teachers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>From different teachers' Associations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Delegation of grade 1 teachers from various curriculum development task teams</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Delegation of principals and AM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage 8</td>
<td>National</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* University deans and VCs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Subject advisers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Education minister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Delegation of grade 1 teachers from CDTTC in all stages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- RDs, DDGs and DGs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Superintendents and MECs for education</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 5.1 Committees for grade 1 teachers' representatives in the stages of SBCD
Since the development of the conditions for learning experiences is the responsibility of every grade 1 teacher in the school, it follows that curriculum improvement is everyone's responsibility. It is necessary, however, for grade 1 teachers to provide the impetus for these initial attempts. Grade 1 teacher representatives chosen by the various local school units of the system should, of course, be involved in essential roles relative to the conditions.

With reference to the involvement of grade 1 teachers and others, attention should be directed to the thinking which conceives of curriculum improvement as within the context of the classroom. This means that there exists no hierarchical arrangement in the approach to curriculum questions. The direct attempts at curriculum development must take place in a local setting, preferably the school unit. Within the school unit it must have its initial beginning in the setting of familiarity for the grade 1 teacher. It seems, then, that the principal is the key person to provide the conditions for these beginnings of curriculum development.

5.1.2.1 Relationships with grade 1 teachers

The grade 1 teacher whose attitude is positive, does not experience his or her profession as drudgery, but finds that he or she is called to fulfill a specific function in society every day. This function he or she fulfills, by educating the learners entrusted to him or her, towards a positive adjustment to, and a readiness for, full acceptance of citizenship responsibilities. In his or her relationship with grade 1 learners, the grade 1 teacher should always bear in mind that the learners should develop towards independence and normative adulthood. A professional obligation rests on the grade 1 teachers' shoulder to try to develop every learner's potential. Excellent education skills should not be limited to attitude and objectives which advance character building. Teaching book knowledge alone is too limiting from a professional point of view. Learners should be taught to appreciate their own circumstances, their country and its democracy (Krüger and Müller 1990:283).
Marsh (1993:38) states that teachers expect their school principal to be a leader of *curriculum* initiatives. Although it is assumed that the principal, as leader, has certain goals in mind as well as vision and understanding with regard to the nature of *curriculum development* and implementation, he or she must establish a position of mutual operation by relating his or her vision and understanding to that of the *grade 1 teachers*. Leaders should enable teachers to deepen their perceptions, increase their awareness, perfect their skills, and sharpen their sense of purpose (Brubaker 1994:vii).

The principal is undoubtedly not able to carry through with all the suggestions that are offered by *grade 1 teachers*. Having implemented some of the suggestions, however, he or she is then on much safer ground to indicate his or her limitations. He or she can discuss why he or she is unable to bring about action on some suggestions and can indicate a rather frank expression of his or her thinking regarding them. Furthermore, having indicated a favourable disposition with respect to their goals, *grade 1 teachers* will feel safe to express what they consider their limitations with respect to their own questions. They will also be more favorably inclined to the principal’s goals.

5.1.2.2 Developing conditions for analysing instructional practices

Apart from the teacher-learner relationship and principal-teacher relationship, the grade 1 teacher should also realise that he performs his task as educator in the parent’s place (*in loco parentis*). The *grade 1 teachers* should make every effort to develop conditions which will stimulate the type of questioning of practices which will move other teachers into action on the points considered. Since the grade 1 teacher must recognize and accept his or her limitations relative to certain tasks, he or she should try to ascertain what questions he or she should be asking about those tasks. This may be an important step in providing the setting for question asking on the part of those concerned about learning practices.
Where overcrowded classes experience reading problems, grade 1 teachers should develop a satisfactory procedure in the improvement of reading skills by arranging for ability grouping. Someone else may question whether ability grouping is a sufficient step in promoting the individual potentialities of learners. Although the learners may experience a feeling of success and security by reading at the levels of their understanding, their efforts may become fossilised on those levels. The process of reading may become a routine which, if continued over a long period of time, may deaden any efforts at greater resourcefulness on the part of the learner.

5.1.2.3 Increasing the tempo of core improvement in schools

Marsh (1993:160) shows that school improvement refers to alterations in the programme and in the existing goals and values which could amount to considerable change. The staff should begin planning the reorganization of the more academic phases of the school curriculum to better serve the educational implications of the core curriculum. If, for example, the school under the core curriculum, is realistic about its essential guidance function, it must make adequate provision for every grade 1 teacher to have the time and facilities for personal conferences with learners and with their parents. This has not been a function of the grade 1 teacher in the traditional subject curriculum, but it is the very heart of the core curriculum. The organization of the core in large blocks of time serves many purposes, not the least important of which is guidance. Providing time for a more informal attack upon problem situations that develop competencies to make adequate personal adjustment is one important aspect of the guidance function of modern education which is made possible by large time blocks within the force organization.

The experience of schools operating on the core plan indicates that more time is needed for general and special faculty group consultations to implement the guidance function. A flexible programme subject to frequent changes necessitates constant group planning and frequent opportunity for consultation.
In primary schools, attention should now be directed to what aspects of the total school curriculum should be given over to special-interest areas, and in what way these areas are to be related to the basic learning programme. Although the learning programme is specifically concerned with the aspects of behavioral competencies that all should possess in some degree, it cannot be developed in isolation from some special interest areas. Education must be a total pattern that meets all the needs of learners, and must be fully integrated. There is general agreement in educational circles that the core concept should involve the entire elementary school program.

At the stage of the developing core curriculum, if the problem has not previously arisen, schools should come to grips with the problem of how to assess learning as now conceived, and how such learning progress is to be reported to parents and defined for the school records. It can no longer be sidestepped when much of the curriculum is being organized on the core basis. To provide time and opportunity for pre-planning based on the learner's stage of development, schools should arrange pre-opening conferences in which clinical sessions are conducted between present and past grade 1 teachers.

School-based programs should be developed and implemented cooperatively by grade 1 teachers and principals. The role of the supervisor is that of adviser, taking part in staff meetings, helping to conceptualize problems, promoting creative problem-solving by grade 1 teachers, and offering practical suggestions on conducting research.

Yet the problem of curriculum materials should not be viewed solely as a quantitative problem. The problem also has a qualitative dimension. Curriculum change depends on the choice and effective use of appropriate materials. The selection process is often given short shrift by schools. The result is an enormous waste of time and money, and curriculum change is at the closet level only. Closets filled with unused materials are the result of schools having taken shortcuts in the process of choosing and using the tools of change. The interests of curriculum improvement will not be advanced by the inappropriate selection and use of materials. Attention must be given to helping grade 1 teachers to select and evaluate materials wisely and use them well.
5.1.3 Stage 3: *Grade 1 teachers’ involvement in the learning programme*

The following themes which cropped up in chapter 4 will be treated at this particular stage: *grade 1 teachers’* attitudes towards *SBCD*, professional growth and experience in *SBCD*, multi-cultural education and *SBCD*. (Refer to recommendations in chapter 6 item 6.2.11).

Gardner (1991:6) says that teachers cannot realistically assess learners if they do not know in advance exactly what they want students to learn. For one to achieve uniformity among *grade 1 teachers*, *curriculum* decision-making and development strategies should be established at the stage where all learning programmes related to *curriculum* matters, in all the schools within a province, can be optimally co-ordinated. The researcher is of the opinion that the established committee should be comprise the following members:

- Numeracy-Based *Curriculum development* Task Team
- Literacy-Based *Curriculum development* Task Team
- Life skills-Based *Curriculum development* Task Team
- Senior personnel in a school, such as HODs, deputy principal and principal
- Delegates from CSCDFC
- Delegates from schools representing different language backgrounds as mentioned under item 5.1.2.

The Learning Programme Based *Curriculum Development Committee* (LPBCDC) should, along with *grade 1 teachers*, develop interrelated teaching materials for learners in the school. Materials intended for direct instructional use include a workbook, a pair of scissors, crayons, paint, brush, magazines, empty boxes of cereal, and many others. Supporting materials include a teacher’s guide and resource book. To help *grade 1 teachers* who are considering the use of these materials, the committee should encourage the development of instructional programs that enable *grade 1 teachers* to study the new course in detail. (See table 5.2: Roles of *grade 1 teachers’* representation in *SBCD*).
For its various activities, the committee should blend teaching experience at several levels with deep insight into the nature and meaning of learning programmes. The materials developed by these teams should be used in classes and subjected to close scrutiny by the grade 1 teachers, who use them, and by the committee’s staff observers. The course materials should be tried, assessed, and revised for two years before they are released for general use. The committee, in the course of its work, should establish a permanent organization to provide for revision and related development.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STAGES</th>
<th>Task of grade 1 teachers' representation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stage 1</strong></td>
<td>• Catering for students needs and interests • Innovatory skills in developing materials • Deliberations about day to day problems in the class situation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classroom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching and learning situation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stage 2</strong></td>
<td>• Co-ordination team based commitment to curriculum research evaluation • Classification of curriculum materials and other resources • Staff development programmes for grade 1 teachers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School Primary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stage 3</strong></td>
<td>• Curriculum ownership of components • An interwovenness of learning programmes • Regular meetings on curriculum changes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Learning programme</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numeracy, literacy and life skills</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stage 4</strong></td>
<td>• Maintaining balance and integration on all curricula • Motivating grade 1 teachers to upgrade their studies • Acquiring inservice and pre-service training programmes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circuit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stage 5</strong></td>
<td>• To emphasize uniformity in assessment procedures in schools • Liasing with curriculum decision-making committees at other stages of SBCD Establishing linkages for acquiring curriculum materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stage 6</strong></td>
<td>• Ensuring prompt and efficient utilization of supporting resources for the region • Follow-up sessions • Organising seminars and workshops for grade 1 teachers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regional</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stage 7</strong></td>
<td>• Interpretation of curriculum policy and guidelines from national stage • Acquiring curriculum materials and other technical equipment • Establishing teachers' resource support base centres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provincial</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stage 8</strong></td>
<td>• An analysis of current problem curriculum development Grade 1 teachers' involvement in SBCD in a country conducting research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
As the grade 1 teachers from the various fields come together, valuable ideas about curriculum improvement will take shape. Hunches which various teachers have should be tested, plans should be developed, and the quality of thinking about the improvement of curriculum experiences should be expanded. The effect of different forms of communication on the behavior of learners should be studied. The whole question of the relationship of behaviour to communication should be analysed in different settings for learning. Samples of communication should be taken from magazines, newspapers, television, advertising and other media and studied and analyzed for probable effectiveness. The use of language as an instrument of threat, persuasion, beauty, and status should be critically examined.

The grade 1 teachers should be responsible for writing lessons in each of the units and for conceptualizing the type of support materials that they believe will increase the effectiveness of the lessons. The working procedures should be that each grade 1 teacher should write a draft version of the learning activities and have it reviewed by either the team members or by the entire committee. After this initial review, the materials should be revised and reviewed by the grade 1 teachers who serve as consultants. Following their recommendations the lesson should be used in the classroom of the grade 1 teacher, and subsequently further revisions can be made (Fullan 1992:80).

It is important to note here that the process of group planning and review of curriculum materials is complicated and time consuming. Even seemingly minor decisions, such as whether to use slides of works of art or cardboard reproductions for a particular lesson, may elicit a full hour or more of discussion. Though these discussions appear to some to be inefficient and frustrating, they are a necessary part of curriculum planning. The teams that write curricula should also be responsible for conceptualizing the instructional support materials to accompany their written work. In most cases members of the team should also construct these materials and make copies of each, so that complete sets of materials become available in classrooms.
5.1.4 Stage 4: grade 1 teacher’s involvement at circuit level

The following themes which are relevant to this specific stage will be dealt with in chapter 6 item 6.2.1.1: COLTS, professional growth and experience in SBCD, politics and teachers’ unions, multicultural education and SBCD.

The role of the committee representing grade 1 teachers at circuit level should make curriculum development attractive to all participants. The major premise of this strategy is that curriculum development can take place if the conditions for change can be made sufficiently appealing for action by the staff of an entire circuit. Thus the commitment to change, using an influence strategy, is usually based on a perceived benefit to the participant, not on the change per se. According to the researcher the Circuit-Based Curriculum Development Committee (CBCDC) to act on behalf of grade 1 teachers should be composed of the following members:

- Inspectors and circuit inspectors
- Grade 1 teachers who have taught for more than five years
- LPBCDC
- Deputy principals and principals
- Delegates from various committees in schools.

5.1.4.1 Conditions for unity and quality in learning experiences

Each circuit should become an idea room for the purpose of promoting quality with respect to the learning experiences of learners. Each circuit, of course, should be used at different times by a group of grade 1 teachers and other curriculum workers to develop and examine ideas, and raise the quality of experiences for learners. Individuals other than grade 1 teachers may also be participants and learners in these settings for curriculum development.
It is envisioned that the various bulletin boards, tables, and bookshelves should be constituted as centres for the portrayal of ideas in relation to learning experiences. Since it is assumed that the available rooms at circuit stage are self-contained units, the bulletin boards, tables, and so on, will carry ideas and meanings relative to different learning programmes. For example a circuit may invite experts for Life Skills, for Literacy, for Numeracy, and so on. If the grade 1 teachers at circuit stage have considerable background and interest in Literacy, that area may become interesting to them. It may be that this circuit will become the meeting place for the development of ideas to improve instructional practices in Literacy. In another circuit, the grade 1 teacher’s interests and special capabilities may point the major emphasis toward Life-Skills. This circuit may be the best meeting place for the handling of ideas to bring about better learning experiences in life skills.

Another room at circuit stage may be the best place for the development of meaning relative to numeracy. The groups of grade 1 teachers and other workers in the curriculum that meet in the different rooms should not be segregated in terms of learning programmes. The group, meeting for the purpose of handling ideas about Life Skills, should be composed of grade 1 teachers and others who will have varied interests and strengths. The people of this group, who have backgrounds and capabilities in connection with study areas other than life skills, should bring unity to the ideas designed to improve life skills experiences with learners. The same would be true with the groups meeting in another circuit. Serious problems in addressing learners should also be discussed at circuit level because most grade 1 teachers perceive learners with special needs as not their problem (Davies and Green 1998:97).

The following circuits under Northern Region, which is Region 3 of the Northern Province, should have their own committees of grade 1 teachers and task team for curriculum development:
MALAMULELE
- Malamulele central circuit
- Malamulele East circuit
- Malamulele North East circuit
- Vhumbedzi circuit

MUTALE
- Mudaswali circuit
- Niani circuit
- Sambandou circuit
- Tshilamba circuit

SEKGOSESE
- Sekgosese central circuit
- Sekgosese east circuit
- Sekgosese north circuit
- Sekgosese west circuit

SOUTPANSBERG
- Soutpansberg east circuit
- Soutpansberg north circuit
- Soutpansberg west circuit
- Nzhelele east circuit
- Nzhelele west circuit

THOHOYANDOU
- Luvuvhu circuit
- Mutshundudi circuit
- Mvudi circuit
- Sibasa circuit
• Tshinane circuit

VUWANI

• Dzindi circuit
• Dzondo circuit
• Vhuronga 1 circuit
• Vhuronga 2 circuit

As has been stated before, grade 1 teachers must be involved in the conditions for curriculum improvement. Curriculum improvement is to be equated with the development of high quality learning experiences in the classroom. As grade 1 teachers question present instructional practices, they consult each other for an approach to some answers. Each circuit should become a centre or laboratory for the handling of ideas. The handling of ideas implies, of course, that learners, grade 1 teachers, and others will be engaged in the tasks of developing relationships between ideas. Each circuit then, will become a centre for the development of unity of knowledge and understanding. In addition to the procedures of curriculum improvement in the context of the classroom circuit and learner-teacher relationships, each circuit should be viewed as a centre or laboratory for study, research, and the handling of ideas by the grade 1 teachers and others. Thus everyone, learners, grade 1 teachers, and other staff members must be engaged in becoming increasingly more conversant with content and the unity of knowledge (Stoll and Fink 1992:98).

As indicated before, curriculum development tasks are equated with the learning experiences of young people. The plan proposed suggests no revolutionary changes in the pattern of learner programmes. It does suggest continued study and attention to the treatment of ideas in each circuit, so that high quality learning conditions will be provided. The plan further proposes that a definite place be provided by the grade 1 teacher for the handling of ideas with respect to topics which would cut across possible learning programme barriers.
5.1.5 Stage 5: *grade 1 teachers' involvement at an area level*

Different themes, which became apparent in chapter 4, are applicable to this stage, namely the timing for *curriculum* implementation and the knowledge explosion, *grade 1 teachers’* attitude towards *SBCD*, unequal access to ownership in *SBCD*, politics and teachers unions, multi-cultural education and *SBCD*. (See relevant recommendations in chapter 6 item 6.2.1.1).

For *grade 1 teachers* to be actively involved in *SBCD*, they should also be represented at areas of inspection because they know their learners, classrooms, situation, environment and school in a practical way that external *curriculum* developers cannot know. A critical demand of any school change process is readiness for *curriculum* change—that is, a school staff that perceives a discrepancy between what is and what could be going on in their schools. It is likely that readiness for change comes about in an idiosyncratic manner in each school and is based on that school’s cultural peculiarities. The Area-Based *Curriculum Development Committee* (ABCDC) for representing *grade 1 teachers* at an area level should be comprised of the following members to make it representative of all stakeholders.

- Inspectors and area managers
- Delegation of principals from different areas and schools
- *Grade 1 teachers* who have taught for more than five years and also possess a university qualification e.g. Bachelor of Arts (BA)
- Committees of *grade 1* teachers from classroom, school, learning programmes and circuit levels
- Delegates from various areas and schools, representing different cultural backgrounds as reflected in 5.1.2.

The following areas under Northern Region 3 of the *Northern Province* (compare chapter 1 item 1.4.2) should have their own committees of *grade 1 teachers* and task teams for *curriculum development*:
• Malamulele area
• Mutale area
• Sekgosese area
• Soutpansberg area
• Thohoyandou area
• Vuwani area

The committee of an area level has the responsibility of developing those conditions which will make possible increased opportunity for fulfilment, to the utmost, of the potential of grade 1 learners.

5.1.5.1 Developing leadership for high quality learning

The area managers leader must open up the channels for free inquiry, must value differences, and provide the conditions which will involve everyone in the examination and appraisal of ideas, so as to promote high quality in learning. Goals and methods should also be shared with the public (Knapp, Bankveg, Ferguson and Hill 1998:402).

Good leadership provides the avenues for resourcefulness to be developed by all individuals in the curriculum setting. This resourcefulness, starting with pride in some tasks, the raising of questions about instructional practices, and the production of that impact which intensifies the approach to ideas, will generate recognized leadership in all the centres of the area. The impact provided by the conditions for freedom of inquiry, the accentuation and valuing of differences, the questions which have evolved as a result of critical appraisal of instructional practices, should develop a type of absorbing excitement about ideas which will make curriculum tasks self-propelled.

5.1.5.2 Conditions for continuous occupation with ideas

In any program of curriculum development, it is important that the experiences be of such high quality that a saturation in the stimuli of ideas is never reached. Areas of inspection are necessary and no school could operate effectively without them. It is
important, however, that the emphasis on the area be critically examined. It is imperative that the conditions for learning be developed in such a manner that the arrangements in the classroom will be within suitable conditions. Therefore, in every step of planning the school building and facilities, the conditions which are to be developed for learning, should take precedence.

*Grade 1 teachers* and other *curriculum* experts who are involved with the development and expansion of ideas should, of course, constantly work to improve learning experience at an area stage. The provision for a wide range of learning experiences should tend to promote the intensive and extensive pursuit of ideas by the committee. This very provision must lead to a discovery of the potential of learners which may demand some additional conditions for intensive inquiry, study, and research in the learning programmes and in the questions which have evolved in the classrooms. It is suggested, therefore, that additional centres of learning be developed where extensive study and examination of ideas, over and above that which takes place in the classrooms, may be carried on. Not only should learners be encouraged to go beyond the learning experiences in the classroom, but provision should be made for them to be able to do so.

The areas of inspection should serve as important centres for various circuits. The circuits should use these centres for study, research, and the pursuit of ideas into higher realms of inquiry. New buildings should be planned to have several classrooms designed for seminar groups, and intensive study and research beyond the usual program of learning. Some of the classrooms should have sections designed to provide these additional opportunities for learners (Yukl 1994:80).

The resource centres of areas of inspection should be well-stocked with all types of books and pamphlets. They should have facilities for transferring books and resource materials for use with topics which evolve in the classrooms. Projectors for films, slides, pictures, and film strips should be available for the asking. There should be plenty of space and facilities for storage of equipment and supplies. The rooms should have many stationary and movable bulletin boards, chart-holders, easels, a book-cart, and other useful features.
With the involvement of grade 1 teachers in the curriculum improvement tasks, the regular programme should be one of high quality learning experiences. The additional centres should be designed to give more time for learners to follow through in an intensive study and analysis of those high level ideas which have already been started, as well as the launching of others. Learners with special educational needs require more time, planning and effort in order to help them to learn. The committee at an area level should visit schools on a regular basis to see if grade 1 teachers are not encountering problems on academic matters. Where there are discrepancies, the committee should iron them out (Du Toit 1995:2).

Additional staff members should be procured to work with the grade 1 teachers in these extra centres for learning. This could be in the form of In-service Education and Training (INSET) in which grade 1 teachers may be offered workshops on how to cope in SBCD. These extra staff members will be needed because the regular schedule for many grade 1 teachers will be extended at least one period for part or all of the week. Besides the additional staff members, resource people from industry, labour, the professions, and various trades and occupations should be brought in as consultants in the areas of inspection. From time to time the services of consultants from teacher training colleges, universities, and technical institutions should be utilized in promoting high level learning experiences. People from the various learning programmes should be invited to serve both as staff consultants and with grade 1 teachers.

The researcher believes that when organized efforts and plans are made to involve grade 1 teachers as participants in curriculum improvement, their co-operation in the whole exercise would lead to other owning the curriculum. This will enable parents to regard with pride a school system which not only places high value on the belief that there lies great potential in all learners and youth, but which also provides a workable plan for the realization of that potential at a high level of learning.
5.1.6 Stage 6: Grade 1 teachers' involvement at regional stage

At this stage the most important duties of a regional council are to exercise control over buildings and grounds, multi-cultural education, politics and teachers' unions, timing and curriculum implementation. As was indicated in chapter 4 (paragraph 4.3.1) South Africa is caught up in a dilemma of financial constraints whereby funds are pumped into other projects for health, e.g. immunisation of babies or Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome campaigns (AIDS), and too little is done on education.

Grade 1 teacher representation at regional level should play a pivotal role. It must provide linkages to, and direct representation of, the region at the national level. Furthermore, it must allow for decision-makers to co-ordinate curricula, and assume responsibility for working towards and maintaining consensus in curriculum decisions taken by various schools within a region. In the researcher's opinion a grade 1 teachers' Regional-Based Curriculum development Committee (RBCDC) should be fully represented at regional level by the following key members:

- Regional Directors (RD), Director generals (DGs) and Deputy Director general (DDGs) and delegates of principals from schools,
- Managers (so-called inspectors: (M) and Area Managers (AM)
- Delegates from various Curriculum Development Facilitating Teams such as schools, circuit and areas of inspection.
- Delegates of grade 1 teachers with more than five years teaching experience and at least a university qualification e.g. BA(Ed)
- Delegates of grade 1 teachers' representatives from various teachers' associations
- Superintendents of education, drawn in from various provincial departments of education.
The researcher is of the viewpoint that the tasks of a RBCDC should be as follows:

- To support *grade 1 teachers* with training programmes and follow-ups in *curriculum development* issues through INSET workshops, conferences, seminars, and excursions for regions on regular basis
- To formulate regional *curriculum research* and assessment strategies which may enable *grade 1 teachers* to identify problematic issues related to *SBCD* within a region
- To develop guidelines, *curriculum priorities*, syllabi and document which meet relevant regional issues
- To modify regional and environmental resources e.g. traditional, technical and production skills
- To establish a *grade 1 teachers'* resources support system through teachers’ centres and *curriculum development* support services.

The following regions in *Northern Province* should formulate their own committees representing *grade 1 teachers* at regional level:

- Region 1: Western Region
- Region 2: Central Region
- Region 3: Northern Region
- Region 4: North East Region
- Region 5: Eastern Region
- Region 6: Southern Region
- Region 7: Bushbuckridge.

Community resources, problems and related factors tend to emphasize unmet needs for education and thus to stimulate *curriculum* improvement. It should also be noted that seldom are state regulations so limiting that local school districts have no leeway to experiment with a new *curriculum*. This requires *grade 1 teachers* to be more knowledgeable about the use of concepts and about the underlying philosophies of *OBE* (Towers 1992:300; Arjun 1998:23; and Steyn and Hilkin 1998:205).
5.1.7 Stage 7: Grade 1 teachers’ involvement at provincial stage

The following matters which emanated from chapter 4 are applicable to this particular stage: timing for curriculum implementation and the knowledge explosion, COLTS, politics and teachers’ unions, grade 1 teachers’ attitude towards SBCD, multi-cultural education and SBCD. (See chapter 6 item 6.2.1.1).

Here, too, representation of grade 1 teachers is of paramount importance to curriculum development because it influences directly the interpretation of the curriculum in actual teaching-learning situations. Furthermore, it determines the extent to which grade 1 teachers can competently participate in curriculum decision-making and development activities. The representatives for grade 1 teachers in the Provincial-Based Curriculum development Committee (PBCDC) should have a say regarding learning programmes, teaching and learning materials and many other academic issues in the school. This guarantees equality in curriculum ownership as members at the provincial stage are to enjoy curriculum responsibilities with committees in other stages, as indicated in figure 5.2.

![Diagram](image-url)
The representatives should ensure that there is provision for grade 1 teachers’ autonomy on curriculum related matters, within existing decision-making structures. The committee which represents grade 1 teachers at provincial level should be constituted of various members because local communities determine the nature of decisions.

- Grade 1 teachers from various Curriculum development facilitating teams such as regional, area, circuit, and school structures
- Delegates of provincial and Area Managers(AM)
- Members of executive councils in education (MEC)
- DG, DDG and RD
- Delegation of grade 1 teachers from different teachers’ associations and cultural backgrounds.

The researcher suggests that the role of the provincial curriculum development committee representing grade 1 teachers should be as follows:

- To establish a detailed picture of the actual SBCD situation pertaining in the entire province.
- To conduct a feasibility study prior to the designing and implementation of actual programmes.
- To ensure that grade 1 teachers cease being passive recipients of curriculum packages and directives from the centre or national level, by becoming curriculum developers in partnership with other legitimate curriculum developers.
- To apply democratic curriculum decision-making and attendant monitoring for quality control purposes.
- To deliberate upon curriculum directives and views received from the structure and also to have the opportunity to generate valuable ideas and recommendations for utilization by the school and other stages of SBCD.
- To ensure that there is an interwovenness of both learning areas and learning programmes and to establish the extent to which the learning programme could be translated from theory to practice and the extent to which learners could be motivated intrinsically.
The committee representing grade I teachers should recommend to the board of education that provision be made for this and other similar additions to the curriculum, based upon the combined approval of school staff and advisory committee. In many situations that concern the immediate problems of the school in relation to the community, the advisory committee should be the best and most easily obtained source of community help. Whatever other organizational set-up may serve the needs and interests of the community more extensively, the advisory committee must be the most flexibly adaptable to specific needs of the school. But such a committee, by its very design, must have a limited usefulness in the over-all integration of school-community activities. The purpose of such a council is to acquaint citizens with total community needs and resources, and to co-ordinate those resources in an attack upon community problems. The researcher proposes that the general purposes should be more definitely stated thus:

- To promote co-operation among organizations and citizens interested in community improvement.
- To foster the co-ordination of efforts of the foregoing organizations and individuals in community betterment.
- To sponsor the study of conditions, needs, and resources.
- To develop public understanding and support.
- To secure democratic action in meeting local needs through existing agencies, organizations and institutions.

Some minimum conditions are required to support successful curriculum development within a school. At present it seems more useful to discover what these minimum conditions are than to speculate about which agency can or cannot support development optimally.
5.1.7.1 A development team

Jack (1996:4) says that curriculum change and relevant development thereof is one way in which transformation can be realized. Successful curriculum development requires that grade 1 teachers must work together toward a mutual goal. Many factors make a group of people necessary. No single individual possesses all the skills and knowledge needed for high quality curriculum development. The team requires grade 1 teachers with special knowledge of the subject matter, with knowledge about learners, with evaluation skills, with technical skills in media development, and with instructional experience at the grade level and in the learning content to be treated. When these competencies are not satisfied by members of the team, they can be met in part through consultants. It is better, nevertheless, that team members possess these competencies and use consultants only to supplement their strengths. A typical cause for the failure of SBCD has been over­dependence upon one or two individuals who were presumed to know all that was required, or who expected to draw upon consultants for the information and skills they lacked.

5.1.7.2 A need to tap provincial resources

It is important that the curriculum development team should be able to draw upon the province as a whole for its support and not be tied too closely to any one school. For example, a development project that is viewed only as an activity of the school may have problems in securing the co-operation of those who are not members of that particular school. One way to avoid this problem is to provide a separate location for the curriculum development project, rather than base it within a single school. This puts the project on neutral ground, making it somewhat easier for people from any school. It also removes staff members from their regular offices, thereby tending to divorce them from the normal academic pressures that compete for their time and attention.
5.1.8 Stage 8: Grade 1 teachers' involvement at national stage

Various needs which became apparent in chapter 4 are more relevant to this particular stage, namely timing for curriculum implementation and the knowledge explosion, COLTS, SBCD, multi-cultural education and SBCD. (Refer to chapter 6 item 6.2.1.1 for details).

The discussion document (1996:9) shows that the development of a national policy framework for teacher education is part of a larger process of reconstruction and development in South Africa. Grade 1 teacher representatives at a national stage should not merely involve large numbers of grade 1 teachers being physically present for central deliberations. What matters most at this stage is not the number of representatives but the effective role to be played by these representatives. Grade 1 teachers should be fully represented on the National Curriculum development Facilitating Task Team Committee (NCDFTTC). Democracy should be exercised between centrally appointed grade 1 teachers, and those grade 1 teachers delegated by their colleagues through the local curriculum decision-making task team committee. Furthermore, curriculum decision-making and development at a national stage should cease to be the exclusive preserve of curriculum located at the centre. In fact, it should become a joint effort between grade 1 teachers and other participants drawn from the Curriculum development Task Team Committee, from the classroom stage to the national stage. Based on the researcher's opinions, in order to ensure broader representation, the NCDFTTC for representing grade 1 teachers should be composed of the following people:

- Delegates of grade 1 teachers and principals drawn from various Curriculum development Task Team Committees (CDTTC), AMs from provincial stage
- RDs, DDGs, and DGs
- Circuit Managers (CMs), AMs from provincial stage
- Superintendent of education and MECs for education
- Delegates of university officials with deans of schools and Vice Chancellors (VCs)
- Subject advisors and representatives of grade I teachers from various Teachers Professional Association (TPAs) at national stage.

It is proposed that the following provinces of South Africa should have their own committees that represent grade I teachers in all stages of curriculum decision-making:

- The Northern Province
- The Western Cape Province
- The Eastern Cape Province
- The Northern Cape Province
- The Kwazulu Natal Province
- The North West Province
- The Free State Province
- The Mpumalanga Province
- The Gauteng Province

The researcher proposes that crucial roles for the NCDFTTC should include the following:

- To ensure that curriculum development resources with an infrastructure such as laboratories, conference and workshop facilities, transport system, funding, curriculum experts and many others are not only focused at the centres.
- Provision for a working ambience which professionally and intrinsically motivates, grade I teachers and other stakeholders to engage in curriculum decision-making and development.
- To forge linkages for curriculum decision-making and development with both national and political organizations which are engaged in formulating and monitoring the national education policy.
• To modify the current professional standards of *curriculum development* for *grade 1 teachers* at all stages of *SBCD* by formulating INSET and Training (PRESET) programmes.

• To identify and analyse current and recurrent *curriculum decision-making* development problems at national and international levels and focus on strategies for solutions of problematic issues at all stages. Where possible, expatriate consultancy may also be effective.

In terms of knowledge regarding teaching practice, the NCDFTTC should represent the best clinical expertise available. In fact, this assumption adds another dimension, to the argument that *grade 1 teachers* must be substantively involved in the process of *curriculum* change. It further suggests that the clinical expertise of *grade 1 teachers* should be used to test and alter *curriculum* ideas so that they may be more meaningfully applied in schools. Not to use the clinical expertise of *grade 1 teachers* risks the demise of a perfectly good *curriculum* procedure, for the mere fact that it was not modified to meet the realities of the *SBCD* and the *grade 1 teachers* expected to implement it. In a sense, *grade 1 teachers* and other *curriculum* administrators need to reinvent the wheel each time *curriculum* change is generated within the school building. Staff development should be viewed as an ongoing part of the school programme improvement process. Staff development should assist *grade 1 teachers* to sharpen their programme improvement outcomes, and to establish commitment and ownership gradually as the process unfolds. It is thus worth noting that without *grade 1 teacher* representation at all stages of *SBCD*, negotiations cannot be viewed as non-partisan and democratic in South Africa. This ensures democratic ownership and advocates a bottom-up approach, as reflected in figure 5.3:
Stage 8 -> National
Stage 7 -> Provincial
Stage 6 -> Regional
Stage 5 -> Area
Stage 4 -> Circuit
Stage 3 -> Learning programme
Stage 2 -> School
Stage 1 -> Classroom

Figure 5.3 Stages of grade 1 teachers' involvement (bottom-up approach)
5.2 SYNTHESIS

In the preceding discussion, the researcher outlined the significance of grade 1 teachers' autonomy as a contributing factor in favour of their participation in SBCD. Grade 1 teachers' involvement in curriculum decision-making and development issues, is a serious responsibility towards democratising curriculum development. The representation of grade 1 teachers on committees at all stages of SBCD enables grade 1 teachers to enjoy democratic ownership and control of the school curriculum. Diversified curriculum paradigms yield pitfalls in regulating the SBCD and in establishing a spirit of mutual respect and understanding among grade 1 teachers and other relevant parties. Grade 1 teachers' involvement in SBCD reduces the current top-down curriculum approach to teachers, which deprives them from the process of interpreting national aspirations into relevant SBCD priorities.

*In chapter 5 the researcher has given an overview of guidelines for grade 1 teachers' involvement in SBCD, whereas in chapter 6 concluding remarks, summary and recommendations will be provided.*
CHAPTER 6

RECOMMENDATIONS AND CONCLUDING REMARKS

**Aim of chapter 6:** Recommendations in this study are mostly based on the findings identified in chapter 4, and the guidelines regarding grade 1 teachers' involvement in SBCD which were presented in chapter 5. Chapter 6 will focus on recommendations, the implications thereof and concluding remarks.

Figure 6.1 presents recommendations regarding the following themes which recurred in chapters 4 and 5:

- The state of buildings in primary schools.
- Lack of resources
- Unequal access to ownership in SBCD.
- The timing of *curriculum* implementation and the knowledge explosion.
- *Grade 1 teachers*’ attitudes towards *SBCD*.
- Culture of teaching and learning.
- Professional growth and experience in *SBCD*.
- Inadequate discipline and *curriculum* management.
- Politics and teachers’ unions.
- Multi-cultural education and *SBCD*.

**6.1 SUMMARY**

This study was triggered by a genuine concern over the influence of the centre-periphery model on the school *curriculum* and the limited extent to which *grade 1 teachers* are currently involved in *SBCD*. It became apparent that *grade 1 teachers* do not make significant contributions to *curriculum* issues and decision-making and that there ignorance with regard to the theory and practice of curriculating. It is on the basis of *grade 1 teachers*’ exclusion that the particular themes evolved as highlighted in chapter 4.
items 4.3.1-4.3.10. Guidelines for grade 1 teachers' involvement in SBCD were provided in chapter (5 items 5.1.1-5.1.8) on the basis of a synthesis of these needs.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>THEMES</th>
<th>RECOMMENDATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The state of buildings in schools</td>
<td>Ministry of education to intervene, NGOs have a critical role, Fundraising by community</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lack of resources</td>
<td>Improvisation in teaching, INSET for developing grade 1 teachers' behaviour, Inclusion in the training curriculum for prospective teachers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unequal access to ownership in SBCD</td>
<td>Participation in curriculum design and development, Democratic ownership of SBCD, Sharing of ideas amongst committee members</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The timing of curriculum</td>
<td>Seminars, workshops and conferences, Situation analysis, Core curriculum for prospective students</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>implementation and the knowledge explosion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 1 teachers' attitude</td>
<td>Exemplary lives by grade 1 teachers, Extrinsic and intrinsic motivation, Autonomy in SBCD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>towards SBCD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Culture of teaching and learning</td>
<td>School visits by government officials, Follow-up sessions, Didactic strategies in COLTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Professional growth and</td>
<td>INSET, Staff development programmes, Capacity building and quality assurance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>experience in SBCD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inadequate discipline and</td>
<td>Parental involvement, Decision-making, Joint effort of stakeholders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>curriculum management</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Politics and teachers' unions</td>
<td>Equality of viewpoints, Respect for each other, Exchange of ideas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi-cultural education and</td>
<td>No culture is superior or inferior to another, Activities on cultural day, An anti-racist approach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBCD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 6.1** Recommendation for grade 1 teachers' involvement in SBCD
6.1.1 Background to the problem

The core of the problem which was dealt with in the study is geared towards the "top-down" approach of curriculum development in South Africa, as illustrated by the grade 1 teachers of the Northern Province, whereby a decision taken by a central authority, at high level is communicated downwards in hierarchical order to the unfortunate grade 1 teachers who have no choice but simply to implement curriculum packages without any prior involvement in their development (Consult chapter 1, item 1.2.1). In fact, critics of this style of curriculum development which is frequently underpinned by power coercive dissemination strategies, view it as undemocratic and an infringement of the professional rights of teachers (Marsh 1994:70).

6.1.2 The problem

A thorny issue in the school curriculum is therefore that grade 1 teachers are not fully involved in curriculum decision-making. For any educational innovation to be successful the grade 1 teachers must not be operated by remote control. Curriculum design and development is not placed in the hands of grade 1 teachers and experience of learners at the Foundation Phase. Curriculum development maximizes the effectiveness of teaching and learning through change in planned context, activities and arrangements for the educational process. Curriculum decision-making by different stakeholders without grade 1 teachers' involvement is indeed a futile exercise. The grade 1 teachers' proximity to the actual learning situation is a valuable source of information to curriculum developers. Teacher training courses at institutions of higher learning must recognise the value of grade 1 teachers' involvement in SBCD.

6.1.3 The investigation

An introductory orientation to the problem of grade 1 teachers' involvement in SBCD in the Northern Province was provided in the first chapter. In the second chapter a literature study on the theory of SBCD and OBE was conducted. The theoretical component and
background presented a basis for the significance of the SBCD in an OBE framework. Chapter 3 focused on qualitative research as a strategy to address problems in SBCD. The foundation for the application of research theory to practice teaching in schools in the Northern Province evolved from the analysis of this information. The fourth chapter comprised a synthesis of the information gleaned in chapters two and three, as research instruments and data analysis were implemented scientifically. As such, the findings thereof culminated in the provision of guidelines for empowering grade 1 teachers in SBCD. These guidelines in chapter 5 thus emanated from the literature review and qualitative research data analysis dealt with in chapters 2 and 3 respectively. This last chapter provides concluding remarks and recommendations for improved curriculum policies and teaching practice in South Africa.

6.2 RECOMMENDATIONS AND THEIR IMPLICATIONS

6.2.1 Recommendations and implications for teaching practice

It is recommended that both grade 1 teachers and all prospective teachers who are products of the content-based model need thorough INSET. The content-based curriculum has serious limitations because the content, and not the learner, is always at the centre of the curriculum process. The curriculum is designed centrally and transmitted to the school for implementation without the grade 1 teachers' participation. It is in this respect that the researcher recommends that grade 1 teachers should be provided with golden opportunities to improve the teaching strategies and skills which they require in the new dispensation. Grade 1 teachers, inter-alia need to be empowered in the areas to be discussed in items 6.2.1.1- 6.2.1.10.

6.2.1.1 In-service education as a tool to address grade 1 teachers' needs

Bullough, Kauchak, Crow, Hobbs, and Stokes (1997:162) stated that effective and successful INSET courses are those designated co-operatively with teachers to address specific school related problems and teacher concerns and frustrations. From the
foregoing discussion it is evident that a network of teacher INSET should be established at various stages of grade 1 teachers' representation in curriculum decision-making such as circuit, area, region and province. *Curriculum 2005* was enough justification for the massification of INSET in the *Northern Province*. *Curriculum 21* (the envisaged new *curriculum*) will require extensive INSET (Review Committee on *Curriculum 2005*:18).

Initial training does not equip *grade 1 teachers* for a lifelong career in their vital profession of teaching. The current perception is that a *grade 1 teacher's* training should occur throughout teaching. In fact, INSET should thus not be perceived as an isolated event in a *grade 1 teachers'* career, but as an on-going tool essential for professional efficiency and expertise. Although, in the light of the finding, it is clear that INSET should not be regarded as being a tool to effect "crisis management" but rather as an opportunity for continuing professional development, the role of INSET in assisting *grade 1 teachers* to adjust to shifting educational demands should not be negated and, in the current situation, it certainly can fulfil a decisive role in equipping the existing teaching corps to meet the challenges of *Curriculum 2005/ Curriculum 21*.

It is worth noting that the success or failure of any education system at any stage of *SBCD* is determined by the quality of its *grade 1 teachers*, since the *grade 1 teachers* are indubitably key figures who lay foundations in the classroom situation. It thus follows that *grade 1 teachers* should acclimatise to changes in educational policy and their *involvement* in the *curriculum*, as determined and directed by the educational authorities, if the proposed education system is to meet with success. An overall strategy for dealing with these needs for adjustment is to provide INSET opportunities for *grade 1 teachers* which are aimed at assisting them in improving and updating their current teaching expertise, knowledge, skills and values. See figure 6.2 for INSET as a tool to address problems in *SBCD*. 

377
Figure 6.2  INSET as a tool to address SBCD problems
(a) The state of buildings in primary schools

The Ministry of Education should ensure that sufficient school buildings are erected. Where there are serious budgetary constraints, renovation could become the last resort. (Compare chapter 4 item 4.3.1 and chapter 2 item 2.2 in this regard). SGBs should also make it a point that they encourage the community to hold functions for raising funds. Such funds should be channelled into a building fund account. NGOs should also be approached in this regard because they have a critical role to play in the provision and delivery of learning and teaching. The remaining NGOs have a role to play in supporting government efforts in both the development and implementation phases. NGOs have always demonstrated a commitment to volunteer for development work, past and present.

In summary:
- Fundraising projects involving various stakeholders should be considered
- Supportive structures such as NGOs and RDPs are of assistance.

(b) Lack of resources

The use and manufacturing of a variety of teaching and learning media should be included as learning content in the curriculum, for HET. (See chapter 4 item 4.3.2 and chapter 5 paragraph 5.1.1.9 in this regard). The prospective teacher trainees should be skilled in the use of educational technology media such as overhead projectors and the manufacturing of their own teaching aids, but also in utilising whatever is available in the classroom or schools. Where there is a problem regarding furniture and stationery, grade 1 teachers should always improvise. An INSET should also be used to develop the grade 1 teachers’ professional behaviour and interpersonal skills.

The Ministry of Education should see to it that there are media centres even in primary schools. It is emphasized again that the function of these media centres is to promote concern for knowledge on the part of learners. Accordingly, it must become a resource and services centre for the promotion of study, research, and basic learning. To be truly a resource in facilitating learning, the library must be an adjunct to the classroom.
Experienced grade I teachers should take the initiative and responsibility to develop school libraries. Such libraries should become increasingly adequate as a result of efforts made over a period of years. They should include some materials that remain permanently in the classroom, as well as other materials borrowed from various sources for periods of one day to one semester.

The library room might include paper cuttings, drawings, one or two daily newspapers, current periodicals, a pamphlet file on personal, social, economic, and political problems, and a collection of books selected for their relevance to the typical problems that learners face and recognize. Additional books and bulletin boards can, of course, be secured as the specific problems emerge. The responsibility for securing such supplementary materials is an important one for learners themselves to assume (Hargreaves 1991:29).

The classroom library can be built up by a rental fee that learners pay in lieu of learning material costs. Although the school library can be of use to other learners in a school, it should also have materials on the three learning programmes of grade I namely: Numeracy, Literacy and Life Skills. Posters, pictures, models, films, records, transcriptions, and other visual and auditory learning aids are used intensively in a core class. These materials, too, are usually obtained by learners in the process of seeking information. Briefly, there should be:

- Improvisation where there is a shortage of teaching and learning materials
- Encouragement of active participation using the available resources.

(c) Unequal access to ownership in SBCD

Grade I teachers' representation at various stages of curriculum decision-making and development should be required. (See chapter 5 items 5.1.1-5.1.10 and chapter 2 paragraph 2.3.1 in this regard). Where various committees share ideas regarding curricular issues, serious problems that are encountered when the curriculum is designed and developed at the centre might be avoided, because the curriculum will be developed democratically. In summary, there should be:
• Participation which guarantees equal access to *curriculum decision-making*
• Mutual dependence necessitating a policy of democracy which reduces polarisation
• *Grade 1* teacher's autonomy in *SBCD* issues
• Respect for various opinions from various legitimate stakeholders.

**(d) Timing for curriculum implementation**

Fullan and Hargreaves (1991:28) state that teaching is not a collection of technical skills or a bunch of things one can learn. *Grade 1 teachers* need time to implement change, to reflect on new goals and objectives, to consider learning experiences, and to try out new tasks. A good *curriculum* warrants enough time for development before implementation. (See chapter 4 paragraph 4.3.4 in this regard). *Grade 1 teachers* should attend seminars, workshops and conferences regarding the new *curriculum*. Where there are discrepancies, they should be ironed out prior to the implementation stage. To avoid this danger, it is worth involving *grade 1 teachers* at all stages of *SBCD*. Transformation of a *curriculum* requires time, planning, a new approach to partnership, with parents and community organizations and a *curriculum* that will from the outset be designed as a *curriculum* for all (Mittler 1995:108).

In a nutshell, the retraining of *grade 1 teachers* can be accomplished in numerous ways such as:

• Workshops, seminars and conferences
• Through further studies on *OBE* offered by distance education institutions
• Follow-up sessions which should be considered to monitor the work of *grade 1 teachers*.

**(e) Grade 1 teachers' attitude towards SBCD**

A negative attitude that is displayed by *grade 1 teachers*, can become positive if they are to become fully involved in all curricular issues. (Compare chapter 2 item 2.2.2 and
It is also imperative for grade I teachers to lead exemplary lives, for learners to be able to emulate their lives. Extreme policies such as rationalization, redeployment and retrenchment of teachers should only be implemented after negotiation with the parties concerned. In summary there should be:

- Incentives which should be annually given to grade I teachers who perform well
- A combination of top-down and bottom-up approaches which are considered in curriculum issues.

(f) Culture of teaching and learning

Circuit and area managers should visit schools on a regular basis, as inspectors for capacity building and not as “suspects” or fault-finders. Where there are serious academic problems, inspectors should join hands with the top structure of the institution and the grade I teachers. Grade I teachers should however not become “cheaters” or caricatures. Their presence should have an impact on the life of grade I learners. Various didactic strategies and techniques in handling larger groups of learners, classroom management, discipline and differentiation in one class should be included in the curriculum for prospective teachers at an institution of HET. To sum up, there should be:

- Parental meetings which should be held on a regular basis to discuss issues affecting the school curricula
- Punctuality should be viewed as of paramount importance.

(g) Professional growth and experience in SBCD

Since experience cannot be bought, for grade I teachers to become more knowledgeable and experienced they need an INSET regarding curriculum issues. Staff development is of paramount importance, as the curriculum developer will gain an accurate sense of the scope of the problem to be addressed by the intended curriculum and also of the potential solutions available. By working with grade I teachers, the development effort will benefit qualitatively. Commitment from the potential users will also aid in the political acceptance of the development effort; it will also be a positive step in the future.
dissemination of the *curriculum* product. Capacity building and quality assurance are both necessary conditions for a sustainable and well-functioning system. A capacity building initiative should be part of a development plan extending from PRE-SET to INSET initiatives (Discussion document 1996:76).

In summing up, there should be:

- Induction programmes
- Workshops, seminars and conferences.

(h) **Inadequate discipline and curriculum management**

Where serious problems are encountered in the classroom set-up because of learners' behaviour, parents of the learners concerned should be informed accordingly. If both parties join hands, such problems may be solved amicably. Learners and parents face and make decisions in families, while learners by themselves encounter the need for decisions in their own recreational and social groups.

The *grade 1 teacher* has to respect and welcome the parents' equal say in matters concerning his or her child. In this way he or she builds up healthy relationships with both the parents and the parent community. At the same time, the teacher also promotes healthy parent-child relationships. (See item 4.3.8 in chapter 4). A free flow of communication is required so that parents, can tell the teacher what they require and what their ideals for the child are, while simultaneously learning about the problems in their child's progress at school (Krüger and Müller 1990:254).

However, to carry through successfully the modern idea of educational and personal guidance means that the *grade 1 teacher* must have enough time to talk to learners about their personal adjustments and needs. Parents who must be brought into the picture if the needs of learners are to be fully met. Modern education, within the core *curriculum*, also envisages extensive community relationships. The *grade 1 teacher* must have free time for conferences to this end. At this stage, the school should be planning and effecting a
change in schedule organization to provide an extra hour per day for the *grade 1 teacher* to meet learners, parents, and public, as well as to have some time to plan and care for details of the general program. To sum up, there should be:

- A healthy teacher-parent relationship in order to develop a school *curriculum* which meets the needs of the parents and society
- A system to deal with difficulties experienced in terms of learners’ behaviour and progress.

(i) **Politics and teachers’ unions**

Teachers from different political organisations and teachers’ associations should establish a committee where *grade 1 teachers* are represented. (See chapter 2 paragraph 2.3.4 and chapter 4 item 4.3.9 in this regard). *Grade 1 teachers* in such tasks teams should refrain from viewing political organizations or teachers’ unions as superior or inferior to others.

Since committees are usually constituted as bodies having decision-making and rather final recommendation responsibilities, it should be noted that in the zeal to promote action, the greatest emphasis should not be to further the interests of the “organization” rather than the development of vital learning experiences for learning. When committees are formed, it means that action of some kind is expected. Often action is precipitated before the members become sufficiently involved in the exchange and examination of ideas to establish a sense of security with the handling of the ideas. This may result in an artificial product, devoid of real meanings for instructional practices. Briefly, there should be:

- Respect for another’s political organization and teachers’ union
- Equity, for not one of the parties should be viewed as superior or inferior to the other
Grade 1 teachers and learners in South African schools in general, and the Northern Province in particular, should learn about their own cultural heritage as well as that of other cultural groups. Fundamental differences between cultural groups can provide the foundation for racial conflict in schools, and this in turn can influence the culture and climate of the school (Cohen 1992:23; Van Heerden 1997:197-198). Grade 1 teachers therefore need to be made aware of cultural differences and similarities in order to understand themselves and to understand the people around them, because they are cultural educators (Soni 1997:17-19).

All cultures should be viewed on an equal footing, as there is no culture which is superior or inferior to the other; there are simply different cultures each with its own strengths and weaknesses (Walking 1990:87). Grade 1 teachers should become experienced and knowledgeable about cultural aspects so that they can in turn produce new, quality materials and teacher guides which will enhance teacher empowerment and curriculum development. Moore (1994:254), in support of this idea, stated that a relevant curriculum is one that is culturally sensitive. Grade 1 teachers in multi-cultural societies such as South Africa, are faced increasingly with the challenge of teaching culturally diverse classes.

Freeman (1994:69) shows that teachers and learners come to school with cultural biographies different from each other. These biographies manifest themselves in cognitive styles, and have a substantial influence on learning. This implies that grade 1 teachers should make it a point that they build different cognitive styles into their pedagogical strategies. Krizmaric and Kolezaric (1994:47) show that expectations concerning appropriate forms of behaviour are defined (a frame of reference, a system of standards and values) which create feelings of belonging. These feelings of belonging might increase to such an extent that other groups become the objects of racial prejudice, group conflict and the emerging of “we” and “they” groups (Garcia 1991:105; Stone 1993:189-190). Grade 1 teachers must know that culture is introduced in verbal and non-
verbal patterns of behaviour. Inadequate communication therefore prevents mutual understanding and insight (Botha and Reeler 1991:70-71). Thus grade 1 teachers must become aware of the fact that they will have to consider how they indicate acceptance of learners, both in words and actions.

NGOs remain the holders of knowledge, skills, expertise and the ability to support learning, teaching and development. They continue to house great potential for curriculum and educational innovation, research and development. NGOs have collaborated with government and continue to reinforce efforts towards a literate society. The importance of NGOs in literacy work both here and in other countries is significant.

In summary, there should be:

- A philosophy of cultural pluralism underlying multi-cultural education

In line with the teacher’s roles as indicated by the Department of Education, the researcher is of the opinion that a good grade 1 teacher should reflect the qualities elaborated in items a-g (Government Gazette 2000:13-14).

6.2.1.2 Responsibilities for the grade 1 teacher

(a) Learning mediator

The educator should mediate learning in a manner which is sensitive to the diverse needs of learners, including those with barriers to learning; construct learning environments that are appropriately contextualised and inspirational; communicate effectively, showing recognition of and respect for the differences of others. (Compare chapter 5 item 5.1.1). In addition an educator will demonstrate sound knowledge of learning content and the various principles, strategies and resources appropriate to teaching in a South African context. Refer to table 6.1 with regard to the responsibilities of grade 1 teachers.
### Table 6.1  Responsibilities of the grade 1 teacher

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Responsibilities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Learning mediator</td>
<td>• addresses needs and interests of grade 1 learners</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• constructs inspirational learning environments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• demonstrates sound knowledge of strategies for teaching Numeracy, Literacy and Life Skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Designer of learning programmes and materials</td>
<td>• makes decisions on relevant materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• interprets learning programmes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• selects resources for learning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leader, administrator and manager</td>
<td>• manages learning in the classroom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• participates in <em>curriculum decision-making</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• performs democratic competences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scholar, researcher and life long learner</td>
<td>• does sound research in the learning programme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• is dedicated in studying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• exercises patience when working with learners</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community, citizenship and pastoral role</td>
<td>• shows respect towards others</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• promotes democratic values in schools</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• aims at supportive relations with parents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessor</td>
<td>• keeps detailed and diagnostic records of assessment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• improves existing learning programmes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• provides feedback to learners</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Learning programme specialist</td>
<td>• is conversant with different teaching approaches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• has an understanding of knowledge appropriate to specialism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• develops expertise in the learning programme</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) **Interpreter and designer of learning programmes and materials**

The educator will understand and interpret learning programmes which are provided, design original learning programmes, identify the requirements for a specific context of learning, and select and prepare suitable textual and visual resources for learning. (Compare chapter 4 item 4.3.2 and chapter 5 item 5.1.3). The educator will also select, sequence and pace the learning in a manner sensitive to the differing needs of the
Learning Areas and the particular needs of grade 1 learners (Numeracy, Literacy and Life Skills).

(e)  **Leader, administrator and manager**

The educator will make decisions appropriate to the level, manage learning in the classroom, carry out classroom administrative duties efficiently and participate in school decision making structures. (See chapter 5 items 5.1.1-5.1.2 and chapter 4 item 4.3.8). These competencies will be performed in ways which are democratic, which support learners and colleagues, and which demonstrate responsiveness to changing circumstances and needs.

(d)  **Scholar, researcher and lifelong learner**

Educators will achieve ongoing personal, academic, occupational and professional growth (consult chapter 4 item 4.3 paragraph 4.3.7) through pursuing reflective study and research in their Learning Areas, in broader professional and educational matters, and in other related fields. As curricula change, the grade 1 teachers will need to remain knowledgeable about the latest changes, e.g. curriculum 21.

(e)  **Community, citizenship and pastoral role**

The educator will practise and promote a critical, committed and ethical attitude towards developing a sense of respect and responsibility towards others. The educator will uphold the constitution and promote democratic values and practices in schools and society. Within the school, the educator will demonstrate an ability to develop a supportive and empowering environment for the learner and respond to the educational and other needs of learners and fellow educators. (See chapter 2 item 2.1.5.4).
(f) **Assessor**

The educator will understand that assessment is an essential feature of the teaching and learning process and know how to integrate it into this process. (Consult chapter 2 item 2.6.1.5 paragraph a.) The educator will have an understanding of the purposes, methods and effects of assessment and be able to provide helpful feedback to learners. The educator will design and manage both formative and summative assessment in ways that are appropriate to the level and purpose of the learning and meet the requirements of accrediting bodies. The grade 1 teacher will use assessment for the improvement of instruction and learning in the Learning Areas: Numeracy, Literacy and Life Skills.

(g) **Learning area specialist**

The educator will be grounded in the knowledge, skills, values, principles, methods, and procedures relevant to the discipline, subject, learning area, phase of study, or professional or occupational practice (Government gazette 2000:13-14). As such the grade 1 teacher will be especially grounded in the knowledge, skills and values of the 3 foundational learning programmes.

6.2.2 **Recommendations and implications for teacher training**

Here, too, the recommendations to be provided with respect to teacher training go hand in hand with those pertaining to teaching practice as identified in item 6.2.1, as it is imperative that grade 1 teachers should be equipped to participate fully in SBCD. HET institutions, more especially those training teachers, should impart skills so that they become competent, active and responsible citizens of South Africa. Obsolete and outdated learning content, teaching methodologies, and didactic principles cannot equip the grade 1 learner for current and recurrent issues. Relevant development thus demands that the curriculum be problem-centred and future-oriented, not pre-occupied with past events.
The existing teacher training curriculum has very little on grade I teachers' involvement in SBCD, and as such it would be educationally viable to introduce relevant programmes in grade I teachers' participation in curriculum decision-making as separate modules for a certificate, diploma or degree e.g. in BA (Ed) courses. In fact, the ideal situation is that courses for teacher training should enable both teacher trainees and prospective grade I teachers to exhibit teaching skills and demonstrate an understanding of curriculum decision-making issues. The unique nature of each grade I learner's life-world necessitates educational teacher training programmes which will enable the prospective grade I teachers to enhance the learners' knowledge to develop in a way which is appropriate and relevant to their mandate. (Consult chapter 2 item 2.5).

6.3 FUTURE RESEARCH

It became evident during the research investigation that there are numerous problematic areas pertaining to grade I teachers' involvement in SBCD which require profound scrutiny. Many of these themes were highlighted in chapter 4 (items 4.3.1- 4.3.10) but still need in-depth research.

It should also be borne in mind that this study did not include all the problematic areas of education in South Africa. Only problems identified by grade I teachers in SBCD in the Northern Province were addressed.

Crucial matters on the periphery of the key problems were not examined, because they are not within the ambit of the study. It should also be stated explicitly that research of this nature is always limited due to the scope of the discipline, time constraints, budgetary implications and access to the quota of respondents. It is in the light of these shortcomings that the researcher does not guarantee a solution to all problematic educational issues in South Africa, because the success or the failure of one's research is determined by numerous variables.

The researcher therefore suggests the following areas for future research:
• School-based INSET which comprises any activity which emanates from the identified needs of the school and which should be co-ordinated with the full involvement of the grade 1 teachers concerned
• An investigation into the participation of the community at large in SBCD activities
• The establishment of curriculum development centres and teachers' centres, which could be utilised for training the teachers in curriculum development
• The impact of politics and teacher education on the school curriculum
• A detailed study on multi-cultural teacher training programmes.

6.4 CONCLUDING REMARKS

In this study, the researcher attempted to shed light on grade 1 teachers' involvement in SBCD in the Northern Province. The research illustrated that there is no apparent framework within schools for grade 1 teachers to participate fully in curricular decision-making. It is worth noting that it is naïve to expect grade 1 teachers to spend their time and energy developing curriculum and program material spontaneously. In fact, with some exceptions, grade 1 teachers do not have the time, resources and training to carry out these activities. The reality of the situation is that grade 1 teachers are constantly involved in developing outlines, lesson plans, outcomes and remedial materials, but unfortunately mainly as a reaction to an administrative directive. In the recent Report of the Review Committee on Curriculum 2005 the fact that teachers require support in the form of learners support materials, appropriate training and facilities to implement outcomes-based curriculum was highlighted (Review Committee on Curriculum 2005, 2000:76).

The research instruments that were utilized, enabled the researcher to identify a number of problems that featured repeatedly (as indicated in chapter 4 item 4.3.1-4.3.10). Some of them are the condition of buildings in schools, grade 1 teachers' attitude towards SBCD, the culture of teaching and learning, professional growth and SBCD, multicultural education and SBCD and others. Based on these findings, guidelines for grade 1
teachers' involvement in SBCD were presented in chapter 5 item 5.1.1-5.5.1.8 and recommendations were also highlighted. The study also revealed that there is a profound need for prospective teachers to go through a core curriculum on areas of need at institutions of higher education and training.

The core curriculum centres around major problems of both social and personal concern to the learner. There is a likelihood that such problems may have more educational significance than learning content which is often without challenge because it does not have any relevance to the actual needs or problems of learners. This study revealed that INSET is a vehicle for equipping both grade 1 teachers and prospective student teachers with relevant strategies, skills and knowledge which can improve their performance.

It is argued in this study that grade 1 teachers should have the responsibility for what happens in the class setting. Although grade 1 teachers do not have an overtly large role to play in curriculum development, they actually wield enormous influence on day-to-day curriculum decision-making. Another way on which grade 1 teachers might be fully involved in curriculum issues is their representation at the various stages of SBCD namely classroom, school, learning programme, circuit, area, region, province and the country itself, that all help to delineate the decentralized mode of educational decision-making which is suggested in this thesis.

It goes without saying that grade 1 teachers should be fully involved in curriculum work, all the way from designing the total curriculum to the level of classroom implementation, because they are exposed to a variety of curricular situations which call for instructional decision-making at different levels.

Proper cognisance should be taken of the fact that the bright future of the education system in South Africa is not dependent on a magic wand which can make the desired change academically sound and viable. The involvement of grade 1 teachers in SBCD is a valuable exercise because their expertise in classroom reality forms the basis for discerning practical instructional issues that call for curricular remedies.
7. REFERENCES


Bhatt, L.V. 1996. *School-based interest.* Hong Kong: University of Hong Kong.


   London: Corwin Press.

   New South Wales: University of New England.


   Austrailia: National Curriculum Resource Center.

   London: Athenaeum Press.

   London: Falmer Press.


8. LIST OF FIGURES AND TABLES

8.1 LIST OF FIGURES

CHAPTER 1

| Figure 1.1: | Schools taking part in grade 1 pilot project | 2 |
| Figure 1.2: | Three learning programmes | 13 |
| Figure 1.3: | 7 regions of the Northern Province | 16 |
| Figure 1.4: | A transmission orientation | 35 |
| Figure 1.5: | A transaction orientation | 36 |
| Figure 1.6: | A transformation orientation | 38 |
| Figure 1.7: | The provinces of South Africa | 43 |
| Figure 1.8: | Chapter division | 47 |

CHAPTER 2

| Figure 2.1: | SBCD activities | 66 |
| Figure 2.2: | Force field for using educational innovations | 68 |
| Figure 2.3: | Matrix of school-based curriculum change | 69 |
| Figure 2.4: | The organizational model of curriculum change | 71 |
| Figure 2.5: | School-based cycle at multi-levels | 73 |
| Figure 2.6: | The level-layer management | 77 |
| Figure 2.7: | Effectiveness in SBCD | 85 |
| Figure 2.8: | Four important principles of good OBE teaching | 109 |
| Figure 2.9: | A balanced curriculum | 123 |

CHAPTER 3

| Figure 3.1: | The constructivist inquiry | 168 |
| Figure 3.2: | The iterative qualitative research process | 177 |
| Figure 3.3: | Qualitative strategies in educational research | 213 |
### Figure 3.4: Curriculum development steps using systems approach  
222

### Figure 3.5: The focus strategy  
228

### CHAPTER 4

**Figure 4.1:** Three major components in a classroom situation  
271

**Figure 4.2:** State of buildings in schools  
297

**Figure 4.3:** Lack of resources  
302

### CHAPTER 5

**Figure 5.1:** Stages of grade 1 teachers' involvement in curriculum decision-making and development  
335

**Figure 5.2:** Equality in curriculum ownership  
363

**Figure 5.3:** Stages of grade 1 teachers' involvement (bottom-up approach)  
370

### CHAPTER 6

**Figure 6.1:** Recommendations for grade 1 teachers' involvement in SBCD  
374

**Figure 6.2:** INSET as a tool to address problems in SBCD  
378
8.2 LIST OF TABLES

CHAPTER 1

Table 1.1: Types of NQF's bands

Table 1.2: Types of curriculum decision-making and meta-orientations

CHAPTER 2

Table 2.1: School-based management and external control management

Table 2.2: Traditional concepts and new concepts of staff development

Table 2.3: Comparison between the approaches to curriculum change

Table 2.4: Theory of school-based management versus theory of external control management

Table 2.5: Differences between the old and new approach

Table 2.6: New directions and old traditions in studying school effectiveness

Table 2.7: Activities and objectives for staff development

Table 2.8: Decision-making in the curriculum process

Table 2.9: Factors to be considered in the school environment

Table 2.10: Data collection techniques

Table 2.11: Relationship between aims, goals and objectives

Table 2.12: Types of evaluation

CHAPTER 3

Table 3.1: Different uses for four methods

Table 3.2: Basic forms of qualitative research

Table 3.3: Qualitative research: first version

Table 3.4: Qualitative research: second version

Table 3.5: Qualitative research: third version
Table 3.6: Qualitative research fourth version 173
Table 3.7: Characteristics of qualitative and quantitative research 182

CHAPTER 4

Table 4.1: Relative merits of the interview technique versus the questionnaire technique 254
Table 4.2: Number of public primary schools per area 296
Table 4.3: *Northern Province*’s redeployment in primary schools 306
Table 4.4: Number of teachers in training according to teacher training colleges prior to rationalization 309
Table 4.5: *Grade 1* failure rate in *Northern Province* 312
Table 4.6: Academic support programme for learners 314
Table 4.7: Percentage of languages spoken in each province 325

CHAPTER 5

Table 5.1: Committees for *grade 1 teachers* representation in the stages of *SBCD* 344
Table 5.2: Roles of *grade 1 teachers* committees in *SBCD* 351

CHAPTER 6

Table 6.1: Responsibilities for a *grade 1 teacher* 387
9. APPENDICES
9.1 CORRESPONDENCES
Dear sir

APPLICATION FOR DATA COLLECTION AT SCHOOLS WITHIN YOUR REGIONS

A request is hereby made for collecting data at schools within your region for a scheduled period of two consecutive months, which are May and June. The data to be collected is warranted for one’s research studies. The respondents shall be grade 1 teachers and data will solely and strictly be collected after office hours or as per arrangements with government officials in charge.

Your co-operation in this matter is highly appreciated.

Yours truly

[Signature]

LUMADI M.W.
TO WHOM IT MAY CONCERN

This is to certify that Mr MW Lumadi (559 5991) is a student at Unisa. Professor MEW McDonald is his Promoter.

PROF MEW McDonald
HEAD: DEPARTMENT OF SECONDARY SCHOOL TEACHER EDUCATION

17 February 2000
To whom it may concern

This is certify that Mr. M W Lumadi has approach the Department of Education requesting Statistics of schools in the Province.

The Department, through Research and Statistics Section, has supplied Mr. M W Lumadi with the school database information.

Yours truly

M W Machika
APPLICATION FOR DATA COLLECTION AT SCHOOLS WITHIN OUR REGION.

1. The above matter refers to your letter dated 20 February 2000.

2. The permission is hereby granted to you to collect the data as you requested during May and June 2000.

3. Arrangements will be made by the region to facilitate and make room for your operation.

4. Kindly confirm your coming to the regional director when time has arrived.

Your Faithfully

[Signature]

REGIONAL DIRECTOR: EDUCATION

dombs
TO WHOM IT MAY CONCERN

I hereby confirm that Mr M.W. LUMADI visited our Region and our Office provided him with the list of schools where he wanted to conduct research for his studies.

[Signature]

REGIONAL DIRECTOR: NORTH EASTERN REGION

18 AUGUST 2000
Northern Province
DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
EASTERN REGION

REF.: 83\1 ENQ.: MASINGE R.

24 AUGUST 2000

TO WHOM IT MAY CONCERN

VISIT TO OUR REGIONAL OFFICE

1. The subject above bears reference.

2. This is to certify that M.W. LUMADI (from the University of Venda) has been to our Regional Office.

3. We provided him with a list of names of all our schools within this Region.

REGIONAL DIRECTOR
EASTERN REGION

/jnu
9.2 DATA FROM NORTHERN PROVINCE’S REGIONS
ENQ : MANZINI J.M.
DATE: 18-08-2000

CONFIRMATION OF THE VISIT BY LUMADI M.W.

This is to confirm that Lumadi M.W. (Mr) visited schools in our Region and he collected data in various Secondary Schools in the Region.

REGIONAL DIRECTOR: REGION 7
/rb
1. **REGION 1: WESTERN REGION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AREAS</th>
<th>CIRCUITS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MAHWELERENG</strong></td>
<td>Mokopane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mahwelereng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mapela</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Potgietersrus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Naboomspruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PALALA</strong></td>
<td>Palala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Palala North</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Palala South</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ellisras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Baltimore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>WARMBATHS</strong></td>
<td>Warmbad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vaalwater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nylstroom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Thabazimbi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dwaalboom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BAKENBERG</strong></td>
<td>Matlalane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bakenberg North</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mogalakwena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bakenberg South</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1.1 MAHWELERENG AREA

1.1.1 MOKOPANE CIRCUIT

1.1.1.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOL

1. JOHANNES MASIBE
2. KGWATHELE
3. LEGAGANENG
4. JAKAMANE L/HP SCHOOL
5. MOSHIBUDI
6. MOTSHITSHI
7. SEPEDI
8. SETJOAMADI
9. MAPANOLLA
10. TEHEMA
11. NKOKONE
12. KGOPEDINOTA
13. MAIDI PRE PRIMARY
14. MALELE PRE PRIMARY
15. MMBATHO PRE PRIMARY SCHOOL
16. MMANTOA
1.1.2 MAHWELERENG CIRCUIT

1.1.2.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. EDL Rampola
2. Ithuteng Lower Primary
3. Kgaba
4. Kgabetli
5. Kgatabela
6. Dumazi
7. MAAKA Maleka
8. Chumana
9. Mosesane Baloyi
10. Moshupsa Higher Primary
11. Nd Mokonyane
12. Leshoba
13. Monchimudi
14. Raphela
15. Segooa Kgala Lower Primary
16. Madikoti Putsoa
17. Makgubuketja
18. Mmamagina
19. Ismail Motshabi Pre Primary
20. Machonisa Pre Primary
21. Nkgodi Siphungo
22. Matshidiso Pre Primary
23. NTJATJI Pre Primary
24. Machikiri
1.1.3 MAPELA CIRCUIT

1.1.3.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. GODWIN MASIBE
2. HANS MASIBE
3. JACOB PUKA
4. JAN MALEBANA
5. CORNELJUS MASIBE
6. KGABAGARE
7. LAMGALIBALELE
8. ALFRED MASIBE
9. MOSOGE
10. PODILE
11. SEBILOANE
12. SERITARITA
13. MAPUSO
14. MABUELA-RAMORULANA
15. MAMAGOLA
16. MMOPA
17. MAPELA JUNIOR PRIMARY
18. MARCUS MASEBE
19. MATLHABA HIGHER PRIMARY
20. M.C. LANGA
21. MMANTUTULE
22. TJITJALA
23. TLAKANA
24. PUKA SEKHAOLELO PRE PRIMARY
1.1.4 POTGIETERSRUS CIRCUIT

1.1.4.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MAGEMA
2. LIMBURG
3. SEKGEDLWA
4. STERKRIEVER
5. VAALTYN JUNIOR PRIMARY
6. BOLEDI PRE PRIMARY
7. GABOTSE
8. EILAND PRIMARY
9. BLINKWATER PRIMARY
10. NTSOGA
11. POTGIETERSRUS
12. SCHAAPHOK
13. TSWELOPELE
14. MORARELA
15. MOKII
16. KALAKENG
17. VOLSKOOL POTGIETERSRUS
18. TINA FOUCHE KLEUTERSKOOL
19. LAERSKOOK POTGIETERSRUS
20. ELANDSKRAAL PRIMARY
21. HEBRON MODEL CHOOL
22. LAER SKOOL KRUGERPARK
23. MANGALA
24. MODIKAHOHLE PRIMARY
1.1.5 NABOOMSPRUIT CIRCUIT

1.1.5.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MATSWAPILONG
2. DITHEKU
3. DIKUBU
4. BB MATLAILA PUBLIC PRIMARY
5. BADSELOOP
6. MOGOMANENG
7. ONVERWACHT FARM PRIMARY
8. SEKGARI
9. TSHIPU
10. TSHIVHULA
11. RAMOKHUA
12. ROEDTAN INERIMATE
13. WICKLOW
14. FEJANE
15. GA-MATSEBE
16. GRUIFONTEIN
17. HAAKDOORNKUIL
18. MPHATLALATSANE
19. LAERSKOOL EUGENE N MARAIS
20. MASUPATSEA
21. MOJATAU
22. MOKHARI FARM SCHOOL
23. LAERSKOOL BYSONDERHEID
1.2 PALALA AREA

1.2.1 PALALA CIRCUIT

1.2.1.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. SEFITLHOGO
2. RAMAKWAPENG
3. ST. MAJADIBODU PRE PRIMARY
4. MOABI PRIMARY
5. WILLIAM MAPITSO PRE PRIMARY
1.2.2 PALALA NORTH CIRCUIT

1.2.1.2 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. SELEKA HIGHER PRIMARY
2. SHONGOANE
3. TSHEESEBE
4. RASERITE
5. TSHELAMMAKE
6. SEGALE
7. MOROE
8. MAZWE
9. MFAKE
10. MOABI
11. MAKHURUMELA
12. OLIFANTSDRIFT
13. RADIBAKI
14. MOKWELE
15. ABBOTSPoord HIGHER PRIMARY
16. BAPHOTING
17. MASWIKANANOKO
18. KLIPSPRUIT
19. LETLAMORENG
20. MOKGALO
21. ALICE PRE PRIMARY
22. MAKI PRE PRIMARY
23. ROSINA-KOTLHAO PRE PRIMARY
1.2.3 PALALA SOUTH CIRCUIT

1.2.3.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MATSENG
2. MOSIMA 2 PRIMARY
3. NKU
4. Poulos MOSIMA
5. RAMOJAPUDI
6. BAKGALAKA
7. BANGALONG
8. JACOB LANGA LOWER PRIMARY
9. KITTY PRIMARY
10. MAETELETJA
11. BORUTLA MOSIMA
12. WILLIAM PHASHA PRE PRIMARY
13. SJ MOTLUHUNENG
1.2.4 ELLISRAS CIRCUIT

1.2.4.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. TSHUKUDU PRIMARY
2. SKUINSKLOOF
3. LAPOLOGANG
4. MOREKHURE PRIMARY FARM
5. RELEBOGILE
6. OREAGETSE
7. LEREKHURENG
8. MAKILAKA PRIMARY FARM
9. MATSHANENG
10. MOTOMA
11. MOKGALO
12. NELSONSKOP
13. LAERSKOOL ELLISRAS
14. STERKFTEREIN
15. MMAMNA
16. BOSVELD PRIMARY
17. BILTON
18. BOTSHELONG
1.2.5 BALTIMORE CIRCUIT

1.2.5.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MONALA
2. MPEDI-MAPHUTHA
3. RANOKO
4. KGOBOKI
5. BALTIMORE
6. BOITHUTO COMBINED
7. KREUPELBOCH PRIMARY FARM
8. KGODILPAN
9. KWELOBOHLOKO
10. MAKOMBANE
11. MOTSWERENG PRIMARY FARM
12. RALEHUMAN
13. RHENOSTERFONTEIN
14. TOUCHSTONE
15. SEKHUNG
16. LEKGOLWA
17. REABILWE
18. TLHWARE
19. MARKEN
20. LAERSKOOK UNITAS
21. ZANDKRAAL
22. MAMMUSO MOKGADI
1.3  WARMBATHS AREA

1.3.1  WARMBAD CIRCUIT

1.3.1.1  LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MOUTSE
2. PIENAARSRIVIER
3. MODDERSPRUIT
4. THABAGARE
5. TURFFONTEIN
6. TURFPAN
7. LANGKUIL
8. BLAAUWBOESCHKUIL
9. BRUISSE
10. DIBATHORO
11. GRENA
12. HLEKETANI
13. KHAEBEL
14. LAERSKOOL WARMBAD
15. MALEBONE
16. MANTSHOLE
17. MMAMAKWA
18. WARMBATHS PRIMARY
19. JINNAH PARK
20. BUZZY BEEZ PRE PRIMARY
1.3.2 VAALWAATER CIRCUIT

1.3.2.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. SITRUSVLAKTE
2. LEEUPOORT LAERSKOOL
3. STROH PRIMARY
4. LAERSKOOL VAALWATER
5. LEBOGANG
6. MAKAEPAA
7. KRANSBERG
8. MOLLELA
9. MONATE
10. NARE
11. LAERSKOOL ALMA
12. REAHLAHLWA
13. BOEKENHOUTPOORT
14. DIBAPHOHU
15. KHWITING
16. BAVIAANSDRAAI PRIMARY FARM
17. REFIHLILE
18. MAHLASEDI
19. TOOYSKRAAL
20. METSOTSO
21. MEETSEMATALA
22. TSWELAPELE
1.3.3 NYLSTROOM CIRCUIT

1.3.3.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. RANAMANE
2. REHOMODITSWE
3. MMABUTSETSA PRIMARY FARM
4. LAERSKOOL EENHEID
5. LAERSKOOL NYLSTROOM
6. LAERSKOOL TUIN PLAAS
7. LEKKERBREEK
8. LERNA
9. MODDERNEK
10. MPHEMPE
11. MODIMOLLE
12. DAGBREEK
13. PITINYANA
14. SEKATEKATE
15. TSWALO
16. WILDEVYEBOOM
17. MOTLHAPING
18. LAERSKOOK DOORFONTEIN
1.3.4 THABAZIMBI CIRCUIT

1.3.4.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MAMORAKA
2. KAMEELSPRUIT PRIMARY FARM
3. MAKOPPA COMBINED
4. LAERSKOOL NORTHAM
5. LAERSKOOL KOEDESKOP
6. KOEDOESLAAGTE
7. KAREEHOEK
8. PHOLO
9. ISTORES
10. FAIR PRIMARY
11. DEO GLORIA
12. CANTEBURY
13. MOTLOKOANE
14. KESARONA
15. LAERSKOOL THABAZIMBI
16. HOOPDAL
17. PANSMEUL
18. YSTERBERG PUBLIC PRIMARY
19. NATSANA
20. WILDEGANSVLEI
21. DITLHARENG
1.3.5 DWAALBOOM CIRCUIT

1.3.5.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MOUNT HOPE
2. MONAGENG
3. MOGOTLHO
4. LETSWAI METSI
5. LAERSKOOL VAN WYKS KRAAL
6. LAERSKOOL DWAALBOOM
7. KRAUSE FARM
8. FAIRFIELD
9. DWAALBOOM
10. NOORDT BRABANDT
11. THEKGANANG
12. STEENDAL FARM
13. SILENT VALLEY
14. SENAKANGWEDI
15. ROOIGROND PRIMARY FARM
16. RABUGALE PUBLIC PRIMARY
17. LAERSKOOL PLATINA
18. CHROME MINE
1.4 BAKENBERG AREA

1.4.1 MATLALANE

1.4.1.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. NAKEDI-KOBE
2. LENNES
3. MOROBA
4. MABANA PRE PRIMARY
5. MATHEKGA
6. SEPOBE
7. MASHOSHO
8. RATINKE
9. TLHAKO LOWER AND HIGHER PRIMARY
10. MAKOBE
11. MASHIKA PRE PRIMARY
12. RASEFADIMA PRE PRIMARY
13. MAKGABO BOSHOMANE
14. MODISHA
15. MASHAO MABUSHHA
16. DORA PALE PRE PRIMARY
17. KOENA PRE PRIMARY
18. DITLOU
19. RAMELA
20. WILSON MOKOKO PRE PRIMARY
21. MAGALAKWINSTROOM
22. HAM NO. 1 PRIMARY
1.4.2  BAKENBERG NORTH CIRCUIT

1.4.2.1  LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. BOKWIDI
2. NELLY PUBLIC PRIMARY
3. SUPI
4. RABASOTHO
5. KGOPEDI
6. KGOKA
7. NKGAKGAUTHA
8. MATLHAKANE HIGHER PRIMARY
9. MASIPA
10. CLERMONT
11. JIM GWANGWA
12. KGOMOSHIAKWENA
13. DENNIS MATLHABA II
14. DITLOTSWANE
15. THUTLWANE LOWER PRIMARY
16. GR MOTLANA PRE PRIMARY
17. LEAKA PRE PRIMARY
18. LERITA PRE PRIMARY
19. LECHABA
20. LEUBANENG
21. MABUSELA
22. MALOKONG
1.4.3 MOGALAKWENA CIRCUIT

1.4.3.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. NGWANAKWADI
2. NKEKETHLALWA
3. PHAHLAPHAHLA
4. MATLOU MEMORIAL
5. RAMASOLA PRE PRIMARY
6. NTEBELENG
7. MMAKEAGANG PRE PRIMARY
8. K.K. MONARE
9. MADIDIMALO
10. DIRETSANENG
11. JOHN MANANYE
12. JORDAN
13. NKIDIKITLANA
14. KGOKOLO
15. SEHOJANE
16. MUSHI
17. SERUPA
18. MAHLORA
19. MOKGOPA
1.4.4 BAKENBERG SOUTH

1.4.4.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. SUSWE
2. GIVEN MANGOLO
3. GALAKWINSTROOM
4. SEKANEKAMOYI
5. HOSEA SEFATA MOLO PRE PRIMARY
6. MOOKAMEDI
7. BASTERSPAD
8. ABIOT KOLOBE
9. BATHOKWA
10. KGAKGALA
11. NKONTLHA
12. RANTJIE
13. RAWESHI LOWER AND HIGHER PRIMARY
14. LENKWANE
15. LESODI MOTLANA HIGHER PRIMARY
16. MAHLOMA
17. MALAPILE
18. MAPITIKAMA
19. SESHOATLHA
### 2. REGION 2: CENTRAL REGION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AREAS</th>
<th>CIRCUITS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• POLOKWANE</td>
<td>Pietersburg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maraba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maune</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bahlaloga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Seshego</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Koloti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• KONEKWENA</td>
<td>Bakone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Moloto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Central 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mogoshi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Moletjie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vlakfontein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• BOCHUM</td>
<td>Bochum East</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bochum West</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maleboho West</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maleboho East</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maleboho central</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bahananwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bahananwa East</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bochum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• ZEBEDIELA</td>
<td>Magatle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Moletlane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lepelle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lepelle A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• MOGODUMO</td>
<td>Mogodumo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nokotlou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sepitsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lebowakgomo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| MANKWENG | Mphahlele  
|          | Central 2  
|          | Thabamoopo  
|          | Leolo  
| Mankweng | Mamabolo  
| Lebopo   | Dimano  
| Dimano   | Kgakotlou  

2.1 POLOKWANE AREA

2.1.1 PIETERSBURG CIRCUIT

2.1.1.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. SNELL PHOSHOKO
2. LETLOTLO
3. LOTANANG
4. DOROTHY LANGA
5. GRACE AND HOPE SPECIAL SCHOOL
6. PHISHEGO JUNIOR PRIMARY
7. TSUTSUMETSA HIGHER PRIMARY
8. FLORA PARK COMPREHENSIVE SCHOOL
9. PRIMERE SKOOL SUIKERBEKKIE
10. LAERSKOOL IVY PARK
11. LAERSKOOL PIET HUGO
12. PIETERSBURG ENGLISH MEDIUM PRIMARY SCHOOL
13. PAPKUIL
14. GENL PIET JOUBERT
15. MKONKO FARM SCHOOL
16. PIETERSBURG LAERSKOOL
17. LAERSKOOL PIETERSBURG OOS
18. LAERSKOOL PIETERSBUR NOORD
19. LAERSKOOL CHRIS HOFMEYER
20. PRIMERE SKOOL KLEIN ONDEUG PRE
2.1.2 MARABA CIRCUIT

2.1.2.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOL

1. MANKGAKISHA
2. MAPANGULA
3. SEHLARE
4. SOLOMON MARABA
5. MAKGWARENG
6. MALEMA PRIMARY SCHOOL NO2
7. MAHLODUMELA LP SCHOOL
8. MOREMI HIGHER PRIMARY
9. MOKGADIATHOLA PRE PRIMARY
10. MATUMA
11. JOHN NRIMBA
12. JONAS LESETJA LEDWABA
13. HOSEA NTSOANE
14. TLOUKGOMO
15. MAFATOAKGWALE PRE PRIMARY
16. NGWANAMPHALELE
17. ISAAC LEDWABA PRE PRIMARY
18. NKOLOBA
19. MPHATLALATSANE
20. NNATILE
21. JONAS MANTJIU
22. NTSODI BAMBO
23. PAXANA
2.1.3 MAUNE CIRCUIT

2.1.3.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. SEEMOLE MARABA
2. TUTWANA
3. UTJANE
4. SEOKA
5. LETLAKANA
6. MADENATHAGA
7. MALOPENG
8. MASHIANOKE
9. MMATALEDWABA
10. MORELEBAKGANYAGO
11. MORWASETHULA
12. MATSHELANA
13. MAUNE
14. MASHASHANE
15. MOKIRIMANE
16. MOSENYAMAHLO PRE PRIMARY
17. JONAS KGAPHO PRE PRIMARY
18. NAPO
19. SEFATI FARM SCHOOL
20. PHATLAPHADIMA SPECIAL SCHOOL
2.1.4  BAHLALOGA CIRCUIT

2.1.4.1  LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. SEHLAGANE
2. MARIPHU
3. MASEGELA
4. MALOKANENG
5. MOHWIBIDU
6. KGAKOA MOKGAKOA
7. KAPUTLA NKOANA
8. JH MOLOTO
9. BOSEMAHLA
10. CHOKWE
11. RAMONGWANA
12. RAMOGOBE
13. NGWAKO
14. MARWESA
15. PHUTI MAKIBELO
16. RALEMA
2.1.5 SESHEGO CIRCUIT

2.1.5.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. THAKGALANG
2. MAKWEYA
3. MOKATI
4. PETER NCHABELENG
5. MOCHOCHO
6. ZONE 8 PRIMARY
7. MATOLO KHALO
8. BIKO PARK
9. DAVID KOANA SENIOR PRIMARY
10. MPHARENG JUNIOR PRIMARY
11. ALF MAKALENG
12. APRIL MAKGAKGA SENIOR PRIMARY
13. BOIKETLO
14. CM SEHLAPELO
15. ERNEST MATLOU
16. MP MALATJIE
17. WESLEY PRE PRIMARY
18. NELLY KGAKA PRE PRIMARY
19. NTIKANA PRE PRIMARY
2.1.6 KOLOTI CIRCUIT

2.1.6.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOL

1. MACHEMA
2. MANAMELA
3. MMATLOU
4. MORUPAHALE
5. MOLOTO
6. KGANTSHI
7. KGWAREDI
8. KOMAPE MOLAPO
9. BAILAFURI
10. HLABANA
11. MOSHASHA
12. MAPITSI PRE PRIMARY
13. MABOKELE
14. SEBOKELA
2.2  **KONEKWENA AREA**

2.2.1  **BAKONE CIRCUIT**

2.2.1.1  **LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS**

1. RAMASHILO
2. MABOPA ABO MPUWA
3. MAHLWARENG
4. BURGWAL LOWER PRIMARY
5. CRACOUW
6. BORUME
7. AURORA
8. LETSHEGA MALOKWANE
9. LEKITING
10. LEKHURENG
11. MASHILO
12. MAKARAPENG
13. MAFIFING
14. NAREMOHLALERWA
15. MOSEHLENG
16. MODIANYANA
17. NAKEDI MOJELA PRE PRIMARY
18. NTSHAKGA PRE PRIMARY
19. WEGELEGEN
20. MAPHUTHA
2.2.2 MOLOTO CIRCUIT

2.2.2.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. LETLHOTLHONG
2. LEKWALAKWALA
3. MABITSELA
4. PHAUDI
5. PITSI A MASHILO
6. PELABELA
7. MAKGODU
8. MMASEHLONG
9. MOGOSHI
10. MOGALADI
11. LEWENG
12. KGAIWA
13. MAKGOKHLOANE
14. MODIANA
2.2.3 CENTRAL 3 CIRCUIT

2.2.3.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. TSHERANE HIGHER PRIMARY
2. SEEPABANA LOWER PRIMARY
2.2.4 MOGOSHI CIRCUIT

2.2.4.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. HAKALA
2. DIBENG
3. BAKONE
4. KGOPODI
5. KGOMONTSWERE
6. PULA SEOPA
7. PUDUTJIE
8. PHUTI SEOPA
9. PHOFU
10. LETSWALELA BAHLALOGA
11. PHEHLE
12. MADIETANE
13. NKHUISHE HIGHER PRIMARY
14. NGAKANA
15. MMUSHI JUNIOR PRIMARY
16. HARRY OPPENHEIMER
17. TSOGE
18. TLOU
19. SEKGWARI
2.2.5 MOLETJIE CIRCUIT

2.2.5.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. DIAKGANYA
2. CERES
3. KGOROSI
4. MMADITSIKA
5. MANCHIMUDI
6. MMAKGABO
7. MOTANA
8. SEFATALADI
9. RAMETLOANA LOWER PRIMARY
10. IKETETSENG PRE PRIMARY
11. SEOKENG
12. RAPITSI
13. SETLHAKO
14. LEOKANENG
2.2.6 VLAKFONTEIN CIRCUIT

2.2.6.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. LEKGORONG
2. KWENA-A-PEU
3. KWENA SELAKI
4. MADUMA
5. MOSHIBI MO Kobodi
6. NONGMODIK
7. MOTLISHI
8. PROSPECT
9. MMANKOGAEDUPE
10. MMAMEHLABE
11. KGOBOKI
12. AMBERGATE
13. WINGFIELD
14. TAU-KWENA
15. HWIBI
16. TIBANEFONTEIN
17. MOETAGARE
18. KONKOTI
19. CHLOE
20. IKAGELENG MAKOBE
21. PUTJISHI
22. MMAPHEKGO
2.3 BOCHUM AREA

2.3.1 BOCHUM EAST CIRCUIT

2.3.1.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. RADIBOLOTJIE
2. MODUMELA
3. SEKURUWE
4. SERIPA
5. SHAKOLENG
6. NKOANA
7. KANANA
8. KGOBOKANANG
9. MADIKANA
10. BRUSSELS NGOAKO
11. NTLHODUMELA
12. MONYEMATHULA
13. PHUTI
14. RAPOHO
15. KGOLOUTHWANA
16. MASENWE
17. DENDRON
2.3.2    BOCHUM WEST CIRCUIT

2.3.2.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MMARATHA
2. MOGOHLONG
3. SEOBI
4. SESHANE
5. MAMADISHA
6. KGOKONYANE
7. KODUMELA
8. MABETWA
9. WITLIG LOWER PRIMARY
10. MONYESEBODU
11. HLOHLLODI
12. MMAGOTSHWEU
13. NUWE MORE
2.3.3 MALEBOHO WEST CIRCUIT

2.3.3.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MASEBE
2. SADU
3. SEPHAOWENG
4. MANTUNTUNYANE
5. PHUMATLA
6. POTOKELA
7. MOHLAKENG
8. TLHAKAUMA
9. SEFOTO
10. SEIKGONI
11. SETHUNYA
12. SEFOTWANE
13. KGWALE
14. BORWALATHOTO LOWER AND HIGHER PRIMARY
15. KAWENE HIGH PRIMARY
16. BOTSWA
17. MASHILOMPANA
2.3.4 MALEBOHO EAST CIRCUIT

2.3.4.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. RAMARULA
2. RAMMUTLA
3. MPHOKANENG
4. TEMA
5. TSWATSANE
6. SEANEGO
7. SEFIHLAMPYANA
8. TEFU
9. SEKHWIDITSANE
10. SELAELO
11. SEMETSE
12. BOIKHUTSO
13. MMANTOTOLE
14. MANAKA
15. RALEKWANA
2.3.5 MALEBOHO CENTRAL CIRCUIT

2.3.5.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. RADIRA
2. SESALONG
3. DINOKO
4. MATJEKETLANE
5. RASEASALA
6. HOSEA MOTSHEMI
7. LETHLOEDI
8. DIKGOALE
9. DIKOLOI
10. DITATSU
11. BODIROA
12. MATHUWE
13. MAPOTLA
14. MANOE
15. MATHEKO
16. MAKGOTLHO
17. MAMASONYA
18. MAMOSHA
19. MAMPOTE
2.3.6 BAHANANWA CIRCUIT

2.3.6.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. POKANONG
2. NONYANA
3. MPEBE
4. MORONGWA
5. MATJEKETLANE
6. RAPHOTOLOLO
7. RASEBILU
8. RASEKGALE
9. SELELO
10. LEBOHO
11. KGALUSHI
12. MABOI
13. MASHIE
14. MATSUOKWANE
15. MMAGOMO
16. MAMA
17. MODULATHOKO
18. MAKGAFELA
19. MAKGARI
20. MANTSHABE
21. MAIMELE
22. MALOLOANE
2.3.7 BAHANANWA EAST

2.3.7.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOL/S

1. MOHLABI
2.3.8  BOCHUM CIRCUIT

2.3.8.1  LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. RANKHUMANENG
2. KOBE
3. MASEALELE
2.4 ZEBEDIELA AREA

2.4.1 MAGATLE CIRCUIT

2.4.1.1 LIST OF SCHOOLS

1. MOTSERERENG
2. MAPATJAKENG
3. MMAMMATI
4. MAMOGOASHA
5. MOKGOHLWE MAKOPO
6. MOLEMO
7. BOLAHLAKGOMO
8. DIPOFUNG
9. LETJATJI PRESIDENTIAL
10. MADIKA
11. MAGATLE
12. MADIBO
13. SHUPENG
14. MOTSOFALA
15. NKA KATI PRE PRIMARY
16. SELLO SCHOOL
17. SEKGOPHO KGOPHONG
18. SEGAENG
2.4.2 MOLETLANE CIRCUIT

2.4.2.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MATOME
2. MOGOTO
3. MOHLOPHENG
4. MOKONE
5. MOSHODO
6. GAUTA JONATHAN
7. MATSHUMU
8. SHIKOANE
9. TINTELA
10. SEKUTUPU
11. MMATJIE PRE PRIMARY
12. NKGALABELE
13. PHALALONG
14. RAKGOATHA
15. RAMOKGOTHO
16. RAMOLOKOANE
17. SEBOTSJI
2.4.3 LEPELLE CIRCUIT

2.4.3.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MOHLAHLANE
2. MOGOLOGOLO
3. KHURENG
4. LEHLWELERE MATLALA
5. SEULA MMako
6. THADUKU
7. PHALAKGORO MOTHOA
8. REGAE
2.4.4 LEPELLE A CIRCUIT

2.4.4.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MMAMMATI
2. MPELEGENG MATLALA
3. RAMASODI
4. NKGOSO
5. SEALAMAGORO
6. MAMETJA
2.5 MOGODUMO AREA

2.5.1 MOGODUMO CIRCUIT

2.5.1.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. THOKGWANENG
2. SILOE SCHOOL FOR THE VISUALLY IMPAIRED
3. RIETKOLK
4. KGETSA
5. KGAMPI
6. MARATAPELO
7. MANGAKANE LOWER PRIMARY
8. MAHWIBITSANE
9. BOKGOBELO LOWER PRIMARY
10. SEHLOLA
11. VREDERUST
12. GWARA-GWARA
13. MOLAPOMATEBELE
14. MPHACHUE
15. MOKHOPO
16. MOGODUMO
17. SEROKOLOSENYANE
18. SEKURWANENG
19. SEFALAOLO
20. PHULANE
21. NGWANAMAGO
2.5.2  NOKOTLOU CIRCUIT

2.5.2.1  LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MAMONGAO
2. LEGOBOLE
3. KOPJANE
4. MAFEFE
5. KOMANE
6. MATALANE
7. Mashabashaba
8. MapompaLe
9. Dikgeu
10. Bored
11. Tlouatiba
12. Moleke Junior Primary
13. Maredi Lower Primary
14. Molotoadi
15. Sealane
16. Scheiding
17. Ramatsedi
18. Phophedi
2.5.3 SEPITSI CIRCUIT

2.5.3.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. HLAGATSE
2. LENTING
3. MALEMATI
4. MANEENG
5. MALEKAPANE
6. MAKURUNG
7. DITHABANENG
8. DINAO
9. BYLDRIFT
10. BOSCHPLAATS
11. REKHUTJITJE
12. TJIANE
13. MOROTSE
14. MORORE
2.5.4 LEBOWAKGOMO CIRCUIT

2.5.4.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. LITTLE BEDFORDVIEW
2. LAFATA
3. MARETLWANG
4. MOKGOTHOANE
5. MAHLASEDI
6. MAMAOLLO
7. HWELENG
8. EUREKA
9. TSOGA O ITIRELE SPECIAL CENTRE
10. HILLSIDE PARK
11. NDLOVU
12. NTSEEKGOPU
2.5.5 MPHAHLELE CIRCUIT

2.5.5.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. LESETSI
2. KGAGATLOU
3. KGAGANOKO
4. MADISEI
5. MAIJANE
6. DIKOBE MOLABA
7. MATIME 2
8. BOLOPA
9. MATHABE
10. GWARA-GWARA
11. NGWANA MOHUBE
12. MUTLE
13. MOUPO
14. MOKGOROTLWANE
15. MOKGAPANENG
2.5.6 CENTRAL 2 CIRCUIT

2.5.6.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MAHLATJANE
2. PHULANE
2.5.7 THABAMOOPO CIRCUIT

2.5.7.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. THOKA
2. BOGALENG
2.5.8 LEOLO CIRCUIT

2.5.8.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

*The list of primary schools was not provided when the research was conducted*
2.6 MANKWENG AREA

2.6.1 MANKWENG CIRCUIT

2.6.1.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MAREGE PRE PRIMARY
2. MAKANYE
3. MASEMELA PRE
4. TURFLOOP PRE
5. TLOU HLALERWA PRE
6. KGOKONG
7. DIKOLOBE
8. PULA MADIBOGO
9. MOTHOLO LOWER PRIMARY
10. TORONTO
11. SESOGI HIGHER PRIMARY
12. MAKGEFOLA
13. MAKGWADIBA HIGHER PRIMARY
14. MALESA
15. MORIA
16. MORITING
17. MEGORING
18. MMAPHOTLA
2.6.2 MAMABOLO CIRCUIT

2.6.2.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. THUNE
2. LESHOANE LOWER PRIMARY
3. RAMOHWIBIDU PRE PRIMARY
4. MOROPO PRE
5. MPAMBA PRE
6. KGATLA HIGHER PRIMARY
7. MAHLANHLE
8. KOTANKWER
9. KATANE
10. SEHLOMOLA
11. RAKOPI JUNIOR PRIMARY
12. LEPHARO PRE PRIMARY
13. KIBI PRE PRIMARY
14. KAMELA RAPHELA PRE PRIMARY
15. TSHWARE
16. THABAKGONE
2.6.3 LEBOPO CIRCUIT

2.6.3.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. PUTLA PRE PRIMARY
2. MOTHUBA MATEADI PRE
3. MAPHEFO
4. MOSHOAHLA PRE
5. BOLOPA
6. MAKATA
7. MAGATOLLE
8. BOSHEGA
9. DIPUWE
10. DIHLOPHANENG
11. SEHLALE
12. RAMPHERI
13. KGABE PRE PRIMARY
14. SEKGWENG
15. SUBIACO
16. MAKGALAPANE
17. MAMPA
18. MANKGAILE
19. MOGANO
20. MOLEPO
21. MOTAPO
2.6.4  DIMANO CIRCUIT

2.6.4.1  LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MAPHUTO
2. KOKONA DIKGALE
3. MAKGOADI PRE
4. BANA BA THARI SPECIAL SCHOOL
5. MARIBE
6. MAGOGO
7. KONOTO
8. KGALAKA
9. DIKGOPENG
10. KGOTLHO
11. SEBAYENG
12. MP MAMABOLO
13. SOLOMONDALE
14. MASEBODILA
15. MAROBALA
16. MANTHEDING
17. MALESELA
18. MODIBONE
19. MOGABAANE
20. MORARO
21. MOSEBO
2.6.5 KGAKOTLOU CIRCUIT

2.6.5.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MAPUDITHOMO
2. MANKGOADI
3. MAKOTOPONG SENIOR PRIMARY
4. LAASTEHOOP
5. LAASTEHOOP HIGHER PRIMARY
6. DIKWATA
7. PHUTI
8. NTJI MOTHAPO
9. POGUTI MARIBULLA
10. THOMO
11. THABA DORA
12. MAREDI
13. MMANTHE
14. MAMAHLO
15. MOLAMO
16. MATSHELANE MOTHAPO
3. REGION 3: NORTHERN REGION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AREAS</th>
<th>CIRCUITS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MALAMULELE</td>
<td>Malamulele West</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Malamulele East</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Malamulele Central</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUTALE</td>
<td>Mudaswali</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Niani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sambandou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tshilamba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEKGOSESE</td>
<td>Sekgosese East</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sekgosese North</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sekgosese Central</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOUTPANSBERG</td>
<td>Soutpansberg East</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Soutpansberg North</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Soutpansberg West</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nzhelele East</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THOHOYANDOU</td>
<td>Luvuvhu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mutshundudĭ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mvudi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tshinane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VUWANI</td>
<td>Vhuronga 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vhuronga 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dzondo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**PUBLIC PRIMARY**

1. CHANYELA  
2. GINGIRIKANI  
3. GUWELA  
4. HASANI LAWRENCE  
5. HLAWULEKANI  
6. KHAKHANWA  
7. MACHELE  
8. MAHLEPUNYE  
9. MUDARULA  
10. MUKHOMI  
11. MULAMULA  
12. MULENZE  
13. MUSWANI  
14. MUTOTI  
15. MHEHO  
16. NHOMBELANI  
17. PHAPHAZELA  
18. TOVHOWANI  
19. TSHAMANI  
20. TLANGELE  
21. TSHAMISEKA  
22. TWANANI  
23. RISANA

**SUMMARY OF CIRCUIT**

**PRIMARIES**  
23
**PUBLIC PRIMARY**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>FUMANI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>GOVHU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>HANGALAKANI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>HISEKELANI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>MAGONA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>KHODOBI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>MAKHASA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>MASHOBYE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>MERWE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>NKANDZIYI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>NYAVANI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>NXANGUYINTSWA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>NGHOMUNGHOMU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>PHATIMA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>SHIKATS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>SHIGOMBE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>SHLUME</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>TINYIKO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>TIVONELENI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>TSHIKWANI</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY OF CIRCUIT**

PRIMARIES
20
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>GEORGE HASANI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>KHANANI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>KHUPUKANI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>LANGUTANI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>MAGANGENI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>MAGODA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>MAHONISI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>MAKHAPULE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>MAKUMEKE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>MANAUELE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>MAPAPILA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>MANAMBE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>MDANISI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>MUTSHENA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>RIPINDZI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>SHIBANGWA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>SHIGALO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>SHIMAMBANI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>SHITLHELANI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>TITIRHELENI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>TIVANANI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>TYISELANI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>TSUNDZUKANI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>MAVUYISI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>XIHLOVO</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY OF CIRCUIT**

**PRIMARIES**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PRIMARIES

1. LUANAME
2. MAHUNGWI
3. MBAHELA
4. MAKWARANI
5. MARAXWE
6. MATANGARI
7. MIANZWI
8. MUDZIDZIDZI
9. MUHUYU
10. MUTKONDENI
11. MUTSHENZHENI
12. NDIDIVHANI
13. RAVHURA
14. SAMBANDOU
15. THENZHENI
16. TSHANZHE
17. TSHIDZIVHE
18. TSHILUNGWI
19. TSHIOMBO
20. TSWERA
21. VHUTALU

PRE-SCHOOL

1. MATOMBOTSWUKA

SUMMARY

PRIMARY

21

PRE-SCHOOL

1
REGION: 3
AREA: MUTALE
CIRCUIT: NIANI

PRIMARIES

1 BALE
2 DAMBALE
3 DOMBONI
4 DOVHO
5 FOLOVHODWE
6 GUMBU
7 MADANGANI
8 MADAVHILA
9 MADIMBO
10 MADIFHA
11 MAKAVHINI
12 MALALE
13 MALINGE
14 MANENZHE
15 MAPAKONI
16 MARAMANZHI
17 MASALA
18 MASEA
19 MASISI
20 MATATANI
21 MATSHENA
22 MAVHODE
23 MBODI
24 MBONENI
25 MUFULWI
26 MUKOVHABALE
27 MUKUNUNDE
28 MUSUNDA
29 MUSWODI
30 MUTELE
31 SIGONDE
32 TSHAPINDA
33 TSHENZHELANI
34 TSHIKUYU
35 TSHIPISE
36 TSHIRUNZINI
37 TSHIUNGANI
38 TSHIVHONGWENI
39 TSHOKOTSHOKO

SUMMARY

PRIMARIES
39
AREA: MUTALE
CIRCUIT: SAMBANDOU
REGION: 3

PRIMARIES

1. B.R NEMULODI
2. FANDANI
3. KAREL NGIGIDENI
4. KHAVHAMBE
5. LADZANI
6. LAMVI
7. LAVHURAL
8. LUVHONE
9. MAGILEDZHI
10. MAHOLONI
11. MANGAYA
12. MATSHIKIRI
13. MAVUNDE
14. MUKOMOWABANI
15. TAKALANI NYAWEDZANI
16. TSHIAKHATHO
17. TSHIANZWANE
18. TSHIBALO
19. TSHIKALANGE
20. TSHIKONDENI
21. TSILAWA
22. VHURIVHURI
23. TSHIDONGOLOLWE

INDEPENDENT PRIMARY

1. TSHIKONDENI LAERSKOOL

PRE-PRIMARY

1. TSHIAMAWELA

SUMMARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRIMARY</th>
<th>INDEP.PRIMARY</th>
<th>PRE.SCHOOL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
REGION 3
AREA: MUTALE
CIRCUIT: TSHILAMBA

PRIMARIES

1. BASHASHA
2. FEFE
3. DZAMBA
4. GOGOGO
5. GUNDANI
6. GUYUNI
7. LUHENI
8. LUKAU
9. LUPHEPHE
10. MABILA
11. MADATSHITSHI
12. MAFUKANI
13. TSHIXWADZA
14. NGALAVHANI
15. N’WANEDI
16. PILE
17. SHALEDZA
18. SHESHE
19. TSHAMULUNGWI
20. TSHANDAMA
21. TSHAPASHA
22. TSHATHOVELA
23. TSHAVHADINDA
24. TSHIKOSI
25. TSHITANDANI

INDEPENDENT COMBINE

1. ST. AUGUSTINE

PRE-SCHOOL

1. TSHAKHUMA
2. TSHILAMBA

SUMMARY PER CIRCUIT

PRIMARIES 25
PRE-SCHOOL 2
REGION:3
CIRCUIT: SEKGOSESE EAST
AREA: SEKGOSESE

CATEGORY: PRIMARIES

1. BABERWA
2. KOPANANG
3. LEKGOLLO
4. MAMAILA
5. MASEHLONE
6. MOTSOKOTSA
7. NKEI
8. PHETOLE
9. RAMAITE
10. SEBELAOLO
11. SENWAMOKGOPE
12. SEPHUKUBJE
13. SETSEKANA
14. THABANATSHWANA
15. TSEKERE
16. TSHANGWANE

SUMMARY OF CIRCUIT

PRIMARIES
16
REGION: 3
CIRCUIT: SEKGOSESE NORTH
AREA: SEKGOSESE

CATEGORY: PRIMARIES

1. EDZISANI
2. LOTAVHA
3. LUPENYO
4. MAANDAMAHULU
5. MAHABUDE
6. MADADZI
7. MAHADZULI
8. MAILA
9. MALWELA
10. MANKO
11. MASETHE
12. MUDIKHOMU
13. MUILA
14. MUISE
15. MUROGOLO
16. MUVHANGO
17. MUWAWENI
18. NTHABALALA
19. ST. SCHOLASTICA
20. THONZWE
21. TSHILAHO
22. TUWANI
23. VARI

SUMMARY OF CIRCUIT

PRIMARIES
7
REGION: 3
CIRCUIT: SEKGOSESE CENTRAL
AREA: SEKGOSESE

CATEGORY: PRIMARIES

1. BODUMA
2. BOSHATOLA
3. DEELKRAAL
4. IKAGELENG
5. ITSHOMELENG
6. KILETSA
7. LEBOWAKGANYANE
8. MABOKE
9. MAKHABENI
10. MAKWA
11. MALADUMA
12. MALEBALA
13. MANTSHA
14. MAPALEDI
15. MATSWIDIKANYE
16. MOGATSENA
17. MPTSEKETLA
18. MINNIK
19. PHEEHA
20. RAMOKGOPA
21. RAMOHLALE
22. RATHOMA
23. SEKGOPO
24. SEPHALA
25. MAMOTHE

SUMMARY OF CIRCUIT

PRIMARIES

25
REGION: 3
AREA: SOUTPANSBERG
CIRCUIT: SOUTPANSBERG EAST

CATEGORY: PRIMARY

1 BELE
2 DJUNANE
3 ELIM
4 HLALELANI
5 KETLANE
6 KHUNDA
7 LAERSKOOL LOUISTRICHARDT
8 LAERSKOOL SOUTPANSBERG
9 MADOMBIDZHA
10 MAGAU
11 MAGUADA
12 MAKWATAMBANI
13 MALIMUWA
14 MAMBEDI
15 MASINDI
16 MASUNGULO
17 MATSHAVHAWE
18 MUNZHEdzi
19 MUTAVHANANI
20 MUTHUHADINI
21 NKHENSA
22 NNDWAKHULU00
23 NYATEMA
24 PETAMUKANDA
25 SHIHŁOBYENI
26 SHIRLEY
27 TANGANEDZWA

28 TSHIFIRE
29 TSHIKHWANI
30 TSHIKWARANI
31 TSHILWAVHUSIKU
32 TSHIMONELA
33 TSHISAPHerGO
34 THIMOTHY TSHIBVUMO
35 VALDEZIA

COMBINED PUBLIC

1 ELTIVALLAS
2 MASEDI

INDEPENDENT COMBINEI

1 SWEET WATERS

PUBLIC PRE-SCHOOL

MUDINDIVHATHU
MURAVHA
VLEIFONTEIN
WATERVAL

INDEPENDENT PRE-SCHOOLS

1 HANG KLIP
2 EMMARENTIA
3 DRIE BEERTJIES
4 RIDJEWAY

SUMMARY OF CIRCUIT

PRIMARIES 35
INDEPENDENT PRE SCHOOL 4
REGION: 3
AREA: SOUTPANSBERG
CIRCUIT: SOUTPANSBERG NORTH

CATEGORY: PRIMARIES

1 BONWAUDI
2 DOLIDOLI
3 ESMEFOUR
4 FHEMBELEDZANI
5 GOMBANI
6 HOPE
7 KRIVHA
8 KHOMELE
9 KRANENEBURG
10 LAERSKOOL MESSINA
11 LANGANANI
12 LIPHAKHA
13 MAKUSHU
14 MANGWELE
15 MANYI
16 MAPANI
17 MAROI
18 MATAKWE
19 MITUMBA
20 MJULUMBI
21 MUSEKWA
22 OVERVLAKTE
23 RAMANJA
24 RIXILE
25 SANE
26 SIKHIVHILU
27 SKUTWATER
28 ST. MARTIN DE PORREZ
29 TAKALANI
30 TAVHANYEDZANI
31 TSHAKANDE
32 TSHISHIRU
33 MUFONGODI

COMBINED PUBLIC

1 DOREEN BRIDGE
2 MOPANE
3 MPHATHAKHA
4 SCHUITDRIFT

INDEPENDENT COMBINED

1 NEHAMIA CHRISTIAN

PRE-SCHOOL

1 KABOUTERLAND

SUMMARY OF CIRCUIT

PRIMARIES 33

COMBINED PUBLIC 4

INDEPENDENT COMBINED 1

PUBLIC PRE-SCHOOL 1
REGION : 3
AREA : SOUTPANSBERG
CIRCUIT : SOUTPANSBERG WEST

CATEGORY : PRIMARIES

1. BOERLANDS
2. FUNYUFUNYU
3. GOGOBOLE
4. KHOGONYANE
5. KLIPPUT
6. MADABANI
7. MADAHENI
8. MADODONGA
9. MAEBANI
10. MAGOVHANI
11. MAGULUVHE
12. MANAVHELA
13. MARA - BUYS
14. MARUA
15. MASETE
16. MATITIVHALA
17. MMBABADA
18. MMBEREGENI
19. MUDULWI
20. MUENGEDZI
21. MUGORORWANE
22. MUKHUDWANA
23. MUNAU
24. MURALeni
25. MUUNGADI
26. PHARANI
27. RAMAHANTSHA
28. TSHIOZWI
29. VHULORWA

SUMMARY OF CIRCUIT

PRIMARIES  COMBINEND PUBLIC
29  1

COMBINED PUBLIC

1. MARA
REGION: 3
AREA: SOUTPANSBERG
CIRCUIT: NZHELELE EAST

PRIMARIES
1 ADZIMBAMBI
2 DZANANI
3 DZUMBULUWANI
4 FONDWE
5 GODABI
6 GILBERT MULANDO
7 KHALAVHA
8 MADALA
9 MANAME
10 MANDALA
11 MANDIWANI
12 MILABONI
13 MPHALA
14 MUDUNUNGU
15 MUILADI
16 MUTHUWAFHETHU
17 NZHELELE
18 PFUMBADA
19 SHAVHANI
20 SENDEDZA
21 SHURA
22 SILOAM
23 THONONDA
24 TSHABVUMA
25 TSHAROTHA
26 TSHIAVHA
27 TSHIENDEULU
28 TSHIHENI
29 TSHIKOMBANI
30 TSHIKOVHANI
31 TSHIPANGE
32 TSHIRENZHENI
33 TSHITHUTHUNI
34 TDHIVHILIDULU
35 VHUTUWANGADZEBU

INDEPENDENT PRE-SCHOOL
1 FUNZANI
2 MPFARISENI

SUMMARY

PRIMARY
35

INDEPENDENT PRE-SCHOOL
2

504
CATEGORY : PRIMARIES

1 DZIVHANI
2 FRANK MUDALO
3 JIM TSHIVHONELO
4 LUFULE
5 LUKWARANI
6 MAHWASANE
7 MAKANYU
8 MAMATHIELEDZA
9 MANGODI
10 MANIINI
11 MASHAWANI
12 MULEDANE
13 MURAGA
14 MUVHI-TSHIKOVHA
15 NTSHUMBEDZENI
16 MVUDI
17 TAMBAULATE
18 TSHIKHUDINI
19 TSHILIVHO
20 TSHINETISE
21 TSHIULUNGOMA
22 TSWINGA

SUMMARY OF CIRCUIT

PRIMARIES
22

PRIMARY INDEPENDENT
1

INDIPENDENT COMBINED
1
### REGION: 3
### AREA: THOHOYANDOU
### CIRCUIT: MUTSHUNDUDI

#### CATEGORY: PRIMARIES

1. DAMANI
2. GALANANDZHELE
3. GEORGENHOLTZ
4. GILBERT NNDANGANENI
5. JIM MASINDI
6. KHUBVI
7. LONDOLANI
8. MAKONDE
9. MASIKWA
10. MBULU
11. MPHATHELE
12. MUTAVHE
13. NYAHANELANI
14. RAMUSHASHA
15. TAKALANI
16. TSHIKAMBE
17. TSHIFHATANI
18. TSHIPAKO
19. TSHISELUSELU
20. TSHIVHILWI
21. VONDWE

#### PRE-SCHOOLS: PUBLIC

1. ALUWANI
2. MULAMILELI
3. TSHIKONDWE

#### PRE-SCHOOL: INDEPENDENT

1. TENDER CARE

#### SUMMARY OF AREA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRIMARY</th>
<th>PRE-SCHOOLS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INDEPENDENT PRE- SCHOOL 1
REGION: 3
AREA: THOHOYANDOU
CIRCUIT: MVUDI

**CATEGORY: PRIMARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>PRIMARY SCHOOLS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>BEUSTER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>LUKHAIMA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>LUKUNDE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>MAFENYA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>MALAMANGWA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>MATSIKA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>MAUNGANI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>MBAHE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>MULAMULI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>NWELI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>THIFHURIWI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>TSHAMAVHUDZI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>TSHILUVHI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>TSHISHONGA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INDEPENDENT COMBINE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>PRIMARY SCHOOLS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>ALMIGHTY LEARNING CENTRE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>HILMARY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>LIVHA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>TSHIKEVHA.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SPECIAL SCHOOL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>PRIMARY SCHOOLS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>FULUFELI</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPREHENSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>PRIMARY SCHOOLS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>TSHEDZA PRIMARY SCHOOL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRE-SCHOOL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>PRIMARY SCHOOLS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>MALAVUWE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>MVELEDZANDIVHO</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUMMARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRIMARY SCHOOLS</th>
<th>COMPREHENSIVE SCHOOLS</th>
<th>SPECIAL SCHOOLS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEPENDENT COMBINED</td>
<td>INDEPENDENT PRIMARY PRE-SCHOOLS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
REGION : 3  
AREA : THOHOYANDOU  
CIRCUIT : TSHINANE

CATEGORY : PRIMARY

1. DAMBAVHUSHA  
2. GONDENI  
3. KHAILE  
4. MABILU  
5. MAHUVHA  
6. MATONDONI  
7. MBULAHENI  
8. MIKOSI  
9. MPHIGALALE  
10. MUKUMBANI  
11. MUTSHALINGANA  
12. MURANGONI  
13. NDIKANDAFHI  
14. NGUDA  
15. PFANO  
16. PRINCE RAMANEMISA  
17. TSHADZUME  
18. TSHANOWA  
19. TSHILAPFENE  
20. TSHIMEDZWA  
21. TSHITEREKE  
22. TSHIVHUNGULULU  
23. SEDZULUSANI  
24. VHUFULI

INDIPENDENT PRIMARY

1. GOLDVILLE

PRE-SCHOOLS

1. FHATALUSHAKA  
2. NNDUVHENI  
3. RATSHALINGWA

SUMMARY OF CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRIMARIES</th>
<th>INDEPENDENT PRIMARY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRE-SCHOOL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
REGION : 3
AREA : VUWANI
CIRCUIT : VHURONGA 2

CATEGORY : PRIMARY

1 AVHATONDWI
2 DE. HOOP
3 F. MUKHESWAKULE
4 KURULENI
5 LUPENZE
6 MARIADZE
7 MASHAA
8 MASHAU
9 MASIA
10 MATHOTHWE
11 MATSILA
12 MATSINDEVHE
13 MAVHINA
14 MAPHAGANE
15 MUNWAI
16 PHINIMINI
17 SHANDUKANI
18 T. NTSHAVHENI
19 TSHIRUNZANANI
20 TSIVHADE
21 VHANGANI

PRE-SCHOOLS

1 FULULEDZANI
2 GUNDO
3 KHATHUTSHELO
4 THAVHAYAMIPFA

SUMMARY OF CIRCUIT

PRIMARY

PRE-SCHOOLS

21

4
REGION: 3
AREA: VUWANI
CIRCUIT: DZONDO

CATEGORY: PRIMARY

1. DZONDO
2. GANYANE
3. HAMUTSHA
4. LUVHALANI
5. LEVUBU LAERSKOOL
6. MAFHARALALA
7. MAFHUMULELE
8. MANGOMANI
9. MAPHUPHE
10. MASAMBELWE
11. MATAVHA
12. MATHULE
13. MATSHELE
14. MUGIVHI
15. MMBOSWOBENI
16. MULANGAPHUMA
17. MUTANGWA MANUGU
18. MUTSHIPISI
19. MASUVHELELE
20. MUHUVOYA
21. MUUNGAMUNWE
22. NNDWAMMBI
23. RALUTHAGA
24. TSHAKHUMA
25. TSHIFHANDE
26. TSHIFHUMULO
27. TSHIFULANANI
28. TSHIKURUKURU
29. TSHIMBILUNI
30. TSHITUNGULU

SUMMARY OF CIRCUIT

PRIMARY
30
### REGION 4: NORTH EAST REGION

#### 4.1 GIYANI AREA

##### 4.1.1 SHAMAVUNGA CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOL</th>
<th>REGISTRATION NUMBER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>LOCALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Baleni</td>
<td>05</td>
<td>Box 96 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Shawela village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Bvuma</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Box 1005 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Loloka village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Dingamazi</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>Box 65 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Dingamanzi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Hlayisanani</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>Box 22 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Shimange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Hleketani</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9605 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Nsavulani village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Kheyi</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>Box 2799 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Kheyi village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Khungulu</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>Box 150 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>N'wamankena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Khwezu</td>
<td>605</td>
<td>Box 3697 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Shawela village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Leleni</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>Box 592 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Shikhumba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Mhlanganisweni</td>
<td>184</td>
<td>Box 558 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Shikhunyani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. M.K. Khambani</td>
<td>579</td>
<td>Box 3603 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Ngove village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Munghonghoma</td>
<td>189</td>
<td>Box 618 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Munghonghoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Mushiyani</td>
<td>191</td>
<td>Box 90 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Mushiyani village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Box</td>
<td>Town</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Muswanama</td>
<td>192</td>
<td>Box 623 Giyani 0826</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Nghilazi</td>
<td>205</td>
<td>Box 2676 Giyani 0826</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Nkomo</td>
<td>218</td>
<td>Box 2374 Giyani 0826</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Rirhandzu</td>
<td>253</td>
<td>Box 218 Giyani 0826</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Vahlave</td>
<td>314</td>
<td>Box 586 Giyani 0826</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Vuyani</td>
<td>320</td>
<td>Box 1459 Giyani 0826</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 4.1.2 KLEIN LETABA CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOL</th>
<th>REGISTRATION NUMBER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>LOCALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Xihlamariso</td>
<td>638</td>
<td>Box 3997 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Makosha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Benson Shiviti</td>
<td>596</td>
<td>Box 3808 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Thomo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Hatshama</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>Box 187 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Makosha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Hipambukile</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>Box 152 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Homu 14B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Khakhala</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>Box 137 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Khakhala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Madzivi</td>
<td>542</td>
<td>Box 3508 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Homu 14B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Magome</td>
<td>111</td>
<td>Box 548 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Ndindani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Muninginisi</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>Box 600 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Muninginisi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Muyeshe</td>
<td>195</td>
<td>Box 548 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Muyexe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Nghatsane</td>
<td>203</td>
<td>Box 128 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Mhlava-vhelemu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Pfunani</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>Box 556 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Muninginisi Block 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Solani</td>
<td>281</td>
<td>Box 555 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Gawula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Thomo</td>
<td>288</td>
<td>Box 533 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Thomo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Tshovani</td>
<td>309</td>
<td>Box 597 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Hlomela</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Tanani</td>
<td>289</td>
<td>Box 243 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Homu 14B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Rhida</td>
<td>249</td>
<td>Box 546 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Mapayeni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Vuhehli</td>
<td>317</td>
<td>Box 536 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Vuhehli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. Vusizi</td>
<td>319</td>
<td>Box 955 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Mahlathi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 4.1.3 MAN'OMBE CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOL</th>
<th>REGISTRATION NUMBER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>LOCALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Ndzumulo</td>
<td>369</td>
<td>Box 918 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Giyani section A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Ntsako</td>
<td>416</td>
<td>Box 1878 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Giyani section B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Anderson</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9951 N'wamanungu 0932</td>
<td>Ndengeza village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Babangu</td>
<td>003</td>
<td>Box 1213 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Babangu village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Hlakheko</td>
<td>056</td>
<td>Box 602 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Basani village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Hlaneki</td>
<td>059</td>
<td>Box 3612 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Hlaneki village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Honoka</td>
<td>068</td>
<td>Box 646 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Rivala village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Kayanene</td>
<td>077</td>
<td>Box 1723 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Gan’on’ village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Khomisani</td>
<td>087</td>
<td>Box 278 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Dzingidzingi village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Kremetart</td>
<td></td>
<td>Box 03 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Kremetart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Kutsakeni</td>
<td>092</td>
<td>Box 1794 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Gandlanani village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Langutelani</td>
<td>094</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9632 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Ndengeza C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Maswanganyi</td>
<td>026</td>
<td>Box 648 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Maswanganyi village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Mbhurenzi</td>
<td>162</td>
<td>Box 995 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Maxavela village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Meehlekeko</td>
<td>365</td>
<td>Box 9655 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Giyani section A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Ndzalama</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>Box 2357 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Giyani section D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Nhlagala</td>
<td>523</td>
<td>Box 2404 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Giyani extension A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Village</td>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Nqeeche</td>
<td>389</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9660 Giyani 0826</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Sukani</td>
<td>358</td>
<td>Box 09 Giyani 0826</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Thanda-bantu</td>
<td>639</td>
<td>P/Bag X 2172 Giyani 0826</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Vurhonga</td>
<td>485</td>
<td>Box 2654 Giyani 0826</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 4.1.4 NSAMI CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOL</th>
<th>REGISTRATION NUMBER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>LOCALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Fuyatha</td>
<td>547</td>
<td>Box 2706 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Siyandhani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Hanyanyani</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>Box 21 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Xivulani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Nghalalume</td>
<td>202</td>
<td>P/Bag X 534 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Jim Nghalalume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Nkuri</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1170 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Nkuri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Pfuxetani</td>
<td>237</td>
<td>Box 124 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Mavalani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Risenga</td>
<td>508</td>
<td>Box 2281 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Siyandhani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Samson Shiviti</td>
<td>534</td>
<td>Box 3555 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Mavalani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Siyandhani</td>
<td>281</td>
<td>Box 162 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Siyandhani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Tirhani</td>
<td>294</td>
<td>P/Bag X 8613 Nkuri</td>
<td>Nkuri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Tharihani</td>
<td>302</td>
<td>Box 580 Nkuri</td>
<td>Nkuri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Mashengani</td>
<td>622</td>
<td>Box 1500 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Xikukwana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Mafanele</td>
<td></td>
<td>Box 5576 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Mbatlo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Tshembani</td>
<td>307</td>
<td>Box 30 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>N'wadzekudzeku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Khanyisa</td>
<td>479</td>
<td>Box 2422 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Giyani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Xikukwana</td>
<td>334</td>
<td>P/Bag X 8610 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Xikukwana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Zamani</td>
<td>326</td>
<td>P/Bag X 290 Nkuri</td>
<td>Nkuri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Mixo</td>
<td>636</td>
<td>Box 2125 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Giyani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. Swisumbe</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Nkuri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 4.2 PHALABORWA AREA

### 4.2.1 LULEKANI CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOL</th>
<th>REGISTRATION NUMBER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>LOCALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Drakensig</td>
<td>424,174</td>
<td>Box 698 Hoedspruit 1380</td>
<td>Hoedspruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Mariepskop</td>
<td>400,430</td>
<td>P/Bag X 401 Hoedspruit 1380</td>
<td>Hoedspruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Modume</td>
<td>23/833</td>
<td>P/Bag X 11006 Namakgale 1391</td>
<td>Namakgale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Stanbury</td>
<td>A23/2641</td>
<td>P/Bag X 11017 Namakgale 1391</td>
<td>Namakgale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Rethusitswe</td>
<td>23/2485</td>
<td>Box 7216 Namakgale 1391</td>
<td>Namakgale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Bollanoto</td>
<td>23/53</td>
<td>P/Bag X 11034 Namakgale 1391</td>
<td>Namakgale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Makhushane</td>
<td>23/526</td>
<td>Box 782 Phalaborwa 1390</td>
<td>Phalaborwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Phalaborwa Suid</td>
<td>409,878</td>
<td>P/Bag X 01012 Phalaborwa 1390</td>
<td>Phalaborwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Phalaborwa Noord</td>
<td>419,968</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1026 Phalaborwa 1390</td>
<td>Phalaborwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Schiettocht</td>
<td>A25957</td>
<td>Box 1719 Phalaborwa 1390</td>
<td>Phalaborwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Chuchekani</td>
<td>554</td>
<td>Box 798 Lulekani</td>
<td>Lulekani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Nwasorini</td>
<td>430</td>
<td>P/Bag X 012006 Lulekani 1392</td>
<td>Lulekani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Lulekani</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>P/Bag X 12002 Lulekani 1392</td>
<td>Lulekani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Phulani Byi Hola</td>
<td>457</td>
<td>P/Bag X 012018 Lulekani 1392</td>
<td>Lulekani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Pendo</td>
<td>456</td>
<td>Box 103 Lulekani 1392</td>
<td>Lulekani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Shiphamele</td>
<td>354</td>
<td>P/Bag X 12007 Lulekani</td>
<td>Lulekani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Xitlhangu</td>
<td>550</td>
<td>Box 719 Lulekani 1392</td>
<td>Lulekani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. Fauna Park</td>
<td>415,826</td>
<td>P/Bag X 01002 Phalaborwa 1390</td>
<td>Phalaborwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. Nwarisenga</td>
<td>455</td>
<td>Box 569 Lulekani 1392</td>
<td>Lulekani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. Mashavele</td>
<td>722</td>
<td>P/Bag X 12022 Lulekani 1392</td>
<td>Lulekani</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 4.2.2 NAMAKGALE CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOL</th>
<th>REGISTRATION NUMBER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>LOCALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Gravelotte</td>
<td>23/2247</td>
<td>Box 7135 Phalaborwa 1391</td>
<td>Namakgale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Leseding (JCI)</td>
<td>5,898</td>
<td>P/Bag X 401 Gravelotte 0895</td>
<td>Gravelotte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Rethabile</td>
<td>23/115</td>
<td>P/Bag X 11012 Namakgale 1391</td>
<td>Namakgale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Mabine</td>
<td>23/411</td>
<td>P/Bag X 11005 Namakgale 1391</td>
<td>Namakgale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Mashishimale</td>
<td>23/720</td>
<td>P/Bag X 11002 Namakgale 1391</td>
<td>Namakgale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Refiloe</td>
<td>23/1660</td>
<td>P/Bag X 11029 Namakgale 13491</td>
<td>Namakgale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Zamani</td>
<td>23/1409</td>
<td>P/Bag X 11013 Namakgale 1391</td>
<td>Namakgale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Kgopsane</td>
<td>23/266</td>
<td>Box 739 Phalaborwa 1390</td>
<td>Phalaborwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Gaza</td>
<td>23/2730</td>
<td>Box 7138 Namakgale 1391</td>
<td>Namakgale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Mhalamhafa</td>
<td>23/2731</td>
<td>Box 135 Phalaborwa 1390</td>
<td>Phalaborwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Namakgale</td>
<td>23/992</td>
<td>Box 584 Phalaborwa 1390</td>
<td>Phalaborwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Phalaborwa</td>
<td>23/1056</td>
<td>Box 7257 Namakgale 1391</td>
<td>Namakgale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Maseke</td>
<td>23/701</td>
<td>Box 101 Namakgale 1391</td>
<td>Namakgale</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 4.2.3 GROOT LETABA CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOL</th>
<th>REGISTRATION NUMBER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>LOCALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Ukuthula</td>
<td>313</td>
<td>Box 70 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Mageva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Charlie Rhangani</td>
<td>593</td>
<td>Box 3703 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Mageva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Ndzhovela</td>
<td>201</td>
<td>Box 651 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Daniel Rababalela</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Mizuzwani</td>
<td>592</td>
<td>Box 3864 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Ndhambi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Dzumeri</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Box 629 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Ndhambi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Mayephu</td>
<td>157</td>
<td>Box 631 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Mayephu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Matsotsosela</td>
<td>149</td>
<td>Box 640 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Matsotsosela</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Xitlakati</td>
<td>331</td>
<td>Box 1549 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Xitlakati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Mhitwa</td>
<td>168</td>
<td>Box 608 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Khashani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Katekani</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>Box 657 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>N'wamarhanga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Govani</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>Box 593 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Mphagani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Mabunda</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>Box 4472 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Phalaubeni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Nyiko</td>
<td>231</td>
<td>P/Bag X 594 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Mbaula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Prieska</td>
<td>672</td>
<td>Box 1149 Lulekani 1392</td>
<td>Prieska</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Selwana</td>
<td>23/1228</td>
<td>P/Bag X 11022 Namakgale 1391</td>
<td>Selwana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Ehleketani</td>
<td>671</td>
<td>Box 1148 Lulekani 1392</td>
<td>Nondweni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Madjadji</td>
<td>23/2815</td>
<td>Box 972 Selwana 1394</td>
<td>Selwana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>Vatswatsi</td>
<td>525</td>
<td>Box 64 Lulekani 1392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>Albert Mabe</td>
<td>567</td>
<td>Box 40 Phangweni 0816</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>Makhuva</td>
<td>A124</td>
<td>Box 50 Phangweni 0816</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>Mzilela</td>
<td>197</td>
<td>Box 642 Giyani 0826</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>Phadi</td>
<td>238</td>
<td>Box 3467 Giyani 0826</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
REGION 5: EASTERN REGION

5.1 BOLOBEDU AREA

5.1.1 BOLOBEDU CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOL</th>
<th>REGISTRATION NUMBER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>LOCALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Bolobedu</td>
<td>0501311629</td>
<td>Box 6004 Modjadji 0837</td>
<td>Modjadji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Femane</td>
<td>1501311633</td>
<td>Box 4742 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Khumelong</td>
<td>1501311639</td>
<td>Box 4309 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Khutsong</td>
<td>1501311640</td>
<td>P/Bag X 930 Molototsi</td>
<td>Molototsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Leakale</td>
<td>1501311642</td>
<td>P/Bag X 229 Modjadji 0837</td>
<td>Modjadji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Matshwi</td>
<td>0501311666</td>
<td>Box 4156 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Mohokone</td>
<td>0501311674</td>
<td>Box 1364 Ga-Kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Mothobekhi</td>
<td>0501311684</td>
<td>Box 4714 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Ramaroka</td>
<td>0501311698</td>
<td>P/Bag X 733 Molototsi</td>
<td>Molototsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Sekgothi</td>
<td>0591311707</td>
<td>Box 1619 Modjadji 0837</td>
<td>Modjadji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Senakwe</td>
<td>0501311708</td>
<td>Box 1317 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. senopelwa</td>
<td>0501311709</td>
<td>Box 4031 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Seripe</td>
<td>0201122943</td>
<td>Box 62 duiwelskloof 0835</td>
<td>Duiwelskloof</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Setloumane</td>
<td>0501311712</td>
<td>Box 4301 Ga-kgapane</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 5.1.2 KGAPANE CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOL</th>
<th>REGISTRATION NUMBER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>LOCALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shotong</td>
<td>0501311714</td>
<td>Box 4654 Ga-kgapane0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W.M. Kgatla</td>
<td>0501502496</td>
<td>Box 4084 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZZ2</td>
<td>0501502496</td>
<td>Box 631 Mooketsi 0825</td>
<td>Mooketsi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 5.1.3 MAWA CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOL</th>
<th>REGISTRATION NUMBER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>LOCALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Mabjepilong</td>
<td>1501311649</td>
<td>Box 6031 Modjadj 0837</td>
<td>Modjadj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Makgope</td>
<td>1501311651</td>
<td>P/Bag X 767 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Miragoma</td>
<td>0501311671</td>
<td>P/Bag X 579 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Masekwane</td>
<td>0501311663</td>
<td>Box 3505 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Mauloko</td>
<td>0501311668</td>
<td>Box 3204 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Mawa</td>
<td>001040218</td>
<td>Box 4308 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Mohale</td>
<td>0501311676</td>
<td>Box 4790 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Mokgwathi</td>
<td>0501311680</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1461 Shihoko 0872</td>
<td>Shihoko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Molokwane</td>
<td>0501311681</td>
<td>Box 6045 Modjadj 0837</td>
<td>Modjadj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Morapalala</td>
<td>0501311693</td>
<td>Box 80 Shihoko 0872</td>
<td>Shihoko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Ooghoek</td>
<td>0501311697</td>
<td>Box 6064 Modjadj 0837</td>
<td>Modjadj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Pjapjamela</td>
<td>0501311722</td>
<td>Box 6018 Modjadj 0837</td>
<td>Modjadj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Tumedi</td>
<td>0501311723</td>
<td>P/Bag X 739 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Vallambrosa</td>
<td>0501311723</td>
<td>P/Bag X 739 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.1.4 MOLOTOTSI CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOL</th>
<th>REGISTRATION NUMBER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>LOCALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Boreletsana</td>
<td>0501311630</td>
<td>Box 4159 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Kgobokanane</td>
<td>1501311635</td>
<td>P/Bag X 926 Molototsi 0827</td>
<td>Molototsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Lekwareng</td>
<td>1501311644</td>
<td>Box 4136 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Lerale</td>
<td>1501311646</td>
<td>Box 5045 Molototsi 0827</td>
<td>Molototsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Mahekgwe</td>
<td>1501311650</td>
<td>Box 4804 Ga-Kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Maloba</td>
<td>0501311655</td>
<td>Box 5088 Molototsi 0827</td>
<td>Molototsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Mamanyoha</td>
<td>0501311656</td>
<td>Box 4464 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Masefora</td>
<td>0501311662</td>
<td>Box 4162 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Metsi-a-phem</td>
<td>0501311670</td>
<td>Box 4135 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Mpepule</td>
<td>0501311687</td>
<td>P/Bag X705 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Giyani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Northamptom</td>
<td>0501311692</td>
<td>Box 5021 Molototsi 0827</td>
<td>Molototsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Ratske</td>
<td>0501311702</td>
<td>Box 4309 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Shamiriri</td>
<td>0501311713</td>
<td>Box 4135 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Taulome</td>
<td>0501311715</td>
<td>Box 4309 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Thabisong</td>
<td>0501311716</td>
<td>P/Bag X923 Molototsi 0827</td>
<td>Molototsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Tlhotlhokwe</td>
<td>0501311720</td>
<td>Box 4664 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Tsogang</td>
<td>0501311721</td>
<td>Box 4159 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 5.1.5 MOTUPA CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOL</th>
<th>REGISTRATION NUMBER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>LOCALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Botludi</td>
<td>0501311631</td>
<td>P/Bag X 114 Modjadji 0837</td>
<td>Modjadji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Kheopeni</td>
<td>1501311637</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1113 Modjadji 0837</td>
<td>Modjadji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Khethapoye</td>
<td>1501311638</td>
<td>Box 1024 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Mabje a kgoro</td>
<td>1501311648</td>
<td>Box 4055 Ga-kgapan 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Malemela</td>
<td>0501311654</td>
<td>Box 3953 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Mapitula</td>
<td>0501311660</td>
<td>Box 1786 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Mapula</td>
<td>1501311661</td>
<td>P/Bag X 4051 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Matlatji</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Mokutupi</td>
<td>0501311677</td>
<td>Box 968 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Moleketla</td>
<td>0501311679</td>
<td>Box Deerpark 0852</td>
<td>Deerpark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Morutsi</td>
<td>0501311682</td>
<td>Box 6067 Modjadji 0837</td>
<td>Modjadji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Mothomeng</td>
<td>0501311685</td>
<td>Box 6066 Modjadji 0837</td>
<td>Modjadji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Motupakgomo</td>
<td>0501311686</td>
<td>P/Bag X 4011 Ga-kgapan 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Pholoahlaba</td>
<td>0501311695</td>
<td>Box 2687 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Sara</td>
<td>0501311703</td>
<td>Box 3658 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Sefolwe</td>
<td>0501311705</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1104 Modjadji 0837</td>
<td>Modjadji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Thapane</td>
<td>0501311717</td>
<td>P/Bag X 4044 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. Tlhapedi</td>
<td>0501311719</td>
<td>Box 2741 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.2 HLANGANANI AREA

5.2.1 HLANGANANI CENTRAL CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOL</th>
<th>REGISTRATION NUMBER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>LOCALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Bungeni</td>
<td>0501432237</td>
<td>Box 45 Elim Hospital 0960</td>
<td>Elim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Caledon</td>
<td>0501442268</td>
<td>Box 462 Vongani 0930</td>
<td>Vongani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Giya</td>
<td>1501442270</td>
<td>Box 341 Giyani 0826</td>
<td>Giyani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Joe Mabedle</td>
<td>1501442273</td>
<td>P/Bag x 462 Vongani 0930</td>
<td>Vongani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Khapakhapa</td>
<td>1501442275</td>
<td>P/Bag X 6700 Khomanani 0933</td>
<td>Khomanani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Madobi</td>
<td>1501442277</td>
<td>P/Bag X 636 Khomanani 0933</td>
<td>Khomanani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Magezi Majazi</td>
<td>1501442278</td>
<td>Box 430 Khomanani 0933</td>
<td>Khomanani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Majosi</td>
<td>1501442281</td>
<td>P/Bag X 636 Khomanani 0933</td>
<td>Khomanani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Masungi</td>
<td>0501432247</td>
<td>P/Bag X 325 Elim Hospital 0960</td>
<td>Elim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Mhluri</td>
<td></td>
<td>P/Bag X 303 Elim Hospital 0960</td>
<td>Elim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Mukhono</td>
<td>0501432250</td>
<td>Box 1024 Elim Hospital 0960</td>
<td>Elim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Mutsetweni</td>
<td></td>
<td>P/Bag X 1267 Elim Hospital 0960</td>
<td>Elim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Ndlhaveya</td>
<td>0501432252</td>
<td>Box 346 Elim Hospital 0960</td>
<td>Elim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Njakanjaka</td>
<td>0501432253</td>
<td>Box 388 Elim Hospital 0960</td>
<td>Elim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Njhinga</td>
<td>0501432254</td>
<td>P/Bag X 324 Elim Hospital</td>
<td>Elim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Phone</td>
<td>Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Nkuzana</td>
<td>0501432284</td>
<td>Box 621 Giyani 0826</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Ntshuxi</td>
<td>0501442285</td>
<td>Box 486 Vongani 0930</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>N’wamhandzi</td>
<td></td>
<td>P/Bag X 338 Elim Hospital 0960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Pembunuka</td>
<td>0501442287</td>
<td>P/Bag X 6613 Khomanani 0933</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Wayeni</td>
<td>0501432263</td>
<td>P/Bag X 302 Elim Hospital 0960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Xitachi</td>
<td>0501432266</td>
<td>Box 45 Elim Hospital 0960</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# 5.2.2 HLANGANANI NORTH CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOL</th>
<th>REGISTRATION NUMBER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>LOCALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Chavani</td>
<td>0501432238</td>
<td>Box 309 Elim Hospital 0960</td>
<td>Elim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Maphanyi</td>
<td>1501432245</td>
<td>P/Bag X 328 Elim Hospital 0960</td>
<td>Elim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Masekani</td>
<td>0501432246</td>
<td>Box 1264 Elim Hospital 0960</td>
<td>Elim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Mashamba</td>
<td>0301291512</td>
<td>Box 200 Louis Trichardt 0920</td>
<td>Louis Trichardt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Mbokota</td>
<td>0501432249</td>
<td>Box 303 Elim Hospital 0960</td>
<td>Elim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Mufeba</td>
<td>0301291521</td>
<td>Box 17 Mashamba 0942</td>
<td>Mashamba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Mulindathavha</td>
<td>0301291526</td>
<td>Box 24 Mashamba 0942</td>
<td>Mashamba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. N’waxinyamani</td>
<td>0501432256</td>
<td>Box 48 Elim Hospital 0960</td>
<td>Elim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Nyeleti</td>
<td>0501432257</td>
<td>Box 327 Elim Hospital 0960</td>
<td>Elim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Riverplaats</td>
<td>0501432258</td>
<td>Box 306 Elim Hospital 0960</td>
<td>Elim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Sithumani</td>
<td>0501432261</td>
<td>Box 329 Elim Hospital 0960</td>
<td>Elim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Sekhosana</td>
<td></td>
<td>Box 1107 Elim Hospital 0960</td>
<td>Elim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Tshitangule</td>
<td>0301291553</td>
<td>Box 11 Mashamba 0942</td>
<td>Mashamba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Tshivhangani</td>
<td>0301291554</td>
<td>Box 926 Louis Trichardt 0920</td>
<td>Louis Trichardt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Xilumana</td>
<td>0501432265</td>
<td>P/Bag X 328 Elim Hospital 0960</td>
<td>Elim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Berea</td>
<td>0501442267</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1990 Vuyani 0931</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Dumani</td>
<td>1501442269</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1514 Vuyani 0931</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Goza</td>
<td>1501442271</td>
<td>Box 59 Vongani 0930</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Haaka</td>
<td>1501442272</td>
<td>P/Bag X 4001 N’wamanungu 0932</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Khamanyana</td>
<td>1501442274</td>
<td>P/Bag X 5010 Vongani 0930</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Kulani</td>
<td>1501442276</td>
<td>Box 205 Vongani 0930</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Mahatlane</td>
<td>1501432243</td>
<td>Box 393 Vongani 0930</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Mahochomba</td>
<td>1501442279</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1664 Vuyani 0931</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Mahuntsi</td>
<td>1501442280</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1663 Vuyani 0931</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Masakona</td>
<td>0301291511</td>
<td>Box 11 Masakona 0941</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Mawela</td>
<td>0301291515</td>
<td>Box 49 Mashamba 0942</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Muhunguti</td>
<td>0501442282</td>
<td>P/Bag X 5003 Vongani 0930</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Muvimbi</td>
<td>0301291535</td>
<td>Box 205 Masakona 0941</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>Nkanyani</td>
<td>0501442283</td>
<td>Box 88 Vongani 0930</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>Pfumelani</td>
<td>0501442288</td>
<td>P/Bag X 5002 Vongani 0930</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>Rasikhuthuma</td>
<td>0301291542</td>
<td>C/O Bag X 5006 Vongani 0930</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>Rembuluwani</td>
<td>0501403696</td>
<td>C/O Bag X 5006 Vongani 0930</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>Rivoningo</td>
<td>0501442289</td>
<td>P/Bag X 5004 Vongani 0930</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Phone</td>
<td>Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>Vulani</td>
<td>0501442290</td>
<td>Box 628 Vongani 0930</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>Vungela</td>
<td>0501552291</td>
<td>Box 95 Vongani 0930</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>Ximuwinii</td>
<td>0501442292</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1625 Vuyani 0931</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 5.2.4 MAMAILA CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOL</th>
<th>REGISTRATION NUMBER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>LOCALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Dulang</td>
<td>1501311632</td>
<td>Box 5017 Molototsi 0827</td>
<td>Molototsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Jamela</td>
<td></td>
<td>C/O Bag 5006 Vongani 0930</td>
<td>Vongani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Kabune</td>
<td>1501311641</td>
<td>Box 5033 Molototsi 0827</td>
<td>Molototsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Lebaka</td>
<td>1501311643</td>
<td>Box 5092 Molototsi 0827</td>
<td>Molototsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. M.R. Mamaila</td>
<td></td>
<td>Box 5030 Molototsi 0827</td>
<td>Molototsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Mamokgadi</td>
<td>1501311658</td>
<td>Box 5035 Molototsi 0827</td>
<td>Molototsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Maufota</td>
<td>0501311667</td>
<td>Box 5039 Molototsi 0827</td>
<td>Molototsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Nakampe</td>
<td>0501311689</td>
<td>P/Bag X 904 Molototsi 0827</td>
<td>Molototsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Nokane</td>
<td>0501311691</td>
<td>Box 4066 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Phakeng</td>
<td>0501311694</td>
<td>Box 5169 Molototsi 0827</td>
<td>Molototsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Pipa</td>
<td>0501311696</td>
<td>Box 4503 Ga-kgapane 0838</td>
<td>Ga-kgapane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Ramatimana</td>
<td>0501311699</td>
<td>Box 509 Molototsi 0827</td>
<td>Molototsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Ramollo</td>
<td>0501311700</td>
<td>P/Bag X 5102 Molototsi 0827</td>
<td>Molototsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Schonwe</td>
<td>0501311706</td>
<td>Box 5011 Molototsi 0827</td>
<td>Molototsi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 5.3 THABINA AREA

### 5.3.1 KHUJWANA CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOL</th>
<th>REGISTRATION NUMBER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>LOCALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Graighead</td>
<td>1501502463</td>
<td>Box 334 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Khujwana</td>
<td>1501472321</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1433 Letaba 0870</td>
<td>Letaba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Lephaphane</td>
<td>1501401978</td>
<td>Box 131 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Leseka</td>
<td>1501401979</td>
<td>Box 131 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Magreth Shiluvana</td>
<td>1501401988</td>
<td>Box 1923 Letaba 0870</td>
<td>Letaba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Maje</td>
<td>1501401988</td>
<td>Box 276 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Mathunyani</td>
<td>1501401988</td>
<td>Box 276 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Mogabe</td>
<td>0501402011</td>
<td>Box 630 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Mohlabo</td>
<td>0501482348</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1406 Letaba 0870</td>
<td>Letaba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Murlebrook</td>
<td>05014723340</td>
<td>Box 712 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Nkankasana</td>
<td>05014723340</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1423 Letaba 0870</td>
<td>Letaba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Nugart</td>
<td>0010140222</td>
<td>Box 544 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Ponani</td>
<td>0501472338</td>
<td>Box 593 Letaba 0870</td>
<td>Letaba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Shikhati</td>
<td>0501472341</td>
<td>Box 947 Letaba 0870</td>
<td>Letaba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Thabeng</td>
<td>0501402040</td>
<td>Box 319 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Tighitsi</td>
<td>0501462734</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1423 Letaba 0870</td>
<td>Letaba</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### LEPELLE CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOL</th>
<th>REGISTRATION NUMBER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>LOCALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Butshwana</td>
<td>0501401965</td>
<td>P/Bag X 417 Moetladimo 0891</td>
<td>Moetladimo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diphuti</td>
<td>0501401966</td>
<td>P/Bag X 414 Moetladimo 0891</td>
<td>Moetladimo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kgopong</td>
<td>1501401970</td>
<td>Box 94 Trichardsdal 0890</td>
<td>Trichardsdal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kobjanime</td>
<td>1501401972</td>
<td>P/Bag X 412 Moetladimo 0891</td>
<td>Moetladimo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lepelle</td>
<td>1501401977</td>
<td>Box 251 Moetladimo 0891</td>
<td>Moetladimo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maatla</td>
<td>1501401983</td>
<td>Box 361 Trichardsdal 0890</td>
<td>Trichardsdal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magaingwana</td>
<td>1501401986</td>
<td>Box 12 Moetladimo 0891</td>
<td>Moetladimo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahupje</td>
<td>1501401987</td>
<td>Box 181 Trichardsdal 0890</td>
<td>Trichardsdal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Makgaung</td>
<td>1501401989</td>
<td>Box 197 Trichardsdal 0890</td>
<td>Trichardsdal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mametja</td>
<td>0501401993</td>
<td>Box 245 Trichardsdal 0890</td>
<td>Trichardsdal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mamokaile</td>
<td>1501401994</td>
<td>Box 543 Moetladimo 0891</td>
<td>Moetladimo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mampshe</td>
<td>1501402002</td>
<td>Box 166 Trichardsdal 0890</td>
<td>Trichardsdal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matsikinyane</td>
<td>0501402016</td>
<td>P/Bag X 418 Moetladimo 0891</td>
<td>Moetladimo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molalan</td>
<td>0501402032</td>
<td>Box 270 Moetladimo 0891</td>
<td>Moetladimo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sekoko</td>
<td>0501402033</td>
<td>Box 234 Moetladimo 0891</td>
<td>Moetladimo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.3.3 MAKHUTSWE CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOL</th>
<th>REGISTRATION NUMBER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>LOCALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Bailon Mantlana</td>
<td>0501401963</td>
<td>Box 73 Trichardsdal 0890</td>
<td>Trichardsdal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Lefoke</td>
<td>1501401973</td>
<td>Box 465 Trichardsdal 0890</td>
<td>Trichardsdal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Lekane</td>
<td>1501401974</td>
<td>Box 161 Moetladimo 0891</td>
<td>Moetladimo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Lorraine Banareng</td>
<td>1501401980</td>
<td>Box 65 Trichardsdal 0890</td>
<td>Trichardsdal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Maangwako</td>
<td></td>
<td>Box 161 Moetladimo 0891</td>
<td>Moetladimo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Malebalong</td>
<td>0501401991</td>
<td>Box 6 Moetladimo 0891</td>
<td>Moetladimo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Mamahlola</td>
<td>0501401992</td>
<td>P/Bag X 403 Moetladimo 0891</td>
<td>Moetladimo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Matshangwene</td>
<td>0501402001</td>
<td>Box 49 Trichardsdal 0890</td>
<td>Trichardsdal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Metz</td>
<td>0501402003</td>
<td>P/Bag X 407 Moetladimo 0891</td>
<td>Moetladimo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Mmakau</td>
<td>0501402005</td>
<td>Box 258 Trichardsdal 0890</td>
<td>Trichardsdal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Molalatadi</td>
<td>0501402017</td>
<td>Box 258 Moetladimo 0891</td>
<td>Moetladimo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Motlolatsoko</td>
<td>0501402020</td>
<td>Box 49 Trichardsdal 0890</td>
<td>Trichardsdal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Rankagele</td>
<td>0501402026</td>
<td>Box 494 Moetladimo 0891</td>
<td>Moetladimo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Sekororo</td>
<td>0501402034</td>
<td>Box 125 Trichardsdal 0890</td>
<td>Trichardsdal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Thubisane</td>
<td>0501402042</td>
<td>Box 406 Trichardsdal 0890</td>
<td>Trichardsdal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Timamogolo</td>
<td>0501402043</td>
<td>Box 40 Trichardsdal 0890</td>
<td>Trichardsdal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Tjalatjala</td>
<td>0501402753</td>
<td>Box 603 Trichardsdal 0890</td>
<td>Trichardsdal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### SHILUVANE CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOL</th>
<th>REGISTRATION NUMBER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>LOCALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Allegraine</td>
<td>0501502461</td>
<td>Box 14 Ofcolaco 0854</td>
<td>Ofcolaco</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Bordeaux</td>
<td>0501472315</td>
<td>P/Bag X 405 Shiluvane 0873</td>
<td>Shiluvane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Dindini</td>
<td>0501502466</td>
<td>C/O Bag X 414 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Hoveni</td>
<td>1501472320</td>
<td>Box 180 Shiluvane 0873</td>
<td>Shiluvane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Maake</td>
<td>1501401981</td>
<td>Box 64 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Maale</td>
<td>1501401982</td>
<td>Box 30 Shiluvane 0873</td>
<td>Shiluvane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Mogapene</td>
<td>1501402012</td>
<td>Box 15 Shiluvane 0873</td>
<td>Shiluvane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Mmakgotlo</td>
<td>0201120438</td>
<td>Box 59 Shiluvane 0873</td>
<td>Shiluvane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Maponya</td>
<td></td>
<td>Box 680 Shiluvane 0873</td>
<td>Shiluvane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Maroboni</td>
<td>0501401995</td>
<td>Box 76 Shiluvane 0873</td>
<td>Shiluvane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Mashiloane</td>
<td>0501401999</td>
<td>Box 19 Shiluvane 0873</td>
<td>Shiluvane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Mmaiaha</td>
<td>0501402007</td>
<td>Box 358 Shiluvane 0873</td>
<td>Shiluvane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Mogapene</td>
<td>0501402012</td>
<td>Box 15 Shiluvane 0873</td>
<td>Shiluvane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Molati</td>
<td>0501402018</td>
<td>Box 314 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Ntswano</td>
<td>0501472336</td>
<td>Box 04 Shiluvane 0873</td>
<td>Shiluvane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Phepeni</td>
<td>0501402023</td>
<td>Box 4180 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Rhulani</td>
<td>0501472339</td>
<td>Box 23 Julesburg 0875</td>
<td>Julesburg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Phone</td>
<td>Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>Semana</td>
<td>0501492036</td>
<td>Box 301 Lenyenyе 0857</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>Sepeke</td>
<td>0501402037</td>
<td>Box 55 Shiluvane 0873</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>Serare</td>
<td>0501402038</td>
<td>Box 55 Shiluvane 0873</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>Shiluvane</td>
<td>0501472342</td>
<td>C/O Bag X 411 Shiluvane 0873</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCHOOL</td>
<td>REGISTRATION NUMBER</td>
<td>ADDRESS</td>
<td>LOCALITY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Joseph Maenetja</td>
<td>1501401968</td>
<td>Box 1314 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Kgahara</td>
<td>1501401969</td>
<td>Box 2 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Legolo Maake</td>
<td></td>
<td>Box 132 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Lenyenye</td>
<td>1501401976</td>
<td>Box 100 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Mogoboya Ramadike</td>
<td>1501402013</td>
<td>Box 1320 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Mogoboya</td>
<td>1501402013</td>
<td>Box 253 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Marumofase</td>
<td>0501401996</td>
<td>Box 535 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Mmaphai</td>
<td>0501402008</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1403 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Modupi</td>
<td>0501402010</td>
<td>Box 75 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Mohlodumela</td>
<td>0501402014</td>
<td>Box 304 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Moime</td>
<td>0501402015</td>
<td>Box 132 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Montsheng</td>
<td>0501402019</td>
<td>Box 33 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Ramalema</td>
<td>0501402025</td>
<td>Box 104 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Rasemana</td>
<td>0501402027</td>
<td>Box 425 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Thabina</td>
<td>0501402041</td>
<td>Box 58 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 5.4 RITAVI AREA

#### 5.4.1 NWANEDZI CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOL</th>
<th>REGISTRATION NUMBER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>LOCALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Akanani</td>
<td>0501462733</td>
<td>Box 1361 Letsitele 0885</td>
<td>Letsitele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Dankbaar</td>
<td>0501502465</td>
<td>Box 01 Letsitele 0885</td>
<td>Letsitele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Deeside</td>
<td>0010140204</td>
<td>Box 626 Letsitele 0885</td>
<td>Letsitele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Favasi</td>
<td>1501462296</td>
<td>Box 293 N’wamitwa 0871</td>
<td>N’wamitwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Fofoza</td>
<td>1501462297</td>
<td>Box 253 N’wamitwa 0871</td>
<td>N’wamitwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Jassie</td>
<td>1501502470</td>
<td>Box 01 Letsitele 0885</td>
<td>Letsitele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Lacotte</td>
<td>1501502471</td>
<td>P/Bag X 524 Letsitele 0885</td>
<td>Letsitele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Leonora</td>
<td>1501502474</td>
<td>Box 142 Letsitele 0885</td>
<td>Letsitele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Mahlebezulu</td>
<td>1501462298</td>
<td>Box 252 N’wamitwa 0871</td>
<td>N’wamitwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Malubana</td>
<td>0501462300</td>
<td>Box 1031 Letsitele 0885</td>
<td>Letsitele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Manyunyu</td>
<td></td>
<td>Box 920 N’wamitwa 0871</td>
<td>N’wamitwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Mpenyisi</td>
<td></td>
<td>Box 943 N’wamitwa 0871</td>
<td>N’wamitwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Nhlegeleti</td>
<td>0501462305</td>
<td>Box 308 N’wamitwa 0871</td>
<td>N’wamitwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Nkambako</td>
<td>0501462306</td>
<td>P/Bag X 331 Letsitele 0885</td>
<td>Letsitele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. N’wajaheni</td>
<td>0501462307</td>
<td>Box 681 N’wamitwa 0871</td>
<td>N’wamitwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Pfukani</td>
<td>0501502485</td>
<td>Box 30 Letsitele 0885</td>
<td>Letsitele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Riverside</td>
<td>0501502489</td>
<td>Box 77 Letsitele 0885</td>
<td>Letsitele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. Tsakani</td>
<td>0501462309</td>
<td>Box 262 N’wamitwa 0871</td>
<td>N’wamitwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. Vhulakanjhani</td>
<td>0501462310</td>
<td>P/Bag X 507 N’wamitwa 0871</td>
<td>N’wamitwa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 5.4.2 MAFARANA CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOL</th>
<th>REGISTRATION NUMBER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>LOCALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. DR. Annecke</td>
<td>1501192229</td>
<td>C/O Bag X 1411 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Gavaza</td>
<td>1401472318</td>
<td>P/Bag X 401 Shiluvane 0873</td>
<td>Shiluvane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Jack Mashamba</td>
<td>1501482347</td>
<td>Box 453 Letsitele 0885</td>
<td>Letsitele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Khopo</td>
<td></td>
<td>Box 1425 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Mafarana</td>
<td>1501472322</td>
<td>P/Bag X 514 Letsitele 0885</td>
<td>Letsitele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Mbangwa</td>
<td>0501472328</td>
<td>P/Bag X 564 Letsitele 0885</td>
<td>Letsitele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Mbetana</td>
<td>0501472329</td>
<td>P/Bag X 582 Letsitele 0885</td>
<td>Letsitele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Mhangweni</td>
<td>0501472330</td>
<td>Box 78 Shiluvane 0873</td>
<td>Shiluvane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Mlungisi</td>
<td>0501472331</td>
<td>P/Bag X 565 Letsitele 0885</td>
<td>Letsitele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Mushoti</td>
<td></td>
<td>P/Bag X 576 Letsitele 0885</td>
<td>Letsitele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Nyatshiri</td>
<td></td>
<td>Box 1319 Letsitele 0885</td>
<td>Letsitele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Rita</td>
<td>0501402031</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1405 Lenyenye 0857</td>
<td>Lenyenye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. The junction</td>
<td>0501502494</td>
<td>Box 01 Letsitele 0885</td>
<td>Letsitele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Totwana</td>
<td>0501472345</td>
<td>P/Bag X 504 Letsitele 0885</td>
<td>Letsitele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Xivodze</td>
<td>0501472346</td>
<td>P/Bag X 511 Letsitele 0885</td>
<td>Letsitele</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 5.4.3 NKOWANKOWA CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOL</th>
<th>REGISTRATION NUMBER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>LOCALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Banana</td>
<td>0501472313</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1436 Letaba 0870</td>
<td>Letaba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Bombeleni</td>
<td>0501472314</td>
<td>Box 1096 Letaba 0870</td>
<td>Letaba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Dan</td>
<td>0501472316</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1422 Letaba 0870</td>
<td>Letaba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Dududu</td>
<td>1501472317</td>
<td>Box 214 Letaba 0870</td>
<td>Letaba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Hosanamavele</td>
<td>1501472319</td>
<td>Box 1174 Letsitele 0885</td>
<td>Letsitele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Letaba Landgoed</td>
<td></td>
<td>Box 06 Letaba 0870</td>
<td>Letaba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Letaba special school</td>
<td></td>
<td>Box 24 Letaba 0870</td>
<td>Letaba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Malwandla</td>
<td>0501472323</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1419 Letaba 0870</td>
<td>Letaba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Marito</td>
<td>0501472325</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1418 Letaba 0870</td>
<td>Letaba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Mariveni</td>
<td>0501472326</td>
<td>Box 8 Letaba 0870</td>
<td>Letaba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Mavumba</td>
<td>0501472327</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1442 Letaba 0870</td>
<td>Letaba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Nkowankowa</td>
<td>0501472335</td>
<td>Box 92 Letaba 0870</td>
<td>Letaba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. N'waxindzele</td>
<td>0501472337</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1425 Letaba 0870</td>
<td>Letaba</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 5.4.4 XIHOKO CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOL</th>
<th>REGISTRATION NUMBER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>LOCALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Makhanana</td>
<td>0501462299</td>
<td>Box 697 N’wamitwa 0871</td>
<td>N’wamitwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Mavele</td>
<td>0501462302</td>
<td>Box 351 N’wamitwa 0871</td>
<td>N’wamitwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Mavhabaza</td>
<td>0501462301</td>
<td>Box 307 N’wamitwa 0871</td>
<td>N’wamitwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Mpapalati</td>
<td>0501462303</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1443 Xihoko 0872</td>
<td>Xihoko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Muhlavasi</td>
<td></td>
<td>Box 186 Xihoko 0872</td>
<td>Xihoko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Ndzhungulwana</td>
<td>0501452295</td>
<td>Box 185 Xihoko 0872</td>
<td>Xihoko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. N’wamungololo</td>
<td>0501311690</td>
<td>Box 2132 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Ngwazana</td>
<td>0501462304</td>
<td>Box 707 N’wamitwa 0871</td>
<td>N’wamitwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Nyavana</td>
<td>0301211025</td>
<td>P.O. Xihoko 0872</td>
<td>Xihoko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Runnymede</td>
<td>0501462308</td>
<td>Box 321 N’wamitwa 0871</td>
<td>N’wamitwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Xihoko</td>
<td>0501462311</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1460 Xihoko 0872</td>
<td>Xihoko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Xirhulurhulu</td>
<td>0501462312</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1407 Xihoko 0872</td>
<td>Xihoko</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 5.4.5 TZANEEN CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOL</th>
<th>REGISTRATION NUMBER</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
<th>LOCALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Crisnic</td>
<td>0501502464</td>
<td>Box 503 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Enkel Elk</td>
<td>1501502467</td>
<td>Box 2184 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Grysapple</td>
<td>1501502468</td>
<td>Box 786 Tzaneen 0950</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Inzana</td>
<td>1501502469</td>
<td>Box 2096 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Ledzee</td>
<td>1501502472</td>
<td>Box 206 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Lehlaba</td>
<td>1501502473</td>
<td>Box 2845 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Lianas</td>
<td>0020150781</td>
<td>Box 695 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Loretto</td>
<td>0501502476</td>
<td>Box 885 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Mabapa</td>
<td>1501502477</td>
<td>Box 2083 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Makgoba</td>
<td>1501502478</td>
<td>Box 243 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Manorvlei</td>
<td></td>
<td>Box 1074 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Mathoma</td>
<td>0501502480</td>
<td>Box 84 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Politsi</td>
<td>0501502487</td>
<td>Box 51 Politsi 0851</td>
<td>Politsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Radisaka</td>
<td>0501502488</td>
<td>Box 224 Duiwelskloof 0835</td>
<td>Duiwelskloof</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Rooikoppies</td>
<td>0501502490</td>
<td>Box 1343 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Scholtz</td>
<td>0501464112</td>
<td>Box 163 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Sekolotome</td>
<td>0501502491</td>
<td>Box 182 Tzaneen 0850</td>
<td>Tzaneen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18. Silwersee</td>
<td>0501502492</td>
<td>Box 771 Tzaneen 0850</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>Spes Bona</td>
<td>0501502493</td>
<td>Box 57 Duiwelskloof 0835</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>Thelifa</td>
<td>0501502495</td>
<td>Box 993 Duiwelskloof 0835</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>Tzaneen Laerskool</td>
<td></td>
<td>Box 171 Tzaneen 0850</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. REGION 6: SOUTHERN REGION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AREAS</th>
<th>CIRCUITS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• BOHLABELA</td>
<td>Drakensberg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bogwasha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tubatse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mabulane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Burgersfort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• MAGAKALA</td>
<td>Dilokong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Driekop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Leolo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Moroke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Malokela</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Central 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• APEL</td>
<td>Seotlong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mashung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mohlaletse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lepellane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• NEBO</td>
<td>Ngwaritsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Eensaam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Masemola</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glen-cowie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Phokoane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lobethal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• SEKHUKHUNE</td>
<td>Ngwaabe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Malegale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mmashadi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Schoonoord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jane Furse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sekhukhune</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mashapi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| DENNILTON | Rakgwadi  
|          | Hlogotlou  
|          | Tsimanyane  
|          | Motetema  
|          | Manthole  

6.1 BOHLABELA AREA

6.1.1 DRAKENSBERG CIRCUIT

6.1.1.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. SEKIBIDI
2. THOROMETSANE
3. TSWENYANE
4. LEBOENG
5. LEGABENG
6. LEGOLENG
7. BANARENG
8. LESOKA PRE PRIMARY
9. MAHLATSENGWANE
10. MOKITING
11. MOKGWAKGWADI
12. PHAKGAPHAKGA
13. MAHLAHLE
14. MAKGALANE
15. PITSANENG
16. MAREOLOGE
6.1.2 BOGWASHA CIRCUIT

6.1.2.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. TUBATSE LOWER AND HIGHER PRIMARY
2. ITSOSENG
3. KGOBALANE
4. KGOTLOPONG
5. LEKUBOSHAI
6. MASHAKWANENG
7. MORETHUSHE
8. MAROTA
9. NTLAISHENG
10. PHATUDI
11. MAFEMANE
12. MAHLASHI
13. MAKOTASENG
14. MALEKGGOBO
6.1.3 TUBATSE CIRCUIT

6.1.3.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. SEKAKATE
2. KABISHI
3. MOHLARUTSE
4. SEKABATE
5. RIBA
6. RATOLE
7. TSWEOLOPELE
8. KOBOTI
9. TANTANYANE
10. MOGOLO
11. ITIRELLE
12. MOREWANE
13. MOKGABUDI
14. MPEU PRE PRIMARY
15. NTEPANE
16. MADINOGE
17. MAHLAGAUME
18. RAMAUBE
6.1.4 MABULANE CIRCUIT

6.1.4.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. SEHLOI
2. THABANE
3. SEGORONG
4. AGNEP PRE PRIMARY
5. KGAKANTSHANE
6. KGOMATAU
7. MOISELE
8. MOKOBOLA
9. MOOKOTSI
10. MOTSHANA
11. NTIBANENG
12. PENGE
13. MAKWALE
14. MABOTSHA
15. MADIKOLOSHE
16. MAKHWESHE
17. MAMOGOLO
18. MAMOLOBELA
19. MANKELE
20. MANTOPI
21. MAPITI
6.1.5  BURGERSFORT CIRCUIT

6.1.5.1  LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

MAMPHARE PRE PRIMARY
1.2 MAGAKALA AREA

1.2.1 DILOKONG CIRCUIT

1.2.1.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. HLAPOGADI
2. DJATE
3. MANOTWANE
4. MABORAGANE
5. MAFISE
6. MAHUDU
7. MAMOGALAKE
8. MNYAMANE
9. MONAMETSE
10. MOTLAMOTSE
11. MOTSATSANA
12. MOTSEPE
13. PHOKO
14. RAMOKO
15. SEJADIPUDI
16. SELEPE
17. MONAMPANE
18. KEJWA
1.2.2  DRIEKOP CIRCUIT

1.2.2.1  LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. ROOTSE
2. MALELENG
3. MASHISHI
4. MANYAKA
5. MOHLOPE
6. MPHOTO
7. SEBOPE
8. SELALA
9. THIBEDI
10. TUMISHI
11. MAFOLLO
12. BACHABANG
13. GOWE
14. HLALHLANA
15. KHWITING
16. SEOKE
1.2.3 LELOO CIRCUIT

1.2.3.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. TSWAKO
2. MOLEKWANE
3. MOHLAMORUOI
4. MOROKADIETA
5. MORULADILEPE
6. NTOSHANG
7. PHOGOLE
8. RATAU
9. SETLOPONG
10. MATHOLENI
11. SEFUFULE
12. MOLAKA
13. BONWANKWE
14. DIKETEPE
15. HLONG
16. LESIBE
17. MABOLETESE
18. MAFETE
19. MAGABANENG
20. MAROGA
21. MASEBUDI
6.2.4 MOROKE CIRCUIT

6.2.4.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. SETLAMORAGO
2. TELEKI
3. THOKWANE
4. TSWERENG
5. LEDINGWE
6. BOGALATLADI
7. SEROLETSHIDI
8. DIPHALA
9. KGAGUDI
10. KWANO
11. MOROLENG
12. LEBELO
13. LAERSKOOL ATOKIA
14. MPETJE
15. MAKGALANOTO
16. MAKGOPA
17. MALEGASE
18. MANKU
19. MAPUDI
20. MATIANYANE
21. MOGALE
22. MOROKE
23. ROSTOCK
6.2.5 MALOKELA CIRCUIT

6.2.5.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. KWATA
2. LETOLWANE
3. MABU
4. MAHLO
5. MALEGODI
6. MASETE
7. MASENYELETJE
8. MATSIRI
9. MOHLALA
10. MOHLOPING
11. MPHOGO
12. SHAI
13. BAITHUTI MOHLAHLEDI
6.2.6 CENTRAL 3 CIRCUIT

6.2.6.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MAEPA
1.3 APEL AREA

1.3.1 SEOTLONG

1.3.1.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MOLOKE ENGLISH MEDIUM
2. MAPATO
3. MAFENE
4. MODIMOLLE NO 2
5. PHASHAMONARE
6. RANGWATO
7. INDIE
8. SELEBALO
9. KGOEDI
10. MAPHOTLE
11. NKOTSANE
12. NKWANA
13. PELANGWE
1.3.2 MASHUNG CIRCUIT

1.3.2.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MANKOPANE LOWER PRIMARY
2. MAKGABUTLE
3. RAMPHELANE MABOOE
4. MAKANTANE
5. MOENYANE
6. STRYDKRAAL
7. MAKGAKE
8. HANS
9. MAESELA
10. PHUKUBJANE
11. THOBEHLALE
12. TLAKALE
13. TSEKE
6.3.3 MOHLALETSE CIRCUIT

6.3.3.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MOROPE MATLALA
2. SEROKA
3. MOROAMOCHE
4. TSHWEELE
5. LEGANABATHO
6. LERAJANE
7. MAEBE
8. MOLETSE
9. MAMPURU THULARE
10. MANKOPODI
11. MAPHUTHE
12. MASEHLENG
13. MASHILABELE
14. MATLEU
6.3.4 LEPELLANE CIRCUIT

6.3.4.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MARAGANE
2. DITLHAKANENG
3. MMAGOSEBO
4. DITHOTHWANENG
5. MOHWADUBA SEN
6. MMOTONG
7. MODIPADI
8. MPHANAMA
9. PEBETSE
10. PHEPANE
11. RADIMELA
12. MAMOLOBE
13. MATHIBENG
14. MAPHALE
15. DINOTSI
16. MAILA NO 2
6.4 NEBO AREA

6.4.1 NGWARITSI CIRCUIT

6.4.1.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. RHULANI
2. MOLATI
3. MOSOPSADI
4. MAPONYA
5. MOTLOKWE
6. MOTSEMOOGOLO
7. NCHUBATHE
8. MAROTOBALE
9. MOGALETLWA
10. NGWANAMASHILE
11. MAMAKADIWE
12. SEKWATI
13. TEME
14. THOLONG
15. RANANONG
16. RRAILE
17. EENSGEVONDEN
18. GEORGE CLIFORD
19. HOPEFIELD
20. MARISHANE
21. KGORUTHUTHU
22. MANCHE
23. MAKGATSKE
24. LETSIRI
25. BOHWELABATHO
6.4.2 EENSAAM CIRCUIT

6.4.2.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MORULANA
2. PATANTSHWANA
3. GAMMALEBESE
4. AREIKHULENG
5. KWENATSHWANE
6. MAKGOPENG
7. LEHLAKONG
6.4.3 MASEMOLA CIRCUIT

6.4.3.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. NGWANABEKANE
2. MATLEBJOANE
3. MOGAILE
4. MOKALAPA
5. TIITSANE
6. THABAMPSHE
7. NKGARI
8. SEKALE
9. EKELE
10. KGOOGO
11. KHUDU TSEKE
12. MAHLOLWANENG
13. MANNYETHA
14. LEWALEMOLOMO
15. MACHELANE
16. MABOOE
6.4.4 GLEN-COWIE CIRCUIT

6.4.4.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MANGOPE LOWER PRIMARY
2. MPELENG
3. MATOBULE
4. SEKWENA
5. TEME
6. SEBJANENG
7. THINGWA
8. TLAME
9. NGWANANKETE
10. SEDIKWE
11. PHOTO
12. KATISI
13. HLABJE
14. KATUDI
15. DIKWETSE
16. KOPANONG
17. MAPALAGADI
18. MANOTONG
19. MAPOGO
20. MMAKUBU
6.4.5 PHOKOANE CIRCUIT

6.4.5.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MAKOSHALA
2. MONTLAKANE
3. MAKGOSHI
4. MOLEIJANE
5. TSHWATLHAKGE
6. MARUTLE
7. MASHUANA
8. MATIME MANASOE
9. MOKGOMA
10. MMESHI
11. MOGATLADI
12. THOTANENG
13. TSHWAANE
14. NGWANASENANA
15. NTETELENG
16. PETLOANE
17. PHOKOANE
18. PHOTOTLOGOANA
19. GAREAGOPOLA
20. KGOPOLO E BOTSE
21. MASHILE
22. LEHLAKE
23. KOPJENG
6.4.6 LOBETHAL CIRCUIT

6.4.6.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MOGOBELALA
2. MOKGOGO
3. NALA
4. MASHABELA
5. MOHLODI
6. MOHWELERE
7. PHASWANE
8. MAMORITHING
9. MAREI
10. LEDIITSE
11. LOBETHAL
6.5 SEKHUKHUNE AREA

6.5.1 NGWAABE CIRCUIT

6.5.1.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. LEGAPANA
2. PAPONG
3. NGWANANGWATO
4. NGWANATHEKO
5. NGWANATHULARE
6. NKOKOANE
7. NTAKE
8. MALEKANA
9. MAMPURU
10. MANTE
11. MAREMELE
12. MASHA
13. MASAGO
14. KGOBOKO
15. MADIETE
16. DIKGAGENG
17. KGALADI
6.5.2 MALEGALE CIRCUIT

6.5.2.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. SERAGENG
2. PITSI
3. RAMPHELANE
4. SEBOENG
5. MOGOMARELE
6. MALEGALE
7. MALOKE
8. MAMPURU 1
9. MEFOLO
10. MATHABENG
11. MODIKETSE
12. HONOKO
13. THULARE
14. TSATANE
15. PAAPA
16. MASELESELENG
17. KGETEDI
18. MABHEDLA
19. MAKOBOTE
6.5.3 MMASHADI

6.5.3.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MOOKWANE
2. MORETSELE
3. MORIPANE
4. JANE FURSE
5. ARETHABENG
6. FREDDY MOKGABUDI
7. ST. MARK’S
8. KALAFONG
9. BAFEDI
10. BAROPIDI
11. BONEGA MADIKUBUNG
12. MASHEGOANYANE
13. DIKGABJE
6.5.4 SCHOONOORD CIRCUIT

6.5.4.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. NOKOMEETSE
2. MOKALE
3. NTSHITSHIMALE
4. MOGASHOA
5. SCHOONOORD
6. SEMASHEGO
7. MALAKENG SEROTELE
8. MANCHAKGATHE
9. MAPHOOKO
10. MAROTA MAKGANE
11. MASERAL
12. MATIME
13. MANTIMO
14. MADIKANONO
15. MAKGANED
16. DIKANKATLA
17. DLAMINI
6.5.5  JANE FURSE CIRCUIT

6.5.5.1  LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOL/S

The list of primary schools was not provided when the research was conducted
6.5.6 SEKHUKHUNE CIRCUIT

6.5.6.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOL/S

1. TIBAMOSHITO
6.5.7 MASHAPI CIRCUIT

6.5.7.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

The list of primary schools was not provided when the research was conducted
6.6  DENNILTON AREA

6.6.1  RAKGWADI CIRCUIT

6.6.1.1  LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1.  RAKGOADI
2.  MOKONEAMABULA
3.  MABITSI
4.  MAKHUTSO
6.6.2 HLOGOTOU CIRCUIT

6.6.2.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MASHIYANE
2. JMKHABELA
3. MOTLANKANE
4. KHUTHALANI
5. JAFTA LOWER PRIMARY
6. MBALENHLE
7. HLOGOTLOU
8. KAWUSIME
9. LUCKAU
10. MAKEKE
11. ZWANANI
12. MAMADI
13. PHAKGAMANG
14. MNINWAMAHLANGU
15. MOKGALABJE
16. MOTSEPHIRI
17. SINDILE
18. SOKALI
19. SOMAKATA
20. MOROBE
21. QHUBANI
22. ZAMA ZAMA
6.6.3 TSIMANYANE CIRCUIT

6.6.3.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. MOGALATSANA
2. MOGALATJANE MPHABHELE
3. MATSEDI
4. SETHOKGWA MAKUA
5. NWATSHIPE AMAEPE
6. MATHUNG
7. NKOANA WILLY MADITSI
8. LEKGOLANE
9. LEKOMETSE
10. TSIMANYANE
11. GOSHETSENG
12. MOSHEGE
13. THOKE
14. LEGADIMANE
15. MAMASEGARE
16. MOSOGANENG
6.6.4 MOTETEMA CIRCUIT

6.6.4.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. VM MOHLALA
2. HLAKUDI
3. JACK MORARE
4. GADIFELE
5. MOTJEDI
6. NTSHOENG
7. BAKOPA
8. MONAMODE MATSEPE
9. DIKGALAOPENG
10. DIPAKAPAKENG
11. IKAGENG
12. JACOB SEFAKO
13. MAMORAKE
14. MAMPHOKGO
15. MONTSOSABOSEGO
16. ABRAHAM SEROTE
17. MOILANONG
18. MATSEPE
19. KENNETH MASEKELA
20. MMATHOLO
21. RAMMUPUDU
22. RITE
6.6.5 MANTHOLE CIRCUIT

6.6.5.1 LIST OF PRIMARY SCHOOLS

1. LEKALA
2. IKHUTSENG
3. BONANG BONANI
4. BAFALADI
5. MOGANETSWA
### REGION 7: BUSHBUCKRIDGE REGION

#### 7.1 ACORNHOEK AREA

##### 7.1.1 ARTHUSEAT CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOLS</th>
<th>SETTLEMENT</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Banabaswa</td>
<td>Arthustone</td>
<td>P.O. Box 162 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Johanna Mpheto</td>
<td>Arthuseat</td>
<td>P/Bag X 435 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modike</td>
<td>Ga-Mreku</td>
<td>P/Bag X 440 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aplos Chiloane</td>
<td>Newline</td>
<td>P/Bag X 435 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chugu</td>
<td>Rooboklagte</td>
<td>P.O. Box 22 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greenvalley</td>
<td>Greenvalley</td>
<td>P.O. Box 43 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Makgomanie</td>
<td>Cragieburn</td>
<td>P.O. Box 2677 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Makwetse</td>
<td>Tsakane</td>
<td>P/Bag X 480 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maoloshe</td>
<td>Cragieburn</td>
<td>P.O. Box 2200 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mapateletsa</td>
<td>Ga-Joseph</td>
<td>P.O. Box 2041 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morei</td>
<td>Dingledale</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9302 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motlamogatsane</td>
<td>Newline</td>
<td>P/Bag X 429 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nkulungwana</td>
<td>Xanthia</td>
<td>P.O. Box 1688 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phatsedi</td>
<td>Mokololine</td>
<td>P/Bag X 476 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Senoni</td>
<td>Arthuseat</td>
<td>P.O. Box 32 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tshokolo</td>
<td>Madile</td>
<td>P/Bag X 3025 Mkhuhlu 1246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zigode</td>
<td>M.P. Stream</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1328 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 7.1.2 CASTEEL CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOLS</th>
<th>SETTLEMENT</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maditsebe</td>
<td>Zoeknog</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9376 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poti</td>
<td>Casteel</td>
<td>P/Bag X 481 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tsakata Mpepula</td>
<td>Casteel</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9361 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tshikedi</td>
<td>Casteel</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9314 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Casteel</td>
<td>Casteel</td>
<td>P.O. Box 55 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebadishang</td>
<td>Zoeknog</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9394 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lekanang</td>
<td>Wales</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9376 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lekedi</td>
<td>Wales</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9310 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahubahuba</td>
<td>Wales</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9334 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mamosebo</td>
<td>Wales</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1949 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mamosodi</td>
<td>Zoeknog</td>
<td>P/Bag X 481 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matloshe</td>
<td>Zoeknog</td>
<td>P/Bag X 406 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mokgawane</td>
<td>Zoeknog</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9398 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M.O. Mashego</td>
<td>Casteel</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9378 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motamogale</td>
<td>Wales</td>
<td>P/Bag X 436 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 7.1.3 COTTONDALE CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOLS</th>
<th>SETTLEMENT</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abuti</td>
<td>Buffelshoek</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1145 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lekuba</td>
<td>Buffelshoek</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1143 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mpho</td>
<td>Acornhoek</td>
<td>P.O. Box 2166 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nease</td>
<td>Buffelshoek</td>
<td>P.O. Box 933 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andover</td>
<td>Okkernootboom</td>
<td>P/Bag X 433 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eckson M. Chiloane</td>
<td>Buffelshoek</td>
<td>P/Bag X 479 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jameyana</td>
<td>Okkernootboom</td>
<td>P/Bag X 445 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khokhovela</td>
<td>Islington</td>
<td>P/Bag X 422 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Letsamaile Chiloane</td>
<td>Buffelshoek</td>
<td>P/Bag X 477 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mabonwana</td>
<td>Cottondale</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1421 Hluvukani 1363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Makhahlise</td>
<td>Buffelshoek</td>
<td>P/Bag X 472 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mawuvana</td>
<td>Okkernootboom</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1329 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morage</td>
<td>Buffelshoek</td>
<td>P.O. Box 141 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mphaku</td>
<td>Islington</td>
<td>P.O. Box 72 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mpisi</td>
<td>Okkernootboom</td>
<td>P/Bag X 445 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panyana</td>
<td>Buffelshoek</td>
<td>P.O. Box 140 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Powerline</td>
<td>Acornhoek</td>
<td>P.O. Box 2553 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sebosegole</td>
<td>Dingleydale</td>
<td>P/Bag X 477 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sesete</td>
<td>Burlington</td>
<td>P/Bag X 430 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sibiekisi</td>
<td>Okkernootboom</td>
<td>P/Bag X 433 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 7.1.4 GREENVALLEY CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOLS</th>
<th>SETTLEMENT</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Andries Inama</td>
<td>Boelang</td>
<td>P/Bag X 448 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Katlego</td>
<td>Rooibok</td>
<td>P.O. Box 2140 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebogang</td>
<td>Brooklyn</td>
<td>P/Bag X 460 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mabjane</td>
<td>Greenvalley</td>
<td>P.O. Box 286 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Madule</td>
<td>Brooklyn</td>
<td>P/Bag X 414 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mish Mohlahu</td>
<td>Dingleydale</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9346 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moses Nyundu</td>
<td>Chavela gaza</td>
<td>P/Bag X 441 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pfukani</td>
<td>Timbavati</td>
<td>P/Bag X 426 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teedi</td>
<td>Greenvalley</td>
<td>P.O. Box 640 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bereta</td>
<td>Mahlatini</td>
<td>P/Bag X 409 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chayiwe</td>
<td>Acornhoek</td>
<td>P/Bag X 439 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Funjwa</td>
<td>Acornhoek</td>
<td>P/Bag X 403 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kwasitiba</td>
<td>Kgapamadi</td>
<td>P/Bag X 456 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lumukisa</td>
<td>Chavela gaza</td>
<td>P/Bag X 444 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maotole</td>
<td>Brooklyn</td>
<td>P.O. Box 7 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mapalane</td>
<td>Boelang</td>
<td>P/Bag X 448 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masenyane</td>
<td>Moloro</td>
<td>P/Bag X 460 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mugidi</td>
<td>Timbavati</td>
<td>P.O. Box 131 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ndabeni</td>
<td>Chavela gaza</td>
<td>P/Bag X 450 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paulos Ngobeni</td>
<td>Okkernootboom</td>
<td>P.O. Box 273 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sethlare</td>
<td>Health centre</td>
<td>P.O. Box 128 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timbavati</td>
<td>Timbavati</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1314 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 7.1.5 MANYELETI CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>SCHOOLS</strong></th>
<th><strong>SETTLEMENT</strong></th>
<th><strong>ADDRESS</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Khahlela</td>
<td>Islington</td>
<td>P.O. Box 57 Hluvukani 1363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Makomichana</td>
<td>Ludlow</td>
<td>P/Bag X 4432 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monasi</td>
<td>Welverdiend</td>
<td>P/Bag X 109 Hluvukani 1363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hananani</td>
<td>Manyeleti</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1433 Hluvukani 1363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hlalakahle</td>
<td>Gottinburg</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1408 Hluvukani 1363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ludlow</td>
<td>Ludlow</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1311 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahlathi</td>
<td>Islington</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1434 Hluvukani 1363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malwana</td>
<td>Islington</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1420 Hluvukani 1363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manyeleti</td>
<td>Gottinburg</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1430 Hluvukani 1363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matikinya</td>
<td>Oglington</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1412 Hluvukani 1363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manyamane</td>
<td>Thorndale</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1431 Hluvukani 1363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mthembeni</td>
<td>Islington</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1407 Hluvukani 1363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nyalati</td>
<td>Ludlow</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1342 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samson Sibuyi</td>
<td>Thorndale</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1428 Hluvukani 1363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shiviti</td>
<td>Utah</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1419 Hluvukani 1363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Welverdiend</td>
<td>Welverdiend</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1421 Hluvukani 1363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xinyeketi</td>
<td>Thorndale</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1428 Hluvukani 1363</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 7.2 BUSHBUCKRIDGE AREA

#### 7.2.1 AGINCOURT CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOLS</th>
<th>SETTLEMENT</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Agincourt</td>
<td>Agincourt</td>
<td>P.O. Box 808 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phelandaba</td>
<td>Newington</td>
<td>P.O. Box Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quvekani</td>
<td>M.P. Stream</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1367 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sungulani</td>
<td>Xanthia</td>
<td>P.O. Box 2001 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gavazana</td>
<td>Newington</td>
<td>P/Bag X 7427 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hlavathi</td>
<td>M.P. Stream</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1326 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hluvukani</td>
<td>Xanthia</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9336 Bushbuckridge 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hokwe</td>
<td>M.P. Stream</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1315 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khayelihle</td>
<td>Agincourt</td>
<td>P.O. Box 807 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahlahluvana</td>
<td>Dumphries</td>
<td>P/Bag X 555 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manyakatana</td>
<td>Newington</td>
<td>P/Bag X 7442 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matsavane</td>
<td>Agincourt</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9328 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ndimande</td>
<td>Maviljan</td>
<td>P/Bag X 11355 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quetywayo</td>
<td>Agincourt</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1388 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Welani</td>
<td>Dumphries</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1345 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCHOOLS</td>
<td>SETTLEMENT</td>
<td>ADDRESS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amukelani</td>
<td>Thulamahashe</td>
<td>P.O. Box 165 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jabulani</td>
<td>Edinburg</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1368 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahlambandlopfu</td>
<td>Thulamahashe</td>
<td>P/Bag X 360 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vonani</td>
<td>Newforest</td>
<td>P.O. Box 457 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charley Mbungele</td>
<td>Rolle</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1305 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezrom</td>
<td>Edinburg</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1364 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floraphophe</td>
<td>Rolle</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1322 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Humulani</td>
<td>Athol</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1425 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malamule</td>
<td>Edinburg</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1350 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mavandla</td>
<td>Edinburg</td>
<td>P.O. Box 64 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mpikaniso</td>
<td>Newforest</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1330 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mpithi</td>
<td>Thulamahashe</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1336 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mzilikazi</td>
<td>Dumphries</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1316 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ndwendwe</td>
<td>Allandale</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1344 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sabeka</td>
<td>Allandale</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1333 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisani</td>
<td>Rolle</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1352 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xilongana</td>
<td>Edinburg</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1354 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### DWARSLOOP CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOLS</th>
<th>SETTLEMENT</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arthustone</td>
<td>Arthustone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dwarsloop</td>
<td>Dwarsloop</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9313 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motibidi</td>
<td>Elandsfontein</td>
<td>P/Bag X 391 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nkimolle</td>
<td>Dwarsloop</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9313 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phafoga</td>
<td>London</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beng ba lona</td>
<td>Dwarsloop</td>
<td>P.O. Box 499 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buyisonto</td>
<td>Arthustone</td>
<td>P.O. Box 101 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.G. Mashego</td>
<td>Dwarsloop</td>
<td>P.O. Box 1969 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esselman</td>
<td>Dwarsloop</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9312 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hlamalani</td>
<td>Orinoco</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9323 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Majembeni</td>
<td>Orinoco</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9385 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mathambo</td>
<td>Orinoco</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1323 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mpisane</td>
<td>Orinoco</td>
<td>P.O. Box 32 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nkwenkwezi</td>
<td>Dwarsloop</td>
<td>P.O. Box 327 Mafemani 1285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nkothasi</td>
<td>Arthustone</td>
<td>P.O. Box 619 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saile</td>
<td>Dwarsloop</td>
<td>P.O. Box 9354 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saselani</td>
<td>Saselani</td>
<td>P.O. Box 62 Mafemani 1285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sibambayana</td>
<td>Orinoco</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1327 Thulamahashe 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siboyiye</td>
<td>Orinoco</td>
<td>P/Bag X 349 Acornhoek 1360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Twalakule</td>
<td>Dwarsloop</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9380 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xingala Makamu</td>
<td>Arthustone</td>
<td>P.O. Box 647 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7.2.4 SHATALE CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOLS</th>
<th>SETTLEMENT</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matladifedile</td>
<td>London</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matsepole</td>
<td>London</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Montedi</td>
<td>London</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boikhutso</td>
<td>London</td>
<td>P/Bag X 8003 Shatale 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farel</td>
<td>London</td>
<td>P/Bag X 8021 Shatale 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matlalong</td>
<td>London</td>
<td>P/Bag X 8019 Shatale 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matloane</td>
<td>London</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9342 Shatale 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mathule</td>
<td>London</td>
<td>P/Bag X 8012 Shatale 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moratiseng</td>
<td>Maviljan</td>
<td>P.O. Box 499 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narishe</td>
<td>London</td>
<td>P/Bag X 8004 Shatale 1282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ngwarele</td>
<td>London</td>
<td>P/Bag X 8001 Shatale 1282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ntsoelemolodi</td>
<td>London</td>
<td>P/Bag X 8013 Shatale 1282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relani</td>
<td>London</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9332 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sedibeng</td>
<td>London</td>
<td>P/Bag X 8002 Shatale 1282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shatale</td>
<td>London</td>
<td>P/Bag X 8008 Shatale 1282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thabakgolo</td>
<td>London</td>
<td>P/Bag X 8005 Shatale 1282</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 7.2.5 MAVILJAN CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOLS</th>
<th>SETTLEMENT</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nkoebotse</td>
<td>Maviljan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dilayi</td>
<td>Maviljan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diphaswa</td>
<td>Maviljan</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9356 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masakeni</td>
<td>Maviljan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maviljan</td>
<td>Maviljan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ntsie</td>
<td>Maviljan</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9347 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S.H. Nyalungu</td>
<td>Maviljan</td>
<td>P.O. Box 57 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 7.3 MKHUHLU AREA

#### 7.3.1 MARITE CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOLS</th>
<th>SETTLEMENT</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bhekiswayo</td>
<td>Marite</td>
<td>P.O. Box 711 Hazyview 1242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jackson Xingange</td>
<td>Madras</td>
<td>P/Bag X 3006 Mkhuhlu 1246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khoane</td>
<td>Marite</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9368 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mosopodi</td>
<td>Marite</td>
<td>P.O. Box 771 Hazyview 1242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O.B. Mokoena</td>
<td>Marite</td>
<td>P.O. Box 697 Hazyview 1242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sandord</td>
<td>Marite</td>
<td>P.O. Box 935 Hazyview 1242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bantomu</td>
<td>Madras</td>
<td>P/Bag X 3006 Mkhuhlu 1246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emfuleni</td>
<td>Marite</td>
<td>P.O. Box 396 Hazyview 1242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kwanang</td>
<td>Marite</td>
<td>P/Bag X 125 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kwetse</td>
<td>Alexandra</td>
<td>P.O. Box 429 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lapishe</td>
<td>Marite</td>
<td>P.O. Box 295 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Madukulushe</td>
<td>Marite</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9368 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Makorompane</td>
<td>Marite</td>
<td>P.O. Box 332 Hazyview 1242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malengeza</td>
<td>Marite</td>
<td>P.O. Box 141 Hazyview 1242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mapetekoane</td>
<td>Oakley</td>
<td>P.O. Box 1941 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matikwane</td>
<td>Madras</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1015 Mkhuhlu 1246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moduping</td>
<td>Marite</td>
<td>P.O. Box 246 Hazyview 1242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mogolane</td>
<td>Marite</td>
<td>P.O. Box 344 Hazyview 1242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motseleng</td>
<td>Alexandra</td>
<td>P.O. Box 1875 Bushbuckridge 1282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M.P. Mokoena</td>
<td>Marite</td>
<td>P.O. Box 571 Hazyview 1242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nwamahumane</td>
<td>Madras ‘A’</td>
<td>P.O. Box 251 Hazyview 1242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shatleng</td>
<td>Marite</td>
<td>P.O. Box 71 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 7.3.2 MKHUHLU CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOLS</th>
<th>SETTLEMENT</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>George Mduli</td>
<td>Madras</td>
<td>P.O. Box 586 Mkhuhlu 1246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Homuzeya</td>
<td>Belfast</td>
<td>P/Bag X 1020 Mkhuhlu 1246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joel Mnisi</td>
<td>Ronaldsey</td>
<td>P/Bag X 616 Mkhuhlu 1246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nkala</td>
<td>Lisbon</td>
<td>P.O. Box 111 Clanor 1351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nwaxilambatana</td>
<td>Calcutta</td>
<td>P.O. Box 1191 Mkhuhlu 1246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paul Mabuza</td>
<td>Calcutta</td>
<td>P.O. Box 1200 Mkhuhlu 1246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rozola</td>
<td>Calcutta</td>
<td>P/Bag X 560 Mkhuhlu 1246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bhejani</td>
<td>Calcutta</td>
<td>P.O. Box 65 Mkhuhlu 1246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mkhuhlu</td>
<td>Lisbon</td>
<td>P.O. Box 23 Clanor 1365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Londhinda</td>
<td>Calcutta</td>
<td>P.O. Box 385 Mkhuhlu 1246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mapaleni</td>
<td>Calcutta</td>
<td>P/Bag X 3010 Mkhuhlu 1246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mavimbela</td>
<td>Calcutta</td>
<td>P/Bag X 3007 Mkhuhlu 1246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mbatini</td>
<td>Calcutta</td>
<td>P/Bag X 3011 Mkhuhlu 1246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mkhumbini</td>
<td>Cork</td>
<td>P/Bag X 3004 Mkhuhlu 1246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mvuyazi</td>
<td>Cork</td>
<td>P/Bag X 3005 Mkhuhlu 1246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pensele</td>
<td>Calcutta</td>
<td>P.O. Box 1246 Mkhuhlu 1246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shalamamuka</td>
<td>Belfast</td>
<td>P/Bag X 380 Hazyview 1242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vukuzezele</td>
<td>Madras 'A'</td>
<td>P/Bag X 3023 Mkhuhlu 1246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thwasani</td>
<td>Ronaldsey</td>
<td>P/Bag X 3025 Mkhuhlu 1246</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 7.3.3 LEHUKWE CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOLS</th>
<th>SETTLEMENT</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A.K. Mokoena</td>
<td>Tekamahala</td>
<td>P.O. Box 727 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cunningmoore</td>
<td>Cunningmoore ‘A’</td>
<td>P/Bag X 24 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lehukwe</td>
<td>Cunningmoore</td>
<td>P.O. Box 37 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lekgokamang</td>
<td>Alexandra</td>
<td>P.O. Box 429 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mashabiya</td>
<td>Marite</td>
<td>P.O. Box 807 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ntswelemotse</td>
<td>Alexandra</td>
<td>P/Bag X 9375 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ryes</td>
<td>Oakley</td>
<td>P.O. Box 998 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alexandra</td>
<td>Alexandra</td>
<td>P.O. Box 53 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cunningmoore</td>
<td>Cunningmoore ‘A’</td>
<td>P/Bag X 7415 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hokisa</td>
<td>Cunningmoore</td>
<td>P.O. Box 569 Mkhuhlu 1246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magashule</td>
<td>Oakley</td>
<td>P.O. Box 231 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oakley</td>
<td>Oakley</td>
<td>P.O. Box 64 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plaatjie</td>
<td>Oakley</td>
<td>P.O. Box 435 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saringwa</td>
<td>Cunningmoore ‘B’</td>
<td>P/Bag X 7417 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sele</td>
<td>Tsakani</td>
<td>P.O. Box 184 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiyimeleni</td>
<td>Cunningmoore ‘B’</td>
<td>P/Bag X 7420 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vandama</td>
<td>Marite</td>
<td>P/Bag X 344 Bushbuckridge 1280</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 7.3.4 XIMHUNGWE CIRCUIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOLS</th>
<th>SETTLEMENT</th>
<th>ADDRESS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Angelo Martodes</td>
<td>Somerset</td>
<td>P.O. Box 757 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chivirikani</td>
<td>Areagh 'B'</td>
<td>P.O. Box 753 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Henna</td>
<td>Areagh 'A'</td>
<td>P/Bag X 7404 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malamule</td>
<td>Kildare</td>
<td>P.O. Box 823 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Njombo</td>
<td>Areagh 'A'</td>
<td>P/Bag X 756 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ntshunxekani</td>
<td>Justicia</td>
<td>P/Bag X 7419 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ringetani</td>
<td>Croquetlawn</td>
<td>P/Bag X 7428 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Babati</td>
<td>Justicia</td>
<td>P/Bag X 7423 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tipfuxeni</td>
<td>Kildare</td>
<td>P/Bag X 7406 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dyondzekani</td>
<td>Somerset</td>
<td>P/Bag X 3003 Mkhuhlu 1246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hibanandla</td>
<td>Lilydale</td>
<td>P/Bag X 7439 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hlanganani</td>
<td>Croquetlawn</td>
<td>P/Bag X 7407 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hundzukani</td>
<td>Huntington</td>
<td>P/Bag X 7413 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jan Rikhotso</td>
<td>Kildare</td>
<td>P/Bag X 7403 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John Khoza</td>
<td>Cunningmoore 'B'</td>
<td>P/Bag X 7403 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jogilanga</td>
<td>Kildare</td>
<td>P/Bag X 7408 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J.J. Matsana</td>
<td>Somerset</td>
<td>P/Bag X 7437 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magudu</td>
<td>Grea 'B'</td>
<td>P/Bag X 7410 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mhlahle</td>
<td>Lilydale</td>
<td>P/Bag X 7405 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nembe Mhlava</td>
<td>Croquetlawn</td>
<td>P.O. Box 759 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Njonjela</td>
<td>Kildare</td>
<td>P/Bag X 7412 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nwankupana</td>
<td>Kildare</td>
<td>P/Bag X 7440 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhandzekile</td>
<td>Lilydale</td>
<td>P/Bag X 7430 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiyani</td>
<td>Areagh 'A'</td>
<td>P/Bag X 7420 Ximhungwe 1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vuyelani</td>
<td>Lilydale</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>